SEPRACOR

July 20, 2007

Stephen Phurrough, MD, MPA
Director, Coverage and Analysis Group
Office of Clinical Standards and Quality
Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services
7500 Security Boulevard
Mail Stop C1-09-06
Baltimore, MD 21244

Re: Comments on the Proposed Decision Memo for the National Coverage Analysis for Nebulized Beta Adrenergic Agonist Therapy for Lung Diseases ("The Use of Nebulized Levalbuterol for the Treatment of COPD in the Medicare Population") (CAG-00354N)

Dear Dr. Phurrough,

Thank you for the opportunity to provide comments to the Proposed Decision Memo for the National Coverage Analysis for Nebulized Beta Adrenergic Agonist Therapy for Lung Diseases ("The Use of Nebulized Levalbuterol for the treatment of COPD in the Medicare Population") (the "Proposed Decision Memo") (CAG-00354N), which CMS posted on June 20, 2007. Sepracor Inc. ("Sepracor") is the exclusive manufacturer of Xopenex® Inhalation Solution and Brovana™ Inhalation Solution, which benefit a significant number of Medicare beneficiaries who suffer from chronic obstructive pulmonary disease ("COPD"). Our comments respond in turn to the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services' ("CMS" or "the Agency") conclusions in the Proposed Decision Memo and reiterate comments we have submitted previously to the Agency regarding the proper interpretation of the terms "reasonable and necessary" and the prohibition against the use of least costly alternative ("LCA") payment policies. We also offer comments on the use of Xopenex and Brovana in Medicare patients.

The Proposed Decision Memo proposes to refrain from making a national coverage determination ("NCD") at this time. Instead, CMS proposes to allow the local contractors to conduct case-by-case adjudications or establish local coverage determinations ("LCDs") to determine whether an item is "reasonable and necessary for the treatment of illness or injury or [used] to improve the functioning of a malformed body member" under Section 1862(a)(1)(A) of the Social Security Act ("SSA" or "the Act"). The Proposed Decision Memo indicates that this decision is based on the Agency's conclusion that "published medical evidence does not provide sufficient information that would enable CMS to define

Sepracor Inc., 84 Waterford Drive, Marlborough MA 01752 Tel: (508) 481-6700 Fax: (508) 357-7894

specific populations of patients who would benefit from a particular treatment with particular medications at this time."

In the review of the evidence outlined in the memo and in order to address the issues raised for purposes of the National Coverage Analysis, CMS posed two questions:

1. Is the evidence sufficient to conclude that nebulized beta-agonist therapy improves health outcomes when used at home by Medicare beneficiaries who have lung disease?

2. If the answer to Question 1 is affirmative, what characteristics of the patient, the disease, or the treatment regimen reliably predict a favorable health outcome?

Our comments will focus on the answers CMS provided to each of these two questions and, as applicable, the supporting analysis.

<u>Comments in Response to Question 1</u>

In response to question 1:

> Is the evidence sufficient to conclude that nebulized beta-agonist therapy improves health outcomes when used in the home by Medicare beneficiaries who have lung disease?

CMS concluded that: "….the home use of nebulized beta-adrenergic agonist drugs (alone or in combination) for the treatment of chronic lung diseases marked by a reversible component of bronchospasm can be beneficial as part of an overall disease management strategy. Thus we propose that question 1 be answered affirmatively."

Sepracor strongly agrees with this conclusion as it establishes that the use of nebulized beta-adrenergic agonists in the treatment of lung disease at home is reasonable and necessary. Sepracor also is pleased that the Agency recognizes that the evidence-based treatment guidelines consider the "use of beta-adrenergic agonist bronchodilator medications [to be] an important part of the therapeutic regimen for patients with chronic lung disease marked by airflow limitation or obstruction such as asthma and/or COPD."

<u>Question 2:</u>

Based on the affirmative response to Question 1, CMS proceeded to address the second question:

> If the answer to Question 1 is affirmative, what characteristics of the patient, the disease, or the treatment regimen reliably predict a favorable health outcome?

CMS advises that the answer to this question is “complex”, and further that “the myriad factors involved in the treatment make it difficult to establish a national policy with respect to “particular items” under title XVIII.” In applying this question to albuterol and Xopenex, CMS proposes to conclude that:

> “The current record does not provide sufficient evidence of a clinically meaningful difference that can be reliably predicted in the treatment of an individual beneficiary with a single enantiomer compared to a racemic preparation of a nebulized short acting beta adrenergic agonist. We are aware that some beneficiaries may express an individual preference for one or another preparation based on personal experience, and we believe that the clinical significance of this is best determined by the local Medicare contractors.”

Sepracor acknowledges that it may be difficult to interpret the current data to reliably predict future health outcomes by patient population on the basis of utilizing a particular treatment regimen. We do, however, believe that further studies would demonstrate that the two products may have different therapeutic effects in different people and therefore view one of the rationales offered by CMS in support of its conclusion namely, that the text and tables of various published articles support a finding of therapeutic equivalence as between Xopenex and generic albuterol rather than true therapeutic differences, as incorrect.

To summarize the issue with respect to differentiation between Xopenex and albuterol, albuterol contains equal amounts of (R)-albuterol and (S)-albuterol, whereas Xopenex only contains (R)-albuterol. Preclinical evidence indicates that (S)-albuterol is not pharmacologically inert and exhibits proinflammatory and probronchoconstrictory properties in a variety of models. Additionally, in humans, (S)-albuterol is metabolized much more slowly than (R)-albuterol. [Many clinical studies have been undertaken evaluating the efficacy and safety of Xopenex, and in the majority of these studies, racemic albuterol has been included as an active control (however most of these studies were neither designed nor powered prospectively to directly compare Xopenex and racemic albuterol). Many, but not all studies suggest and/or demonstrate (with both statistical and clinical significance) differences between Xopenex and racemic albuterol. If there were truly no differences between products, then critical review of the data should reveal that the majority of studies suggest/demonstrate no differences between the products, and for the minority of studies that support clinical differentiation between Xopenex and racemic albuterol, they should be evenly divided in favor of each product. This is clearly not the case.

With respect to the evidence reviewed by CMS, a number of papers published within the last several years were reviewed, including many studies evaluating levalbuterol in patients with asthma and a 2007 publication summarizing results of a clinical study using of the newly approved nebulized long-acting beta-agonist, Brovana (Baumgartner et al, 2007). The literature cited by CMS includes a small, single-dose crossover study evaluating levalbuterol and racemic albuterol in patients with COPD (Datta et al, 2003). We note, however, that the literature cited by CMS did not include a much larger, well-controlled, and highly relevant study evaluating the efficacy and safety of levalbuterol and racemic albuterol in chronic stable out-patients with COPD, published by Donohue et al in the Journal of COPD in 2006 (Donohue et al, 2006). We provided an overview of the Donohue study and the publication in our original comments on the NCD (submitted by Sepracor on January 24, 2007) and note that we made reference to this study several times in our formal comments, as we believed that this particular dataset was arguably the most relevant individual study conducted to date specifically evaluating efficacy and safety of both levalbuterol and racemic albuterol administered chronically (three times/day for 6-weeks) in COPD patients with an average age of approximately 65. It is important to note that many of the studies conducted, including the Donohue study, may not be individually definitive with respect to proving clinical differentiation (primarily because they were not designed or intended for this purpose). However, the number of studies that demonstrate differences in favor of Xopenex and the concomitant absence of studies demonstrating outcomes in favor of albuterol, along with the actual outcomes data, does in fact represent compelling evidence of clinical differentiation in favor of Xopenex. The nonclinical evidence concerning potentially adverse characteristics of (S)-albuterol, as well as the differences in metabolism of (R)- and (S)-albuterol observed in clinical studies, provides a reasonable basis for understanding the observed clinical differences between Xopenex and albuterol.

Because of the significance of the Donahue study to the Medicare population, we wish to take this opportunity to reiterate the study design and its results

This study was a large, prospective randomized, double-blind, parallel group study conducted in 209 patients with moderate to severe COPD. Patients received LEV 0.63 mg (n=53), 1.25 mg (n=49), RAC 2.5 mg (n=52) or placebo (n=55) three times a day for six weeks. All patients also received open-label rescue medication (either XOPENEX HFA-MDI for both LEV groups or Ventolin CFC-MDI for the RAC group) and supplemental ipratropium bromide was provided as well for rescue. After 4 weeks of treatment, patients received a single combination of study drug and ipratropium. Endpoints included pulmonary function, rescue/supplemental medication use, and COPD exacerbations.

All active treatments produced significantly higher FEV_1 when compared with placebo after Weeks 0, 2 and 6 ($p<0.003$). Combination levalbuterol 1.25 mg and ipratropium was the only treatment arm associated with marginally significant improvement in bronchodilation ($p=0.07$) compared with ipratropium alone. The need to use rescue medication for patients on levalbuterol 1.25 mg was significantly lower than for patients on racemic albuterol 2.5 mg ($p=0.02$). The use of rescue medication increased in the albuterol and placebo groups, while the use of rescue medication was decreased in both LEV groups. Almost half of the patients who received either dose of LEV reported much or moderately better quality of life (LEV 0.63 mg = 48.8%; LEV 1.25 mg = 47.5%), compared with 28% and 27% of patients in the racemic albuterol and placebo groups, respectively (p= NS). Withdrawals due to COPD exacerbations were significantly higher in the racemic albuterol group compared with the placebo group (9.6% vs 0%; p=0.01), while those in the levalbuterol treatment groups were not significantly different than placebo (1.9% and 4.1% for levalbuterol 0.63 mg and 1.25 mg, respectively). Treatment was well tolerated, with an overall occurrence of adverse events of 56.4% for the placebo-treated patients, 56.6% for the LEV 0.63 mg-treated patients, 67.3% for the LEV 1.25 mg-treated patients, and 65.4% for racemic albuterol treated patients. The percentage of withdrawals due to adverse events was 1.8%, 13.2%, 8.2%, and 23.1% in the placebo, levalbuterol 0.63 mg, levalbuterol 1.25 mg, and racemic albuterol treatment groups, respectively. The LEV 0.63 mg group resulted in the lowest frequency of beta-mediated adverse events of any treatment group. Cardiovascular adverse events occurred in 10.9% of the placebo-treated patients, 3.8% of the LEV 0.63 mg-treated patients, 8.2% of the LEV 1.25 mg-treated patients, and 9.6% of racemic albuterol-treated subjects.

Thus, this study demonstrated that in patients with COPD, levalbuterol improved FEV1 compared with placebo and was associated with greater disease control than both racemic albuterol and placebo. Specifically, patients on levalbuterol: (1) required less rescue/supplemental medication use (additional, short-acting bronchodilators); (2) had fewer withdrawals due to COPD exacerbations; and (3) had better patient global evaluations. We believe that an assessment of this study should be included in any formal review conducted by CMS, and note that we had reasonably expected that the results of this study would have been included in the Proposed Decision Memo.

With respect to the outcome of this study, it is important to note that the FDA-approved labeling for Xopenex Inhalation Solution has stated, since product approval in March, 1999, that administration of the 1.25 mg dose of levalbuterol (as observed in a study by Nelson) results in a greater degree of bronchodilation than a standard 2.5 mg dose of albuterol. It is likely that outcomes with in patients with asthma can be directionally predictive of outcomes in COPD patients as reversible obstructive airways disease is central to the pathophysiology of both disorders. In this context it can be seen that the results of the Donohue study supporting clinical differentiation between levalbuterol and racemic albuterol are not isolated, but rather are entirely consistent with both earlier data that was evaluated by FDA to construct the approved product label and many other studies conducted and reported since approval. Also relevant is FDA's conclusion that levalbuterol should be administered only 3 times per day, although albuterol can be administered 3 or 4 times per day.

Given the difficulties of predicting favorable health outcomes on the characteristics of the patient, the disease, or the short-acting beta agonist treatment regimen, the local contractors must necessarily defer to the clinical decisions of treating physicians. We propose that physicians, based on their evaluation of the available data, their knowledge of their patient's specific clinical circumstances, and their clinical experience with both levalbuterol and racemic albuterol are in the best and most appropriate position to determine the clinical significance of the data that demonstrate differences between levalbuterol and albuterol. Physicians necessarily need to base their prescribing decisions on the data as it exists, as well as the clinical experience they have developed with Xopenex since 1999, as they are ultimately responsible for the care of their patients. We believe that physicians, with the support of the local Medicare contractors, should decide which medications and/or delivery systems are most appropriate for their individual patients.

<u>Coverage for Xopenex Must Be at Least as Broad as Coverage for Albuterol</u>

Also in relation to Question 2, in light of the FDA-approved labeling for Xopenex and the totality of clinical evidence on Xopenex in comparison to albuterol, we concur with the Proposed Decision Memo's assertion that none of the evidence reviewed leads the Agency to conclude that Xopenex produces worse outcomes than albuterol. This conclusion that Xopenex is at least as effective as albuterol is significant because it obligates the Agency to provide coverage for Xopenex that is at least as broad as it provides for albuterol. To reiterate our comments on the NCA, case law holds that "the agency may not play favorites" in evaluating the effectiveness of alternative therapies. *Estate of Aitken v. Shalala*, 986 F. Supp. 57, 63 (D. Mass. 1997).

The plaintiffs in *Aitken* sought injunctive relief against an NCD that refused to cover electrical stimulation therapy ("ES") based on the Health Care Financing Administration's ("HCFA") (the predecessor to CMS) determination that its effectiveness had not been adequately demonstrated. *Id.* at 60. During a review of the report HCFA used to justify its determination, the court stated that –

> [the report's] conclusion that ES is about *as effective* as other therapies ('not markedly superior or inferior') does not support the conclusion that ES is *not effective*. To say that the effectiveness of 'ES plus no therapy' is 'indistinguishable' from that of 'conventional therapy plus no therapy' does not provide an adequate basis for choosing to cover the latter and exclude the former.

Id. at 63. The court further explained that the Agency may not require stronger evidence to demonstrate the effectiveness of one therapy if the same evidence is not required to show effectiveness of the alternative therapy. *Id.* This situation is directly analogous to the Xopenex/albuterol determination. If, as CMS has concluded, that no review of the evidence could result in CMS concluding that Xopenex produces worse outcomes than albuterol, then it could only be concluded that Xopenex is at least as good as albuterol (Sepracor would argue that the labeling for Xopenex and the totality of the clinical evidence supports a conclusion that Xopenex is favorably clinically differentiated from albuterol.) As such, CMS and the local contractors cannot play favorites and must establish coverage for Xopenex that is at least as broad as that which exists for albuterol.

<u>Coverage Determinations May Not Include Payment Considerations, Including LCAs</u>

As CMS finalizes the NCA and, to the extent that the local contractors consider issuing an LCD for Xopenex, Sepracor reiterates that CMS and the local contractors lack the authority to set payment rates, such as LCA payment policies, in an NCD and LCD respectively.

The Medicare statute establishes a distinct dichotomy between coverage and payment determinations. Section 1832 of the Act delineates the types of items and services that are eligible for coverage under Medicare Part B, SSA §1832 (42 U.S.C. §1395k), subject to specific exclusions. SSA § 1862 (42 U.S.C. §1395y). The amount of payment that Medicare will provide for a covered item or service is governed by entirely different provisions. SSA §§ 1833, 1834 (42 U.S.C. §§ 1395*l*, 1395m). Importantly, those statutory payment amount provisions are relevant for items and services only *after* a coverage determination has been made. The statute is very clear with respect to this matter:

> [T]here shall be paid from the Federal Supplementary Medical Insurance Trust Fund, in the case of each individual who is covered under the insurance program established by this part and *incurs expenses for services with respect to which benefits are payable under this part*, amounts equal to—

SSA § 1833(a) (42 U.S.C. § 1395*l*(a)) (emphasis added). Accordingly, payment amount determinations are wholly distinct from and are only made following a determination that "benefits are payable under this part," SSA § 1833(a) (42 U.S.C. § 1395*l*(a)), namely, that a specific item or service is covered.

Congress specifically excluded payment determinations from NCDs, which are reviewable by statute through a unique process. *See* SSA § 1869(f) (42 U.S.C. § 1395ff(f)). Congress defined "national coverage determination" as "a determination by the Secretary with respect to whether or not a particular item or service is covered nationally under this subchapter, *but does not include . . . a determination with respect to the amount of payment made for a particular item or service so covered*." SSA § 1869(f)(1)(B) (42 U.S.C. § 1395ff(f)(1)(B)) (emphasis added); *see also* 42 C.F.R. § 400.202 (indicating that an NCD is a "decision that [the Secretary] makes regarding whether to cover a particular service nationally . . . . [but] does not include a . . . determination with respect to the amount of payment to be made for the service" (emphasis added)). The statutory and regulatory language is clear that NCDs may not be used to make determinations regarding the reimbursement rate for a service.

The local contractors are similarly prohibited from setting payment rates in an LCD. The statute defines a "local coverage determination" as "a determination by a fiscal intermediary or a carrier under part A of this subchapter or part B of this subchapter, as applicable, respecting whether or not a particular item or service *is covered* on an intermediary- or carrier-wide basis under such parts, in accordance with section 1395y(a)(1)(A) of this title." 42 U.S.C. § 1395ff(f)(2)(B) (§ 1869(f)(2)(B)) (emphasis added). Agency regulations clarify that "[a]n LCD may provide that a service is not reasonable and necessary for certain diagnoses and/or for certain diagnosis codes. An LCD does not include a . . . determination with respect to the amount of payment to be made for the service." *Id*. (emphasis added); 42 C.F.R. § 400.202 (emphasis added); 68 Fed. Reg. 63,692, 63,706 (Nov. 7, 2003).

Additional Comments Concerning Long-Acting Beta-Agonist Medications

In our original comments to the NCA we focused on the appropriate use of Xopenex in COPD patients. It appears from the Proposed Decision Memo that CMS also intended to address appropriate coverage criteria for long-acting $beta_2$-agonists ("LABAs") within the scope of the NCA. Upon reviewing the available evidence, CMS has deferred making a National Coverage Determination for LABAs, and has stated that the local Medicare contractors are in the best position to make reasonable and necessary determinations for uses of LABAs.

Two LABA inhalation solutions (Brovana™ and Perforomist™) have been recently approved by the FDA. Brovana is currently commercially available. The results from one of the two pivotal trials supporting FDA approval of Brovana have been published (Baumgartner et al 2007) and this study was reviewed by CMS as part of the NCA. Brovana is indicated for the long term, twice daily (morning and evening) maintenance treatment of bronchoconstriction in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), including chronic bronchitis and emphysema. We believe that the availability of a nebulized LABA is an important addition to the therapeutic armamentarium available for patients with COPD.

The DME PSC's have recently issued an "Article for Nebulizers – Brovana – Coverage Criteria and Billing Instructions June 2007 (A45312)".

We certainly agree with covering Brovana for the ICD-9 diagnosis codes as outlined in the article, and also agree with the maximum of two vials per day. However, we are concerned about the additional requirement that a patient needs to have a documented history of routine use of at least four doses per day of a SABA inhalation solution, particularly given the fact that the FDA-recommended and approved dosage for Xopenex is <u>three</u> times daily (based on the pivotal registration trials conducted in patients with asthma and supported by the 6-week trial conducted in patients with COPD (Donohue et al 2006)). This approved dosage regimen for Xopenex is in contrast to racemic albuterol inhalation solution, which is three-to-four times daily.

As exacerbations and symptomatic episodes are difficult to predict, we believe that the amount of rescue medication covered by Medicare should reflect the prescribing physician's judgment as to how much rescue medication the patient may require on an ongoing basis. We believe that patients should not be placed in a situation in which they might run out of their rescue medication during a time of exacerbation of their illness, and as such, would ask that the local Medicare contractors address this issue as well.

<u>Comments Received by CMS Support Sepracor's Position</u>

CMS noted that a total of 82 comments were received during the first public comment period, and that 56 (67%) of the 82 comments were against restricting the Medicare Part-B coverage of levalbuterol. We note that many of the comments did not address this particular issue, and as such, it should not be inferred that the remaining 33% were in favor of such restrictions. Of the 61 comments that were publicly posted and therefore available for us to review, approximately 50 addressed this specific issue, and of these, the vast majority (~90%) supported clinical advantages of XOPENEX and were in favor of continued coverage and/or no restrictions for levalbuterol.

Thank you for your consideration of these comments.

Sincerely,

Jim Roach, M.D., FACP, FCCP
President, Medical Affairs
Sepracor Inc.

Mark. J. Wanda
Sr. Vice President, Legal Affairs
and Deputy General Counsel
Sepracor Inc.

References

Baumgartner RA, Hanania NA, Calhoun WJ, Sahn SA, Sciarappa K, Hanrahan JP. Nebulized Arformoterol in Patients With COPD: A 12_Week, Multicenter, Randomized, Double-Blind, Double-Dummy, Placebo- and Active-Controlled Trial. Clin Ther 2007; 29(2): 261-78.

Datta D, Vitale A, Lahiri B, ZuWallack R. An Evaluation of Nebulized Levalbuterol in Stable COPD. Chest 2003; 124:844-849.

Donohue JF, Parsey M, Andrews C, D'Urzo T, Sharma S, Schaefer K, Claus R, Baumgartner R. Evaluation of the Efficacy and Safety of Levalbuterol in Subjects with COPD. COPD: Journal of COPD 2006; 3:125-132.

Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease. Updated 2006. Available from: www.goldcopd.org.

Baumgartner RA, Hanania NA, Calhoun WJ, Sahn SA, Sciarappa K, Hanrahan JP. Nebulized Arformoterol in Patients With COPD: A 12_Week, Multicenter, Randomized, Double-Blind, Double-Dummy, Placebo- and Active-Controlled Trial. Clin Ther 2007; 29(2): 261-78.

Nebulized Arformoterol in Patients with COPD: A 12-Week, Multicenter, Randomized, Double-Blind, Double-Dummy, Placebo- and Active-Controlled Trial

Rudolf A. Baumgartner, MD[1]; Nicola A. Hanania, MD[2]; William J. Calhoun, MD[3]; Steven A. Sahn, MD[4]; Kenneth Sciarappa, PhD[1]; and John P. Hanrahan, MD, MPH[1]

[1]Sepracor Inc., Marlborough, Massachusetts; [2]Section of Pulmonology and Critical Care Medicine, Baylor College of Medicine, Houston, Texas; [3]Department of Internal Medicine, University of Texas Medical Branch, Allergy, Pulmonology, Immunology, and Sleep, Galveston, Texas; and [4]Division of Pulmonary, Critical Care, Allergy, and Sleep Medicine, Medical University of South Carolina, Charleston, South Carolina

ABSTRACT

Objective: The aim of this study was to assess the efficacy and tolerability of nebulized arformoterol tartrate (a selective, long-acting β_2-adrenergic agonist that is the (*R*,*R*)-isomer of formoterol) and salmeterol xinafoate versus placebo in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD).

Methods: This 12-week, multicenter, randomized, double-blind, double-dummy, placebo- and active-controlled trial was conducted at 60 centers across the United States. Male and female patients aged ≥35 years with physician-diagnosed COPD received arformoterol (15 µg BID, 25 µg BID, or 50 µg QD via nebulizer), salmeterol (42 µg BID via metered dose inhaler), or placebo. Pulmonary function was assessed by spirometry; dyspnea, by the Transitional Dyspnea Index (TDI); and health status, by the St. George's Respiratory Questionnaire (SGRQ). Adverse events (AEs) were assessed by site personnel at all clinic visits (screening, first dose at week 0, and at weeks 3, 6, 9, 12, and follow-up). *COPD exacerbations* were defined as worsening respiratory status requiring a change in medication or an unscheduled provider visit.

Results: A total of 717 patients received study medication. The demographic composition of all treatment arms was similar. The mean age was 62.9 years, 58% were men, and mean baseline forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV_1) was 1.2 L (41% predicted). Mean improvement in trough FEV_1 over 12 weeks was significantly greater with all 3 arformoterol doses (15 µg BID, +16.9%; 25 µg BID, +18.9%; 50 µg QD, +14.9%) and for salmeterol (+17.4%) relative to placebo (+6.0%; $P < 0.001$). There were significantly greater improvements in the mean percentage change in FEV_1 $AUC_{0-12\,h}$ from the predose value over 12 weeks (15 µg BID, 12.7%; 25 µg BID, 13.9%; 50 µg QD, 18.9%; salmeterol, 9.8%) versus placebo (2.7%; $P \le 0.001$); all doses of arformoterol were statistically different from salmeterol for this end point ($P \le 0.024$). At week 12, TDI focal scores were significantly greater with all arformoterol doses compared with placebo (mean [95% CI]: 15 µg BID, 0.97 [0.25–1.69]; 25 µg BID, 1.08 [0.3–1.86]; 50 µg QD, 1.04 [0.32–1.77]), suggesting treatment-associated improvement in dyspnea; however, the difference between salmeterol and placebo was not statistically significant (0.36 [–0.40 to 1.12]). Improvements in health status, as measured using SGRQ total scores, were –2.6 to –3.6 U in the arformoterol groups, –4.4 U for salmeterol, and –1.2 U for placebo; 95% CI of differences versus placebo suggested significant improvement for the arformoterol 25 µg BID and salmeterol groups. There was a similar frequency of AEs and COPD exacerbations across all groups, including placebo.

Conclusions: In this trial, patients with moderate to severe COPD administered nebulized arformoterol over 12 weeks were observed to have significant and sustained improvements in airway function and dyspnea

A portion of these data was previously presented in abstract form at the 102nd International Congress of the American Thoracic Society, May 19–24, 2006, San Diego, California.

Accepted for publication January 12, 2007.

Express Track online publication February 21, 2007.
doi:10.1016/j.clinthera.2007.02.009
0149-2918/$32.00

compared with placebo. The results also suggest that all doses of arformoterol, including the lowest dose (15 µg BID), were effective. Overall, nebulized arformoterol was well tolerated. (*Clin Ther.* 2007;29:261–278)

Key words: long-acting β_2-agonists, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, lung function, symptoms, placebo-controlled, inhalation solution.

INTRODUCTION

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) affects ~24 million people in the United States.[1] The estimated number of patients with COPD has increased by 41.5% since 1982.[2] COPD is currently the fourth leading cause of death in the United States, but is expected to be the third leading cause of death by 2020.[3] Bronchodilators, including long-acting β_2-agonists (LABAs), are central for symptom management in COPD,[2,4] and improve airway function and other clinically meaningful outcomes, such as exacerbation frequency, rescue medication use, and patient-reported outcomes (eg, dyspnea, health status).[5,6]

While most available inhaled bronchodilators are administered using metered dose inhalers (MDIs) or dry powder inhalers, there are some patients for whom nebulization may be a preferred route of administration.[7–9] However, until recently, there were no LABAs formulated as inhalational solutions for use in a nebulizer.

The LABA arformoterol is the (*R,R*) isomer of formoterol.[10,11] In preclinical studies measuring inhibition of tracheal smooth muscle contraction, arformoterol had 2-fold greater potency compared with formoterol and was ~100- to 200-fold more potent as a β-agonist than albuterol.[12] In contrast, receptor stimulation, smooth muscle relaxation, and inhibition of spasmogen response studies[12,13] have found that the (*S,S*) isomer of formoterol was 1000-fold less potent as a β-agonist than the (*R,R*) isomer.

In this trial, we assessed the efficacy and tolerability of multiple daily doses of nebulized arformoterol administered for 12 weeks in patients with COPD.

PATIENTS AND METHODS

This multicenter, randomized, double-blind, double-dummy, placebo- and active-controlled, parallel group trial was performed in 60 centers across the United States. The study was conducted according to US Food and Drug Administration regulations and guidelines, which encompass the principles established by Good Clinical Practice[14] and the Declaration of Helsinki and its amendments.[15] The institutional review boards for each of the 60 study sites approved the protocol, and written informed consent was obtained from each patient.

Inclusion and Exclusion Criteria

Eligible patients were 35 years of age and older with physician-diagnosed COPD and had a baseline forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV_1) ≤65% of predicted but FEV_1 >0.70 L, FEV_1/forced vital capacity ratio ≤70%, ≥15 pack-year smoking history, and breathlessness severity of ≥2 (ie, shortness of breath when hurrying on the level or walking up a slight hill) on the Medical Research Council dyspnea scale.[16] Patients who had life-threatening or unstable respiratory status within 30 days before screening; a diagnosis of asthma and/or any chronic respiratory disease (including sleep apnea) other than COPD; lung resection >1 full lobe; and/or continuous use of supplemental oxygen (unless they resided at an elevation ≥4000 feet [1219.2 m]) were excluded.

The use of other LABAs and/or anticholinergic medications was prohibited during the study. However, patients receiving corticosteroids (inhaled or oral), xanthines, or leukotriene antagonists were allowed to continue on these medications provided the dose was stable for at least 14 days prior to study entry and maintained throughout the study. Leukotriene antagonists and xanthines were withheld for at least 24 hours prior to each clinic visit.

Study Design

We investigated the efficacy and tolerability of multiple daily doses of nebulized arformoterol (15 µg BID, 25 µg BID, and 50 µg QD) in comparison with placebo. Salmeterol (42 µg BID) administered by an MDI was included as an active control.

Albuterol MDI and ipratropium MDI were provided as rescue and supplemental medications, respectively, for use as needed throughout the trial including the single-blind placebo run-in period. Patients were instructed in the use of these medications and told to withhold them for 6 hours prior to each clinic visit.

After screening, patients entered a 2-week, single-blind placebo run-in period. Following the run-in, eligible patients were randomized to receive 12 weeks of arformoterol 15 µg BID, arformoterol 25 µg BID, arformoterol 50 µg QD, placebo, or salmeterol MDI

42 µg BID. In this double-dummy design, patients received one of the active treatments or placebo; and an inactive unit dose vial or MDI, as appropriate. The initial dose of study medication was administered on the day of randomization (at the start of week 0). Patients returned to the clinic every 3 weeks for follow-up evaluations (at weeks 3, 6, 9, and 12). Serial spirometry was performed in all patients before and then immediately post–first dose, and at 15 and 40 minutes, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 12, 23, and 24 hours post–first dose at weeks 0, 6, and 12. Reversibility to racemic albuterol (2 puffs of 90 µg each, self-administered 15 to 30 minutes prior to testing) was assessed between screening and randomization, but was not an inclusion criterion.

Treatments

Unit dose vials, supplied by Sepracor Inc. (Marlborough, Massachusetts), contained 2 mL of inhalation solution of arformoterol 50 µg, arformoterol 25 µg, arformoterol 15 µg, or placebo, administered using a nebulizer (PARI LC Plus with DURA-NEB 3000 compressor, PARI Respiratory Equipment, Inc., Midlothian, Virginia). MDI canisters, also supplied by Sepracor Inc., delivered salmeterol 42 µg BID (SEREVENT inhalation aerosol, GlaxoSmithKline, Research Triangle Park, North Carolina) or matching placebo BID. Patients were instructed in the use of all devices by clinic personnel during the run-in period.

Spacers were permitted for all MDIs in patients who ordinarily received their medication this way.

Treatment compliance was assessed from patient responses on diary cards that were completed on a daily basis.

Study End Points

The primary end point was the mean percentage change (%Δ) from baseline (prior to the first dose at week 0) in morning trough FEV_1, analyzed over the 12-week double-blind period (adjusted mean from serial spirometry performed at weeks 0, 6, and 12). Trough FEV_1 was the morning value obtained at the end of the dosing interval (ie, 12 hours after the evening dose for the BID treatment arms and 24 hours after the morning dose for the QD treatment arm). Mean %Δ trough FEV_1 was also analyzed separately at weeks 0, 6, and 12.

The key secondary end point was the mean %Δ FEV_1 AUC averaged over time 0 to 12 hours after study drug administration ($AUC_{0-12\,h}$) measured from visit predose values. This outcome, a measure of bronchodilation over the 12 hours after study drug administration, was analyzed over the 12-week double-blind period and separately at weeks 0, 6, and 12. Additional spirometry end points included: mean peak %Δ FEV_1 from visit predose, mean peak percent predicted FEV_1, and mean time to onset of response (defined as a 10% improvement in FEV_1 from visit predose values), in the 12 hours after study drug administration.

Symptoms and other patient-reported outcomes were also assessed. Parameters assessing rescue and supplemental medication use included the mean changes from baseline (obtained in the 3-week period prior to dosing) in the number of days of use per week and number of actuations used per day. The Baseline Dyspnea Index[17] was assessed prior to dosing at the start of the run-in period. The Transitional Dyspnea Index (TDI)[17] was assessed at week 12. The St. George's Respiratory Questionnaire (SGRQ)[18] was administered at baseline and at week 6. The SGRQ consisted of 3 component scores (symptoms, activity, and impact) and a total score. A 6-minute walk distance test[19] was conducted at the screening visit and at week 9 at 3 to 4 hours after study drug administration. Symptoms assessed on a Subject Global Evaluation questionnaire (an instrument rating subjective change in status administered at the screening visit and at week 12), were rated on a 7-point ordinal scale (0 = much better to 6 = much worse).

Protocol-defined COPD exacerbations (respiratory adverse events [AEs] or symptoms leading to changes in baseline medication or unscheduled medical visits) were assessed. Additional tolerability end points included AEs and cardiovascular outcomes (including mean Δ heart rate [HR] and corrected QT interval by Fridericia's formula [QTc-F] at 2 hours after study drug administration measured by electrocardiography [ECG], and mean change in hourly HR from baseline, measured using 24-hour ambulatory ECG). Potassium and glucose concentrations were also determined at screening and during the treatment period after the first dose at week 0, and at weeks 3, 6, 9, and 12. Samples were obtained prior to dosing and 2 and 6 hours after study drug administration.

Statistical Methods

The study was designed to detect a 10% difference in trough FEV_1 (the primary end point) between each active-treatment group and placebo with 85% power. Due to multiple treatment comparisons, α levels for the primary efficacy analysis of the primary end point were derived using Bonferroni's adjustment to control the overall type I error at 5%. No adjustments were made for secondary comparisons.

All efficacy analyses were performed on the intent-to-treat (ITT) population, according to the treatment assigned. The ITT population included all patients randomized to double-blind treatment and took at least 1 dose of double-blind study medication. All significance testing was 2-tailed and conducted at a significance level of 0.05, unless otherwise noted. Interaction terms were tested at the 10% level. All pairwise comparisons between treatment groups were performed using least squares means from the repeated-measures linear model.

The analysis of the primary efficacy end point used SAS PROC MIXED (SAS Institute Inc., Cary, North Carolina) with restricted maximum likelihood estimation to fit a repeated-measures linear model with fixed effects for treatment, time (weeks 0, 6, and 12), treatment-by-time interaction, and site type, with baseline FEV_1 as a covariate, and treatment-by-baseline FEV_1 interaction.[20,21] Analysis of the %Δ FEV_1 $AUC_{0-12\ h}$ was performed similarly to the primary efficacy end point, with visit predose FEV_1 as the covariate.

Descriptive statistics were calculated by treatment group for baseline variables and each efficacy end point. Where appropriate, 95% CIs for differences in treatment group means or proportions were calculated post hoc. If the 95% CI for the treatment difference excluded zero, this was considered statistically significant at the 5% level in testing hypotheses of no treatment difference versus treatment difference. For differences in proportions, the normal approximation was used.

The median time to response was estimated using the Kaplan-Meier product-limit method using linear interpolation; 95% CIs were estimated.[22] Patients with no response within 12 hours after first study drug administration were censored at the time of their 12-hour assessment. For this end point, spirometry measurements collected after rescue/supplemental medication use were excluded. Nonresponders with missing or excluded data prior to 12 hours were censored at the time of their last valid FEV_1 measurement.

A data safety monitoring board (DSMB) periodically reviewed AE and other safety data for the trial. The DSMB did not review any efficacy data, and no statistical testing or formal stopping rules were used. The DSMB did not recommend modification or early discontinuation of the trial.

RESULTS

Of 917 patients enrolled, 724 were randomized and 717 received study medication (58% were men; mean age, 62.9 years; mean baseline FEV_1, 1.2 L [41% predicted]; ITT, 141 arformoterol 15 µg BID, 143 arformoterol 25 µg BID, 146 arformoterol 50 µg QD, 144 salmeterol, and 143 placebo). Overall, 82% of patients completed the study. The most common reason for discontinuation was an AE (arformoterol 15 µg BID, 5.7%; arformoterol 25 µg BID, 11.9%; arformoterol 50 µg QD, 6.2%; salmeterol, 9.0%; placebo, 9.8%) (**Figure 1**). COPD AEs were the most frequently reported AE leading to discontinuation (4.2%, 0.7%, 2.8%, 1.4%, and 2.8% in the respective groups).

The groups were well balanced for age, sex, race, and baseline disease (Table I). Patients had moderate or more severe COPD as determined by the Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD) criteria.[4]

Spirometry

Significantly greater improvement in morning trough FEV_1 was observed over the 12-week double-blind period for all 3 doses of arformoterol (%Δ from baseline: 15 µg BID, +16.9%; 25 µg BID, +18.9%; and 50 µg QD, +14.9%) and for salmeterol (+17.4%) relative to placebo (+6.0%) (all, $P < 0.001$). Improvements in bronchodilation were evident over the 24-hour dosing interval and at trough after the first dose (at week 0) and after 12 weeks of study drug administration (all, $P \le 0.003$) (Table II and Figure 2). There was some reduction in the degree of improvement in trough FEV_1 in all groups between weeks 0 and 6, but little additional decline occurred between weeks 6 and 12. Nonetheless, statistically significant improvement relative to placebo was observed throughout the 12 weeks of treatment (Table II).

Significant improvements in FEV_1 $AUC_{0-12\ h}$ were observed at all time points for the arformoterol groups (all, $P \le 0.002$) in comparison with placebo (Table II). Greater improvement in FEV_1 $AUC_{0-12\ h}$ was also observed for the arformoterol groups compared with salmeterol over the 12-week double-blind

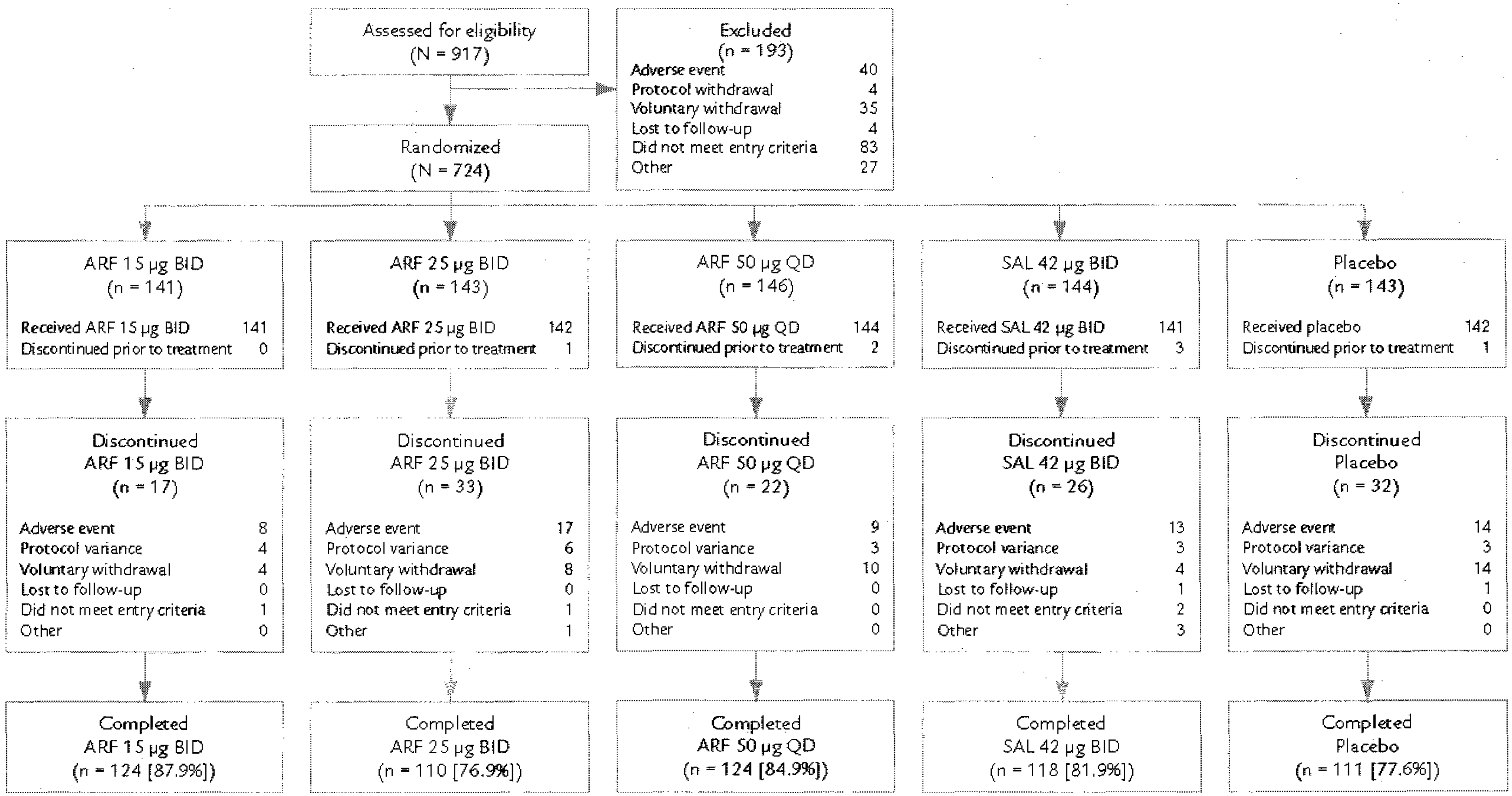


Figure 1. Patient disposition. ARF = arformoterol; SAL = salmeterol.

Table I. Baseline demographic and clinical characteristics of the study patients.

Characteristic	Arformoterol 15 μg BID (n = 141)	Arformoterol 25 μg BID (n = 143)	Arformoterol 50 μg QD (n = 146)	Salmeterol 42 μg BID (n = 144)	Placebo (n = 143)	Total (N = 717)
Age, mean (SD), y	62.0 (9.1)	63.5 (9.2)	62.4 (9.4)	63.4 (8.8)	63.1 (8.4)	62.9 (9.0)
Sex, no. (%)						
Male	72 (51.1)	81 (56.6)	85 (58.2)	87 (60.4)	91 (63.6)	416 (58.0)
Female	69 (48.9)	62 (43.4)	61 (41.8)	57 (39.6)	52 (36.4)	301 (42.0)
Race, no. (%)*						
White	132 (93.6)	138 (96.5)	140 (95.9)	133 (92.4)	137 (95.8)	680 (94.8)
Black	6 (4.3)	5 (3.5)	3 (2.1)	7 (4.9)	4 (2.8)	25 (3.5)
Hispanic	2 (1.4)	0	2 (1.4)	4 (2.8)	1 (0.7)	9 (1.3)
Asian	1 (0.7)	0	1 (0.7)	0	1 (0.7)	3 (0.4)
Weight, mean (SD), kg	81.2 (17.5)	81.3 (21.9)	81.5 (20.9)	81.1 (19.1)	83.6 (15.9)	81.7 (19.1)
Smoking habit, no. (%)						
Current smoker	61 (43.3)	62 (43.4)	71 (48.6)	50 (34.7)	62 (43.4)	306 (42.7)
Total pack-years						
15–<30 pack-years	18 (12.8)	19 (13.3)	22 (15.1)	20 (13.9)	16 (11.2)	95 (13.2)
≥30 pack-years	123 (87.2)	124 (86.7)	124 (84.9)	124 (86.1)	127 (88.8)	622 (86.8)
FEV_1						
Mean (SD), L	1.19 (0.4)	1.16 (0.5)	1.24 (0.4)	1.26 (0.4)	1.25 (0.5)	1.22 (0.5)
% Predicted, mean (SD)	40.2 (12.4)	39.6 (13.5)	40.9 (13.4)	41.6 (13.2)	40.6 (12.6)	40.6 (13.0)
Reversibility, mean (SD)						
% FEV_1	16.6 (13.5)	18.8 (18.7)	18.4 (14.0)	20.7 (15.9)	16.2 (15.4)	18.2 (15.7)
% Predicted FEV_1	6.2 (5.1)	6.3 (6.5)	6.6 (4.8)	7.6 (5.8)	6.0 (5.5)	6.5 (5.6)
Steroid use,† no. (%)	28 (19.9)	41 (28.7)	49 (33.6)	46 (31.9)	28 (19.6)	192 (26.8)

FEV_1 = forced expiratory volume in 1 second.
*Percentages may not total 100% due to rounding.
†Includes patients who were receiving inhalational and systemic (oral, intravenous, intramuscular) corticosteroids at baseline (determined post hoc).

period (%Δ from predose: 15 μg BID, +12.7%; 25 μg BID, +13.9%; 50 μg QD, +18.9%; salmeterol, +9.8%; all, $P \leq 0.024$).

For all doses of arformoterol, significant improvements in mean peak %Δ FEV_1 were observed over the 12-week double-blind period and at weeks 0, 6, and 12 in comparison with placebo (all, $P \leq 0.001$) (Table II). Improvement was significantly greater for all doses of arformoterol compared with salmeterol over the 12-week double-blind period and at week 12 for this end point (all, $P \leq 0.003$) (Table II).

For FEV_1 $AUC_{0\text{-}12\,h}$ and peak %Δ FEV_1, greater improvements versus placebo were observed at the first dose (week 0) than after study drug administration at weeks 6 and 12, due in part to the increase in predose (trough) FEV_1 among patients receiving active treatments. For each of these outcomes, treatment-related improvement in airway function was greater in patients with more severe predose FEV_1 compromise (data not shown).

The mean peak percent predicted FEV_1 values over the double-blind period were 50.5% in the arformoterol 15-μg BID group, 50.9% in the 25-μg BID group, and 52.5% in the 50-μg QD group. The differences between each arformoterol group and placebo (46.0%), and between each arformoterol group and salmeterol (48.6%), were statistically significant (all, $P < 0.001$).

Table II. Spirometry results in a 12-week trial in patients receiving arformoterol, salmeterol, or placebo for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.*

Parameter	Arformoterol 15 μg BID	Arformoterol 25 μg BID	Arformoterol 50 μg QD	Salmeterol 42 μg BID	Placebo
%Δ FEV_1 from baseline to 24-hour trough/end of the dosing interval					
Week 0 (post–1st dose)					
No. of patients	128	134	135	127	126
LSM (SE)	22.12† (1.7)	23.87† (1.7)	18.27† (1.7)	21.05† (1.7)	6.83 (1.7)
Week 6					
No. of patients	121	120	120	120	106
LSM (SE)	14.82† (1.9)	17.62† (1.9)	13.23† (1.9)	15.88† (1.9)	6.22 (2.0)
Week 12					
No. of patients	110	95	110	104	94
LSM (SE)	13.82† (2.0)	15.28† (2.1)	13.21† (2.0)	15.12† (2.0)	4.95 (2.1)
%Δ FEV_1 $AUC_{0-12\ h}$ from predose					
Week 0 (post-1st dose)					
No. of patients	141	142	145	140	143
LSM (SE)	21.80† (1.4)	24.19†‡ (1.4)	26.33†‡ (1.4)	18.83† (1.4)	3.56 (1.4)
Week 6					
No. of patients	129	124	133	128	118
LSM (SE)	8.96†‡ (1.2)	10.02†‡ (1.2)	14.35†‡ (1.2)	5.70† (1.2)	1.91 (1.2)
Week 12					
No. of patients	120	105	120	114	105
LSM (SE)	7.22† (1.0)	7.35† (1.1)	16.02†‡ (1.0)	4.83 (1.1)	2.72 (1.1)
Peak %Δ FEV_1 from predose					
Week 0 (post-1st dose)					
No. of patients	141	142	146	139	143
LSM (SE)	33.52† (1.7)	37.71†‡ (1.7)	36.94†‡ (1.69)	29.49† (1.7)	15.24 (1.7)
Week 6					
No. of patients	128	124	134	128	118
LSM (SE)	22.33†‡ (1.4)	23.10†‡ (1.5)	28.51†‡ (1.4)	15.50 (1.5)	12.36 (1.5)
Week 12					
No. of patients	121	105	120	113	103
LSM (SE)	21.21†‡ (1.2)	20.48†‡ (1.3)	28.56†‡ (1.2)	15.13 (1.3)	13.61 (1.3)

%Δ = percentage change; FEV_1 = forced expiratory volume in 1 second; LSM = least squares mean.

*Postdose FEV_1 values within 6 hours following supplemental or rescue medication use were excluded from the analysis. LSMs were estimated from a linear model with effects for treatment, time (weeks 0, 6, and 12), treatment-by-time interaction, site type, baseline FEV_1, and treatment-by-baseline FEV_1 interaction.

†$P < 0.01$ versus placebo.

‡$P < 0.05$ versus salmeterol.

Significantly greater proportions of patients in the active-treatment groups achieved increases in FEV_1 of at least 10% after the first dose at week 0 compared with the placebo group (range for arformoterol doses, 94%–96%; salmeterol, 85%). At week 12, significantly greater proportions of patients in the arformoterol groups achieved increases from predose levels of at least 10% compared with that in the placebo

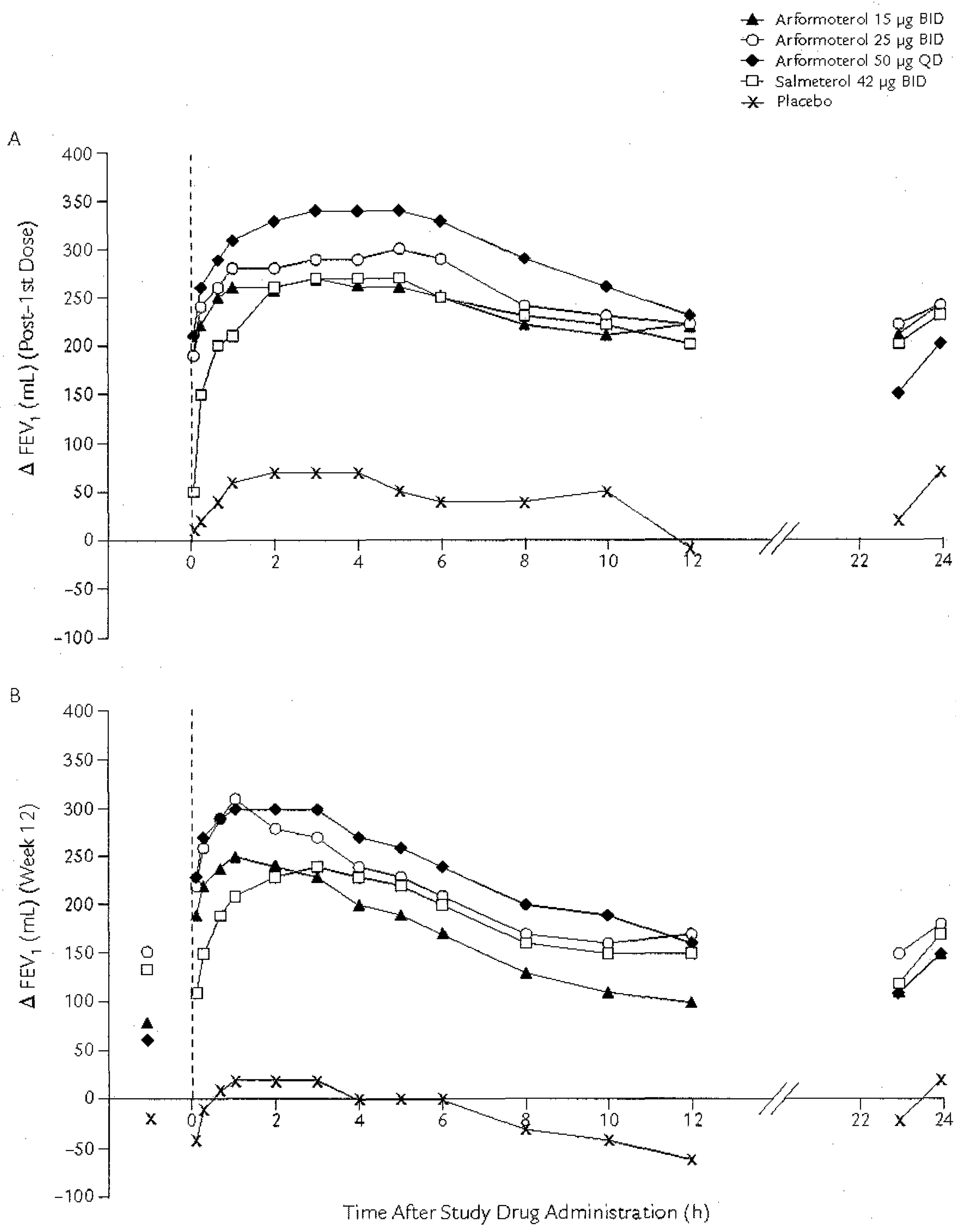


Figure 2. Changes from baseline in forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV_1) at weeks (A) 0 and (B) 12 in a 12-week trial in patients receiving arformoterol, salmeterol, or placebo for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Dashed line indicates time of study drug administration. Symbols prior to study drug administration at week 12 represent the mean change from baseline in visit predose FEV_1 from baseline for each treatment group.

group (range for arformoterol doses, 77%–88%; placebo, 48%). Fewer responders (58%) were observed in the salmeterol group, a proportion that did not differ significantly from placebo (Table III). The overall treatment differences in time to response were statistically significant (overall, $P < 0.001$), with a median time to response that was shorter in the arformoterol groups in comparison with the salmeterol and placebo groups after the first dose and after 12 weeks of study drug administration (Table III).

Patient-Reported Outcomes

At week 12, improvements in dyspnea, as reflected by mean TDI focal scores, were observed with all doses of arformoterol, but not in the salmeterol or placebo groups (range for arformoterol doses, 2.0–2.2 U; salmeterol, 1.4 U; placebo, 1.1 U) (Figure 3). The mean (95% CI) differences between mean TDI focal score increases in each arformoterol group and placebo were statistically significant: 0.97 U (0.25–1.69) in the arformoterol 15-µg BID group, 1.08 U (0.3–1.86) in the 25-µg BID group, and 1.04 U (0.32–1.77) in the 50-µg QD group. The difference between salmeterol and placebo (0.36 U) was not statistically significant (95% CI, −0.40 to 1.12). Improvement in the TDI focal score of ≥1 U, a metric reported to be clinically important,[23] was observed at week 12 in 57% to 62% of arformoterol-treated patients compared with 50% of salmeterol-treated patients and 37% of patients in the placebo group.

Improvements in mean SGRQ total scores at week 6 ranged from −2.6 to −3.6 U in the arformoterol groups and were −4.4 U in the salmeterol group and −1.2 U in the placebo group. The mean differences versus placebo (95% CIs) were −1.62 U (−3.85 to 0.61) in the arformoterol 15-µg BID group, −2.44 U (−4.62 to −0.26) in the arformoterol 25-µg BID group, −1.41 U (−3.64 to 0.83) in the arformoterol 50-µg QD group, and −3.18 (−5.44 to −0.92) in the salmeterol group. The greatest improvements were observed in the symptom domain for all active treatments (range, −4.1 to −8.3 U); in the placebo group, this value was −1.1 U (Figure 4).

Patients in the active-treatment groups had similar mean decreases in the use of supplemental ipratropium (Δ, −1.1 to −1.2 d/wk and −0.8 to −0.9 actuations/d) and rescue albuterol (Δ, −0.8 to −1.2 d/wk and −0.6 to −0.9 actuations/d) that were stable over 12 weeks of daily dosing (Table IV). These decreases in supplemental/rescue medications were significantly greater in the active-treatment groups versus the placebo group (Table IV).

After 12 weeks, between 72.2% and 75.6% of patients in the active-treatment groups reported feeling "better" on the Subject Global Evaluation compared with 55.2% of patients in the placebo group. The proportions of patients who reported worsening symptoms were 4.6% to 6.7% in the arformoterol groups, 10.6% in the salmeterol group, and 15.2% in the placebo group.

There were no statistically significant differences (95% CIs included zero; data not shown) between treatment groups with respect to mean improvements from baseline in the 6-minute walk test at week 9. These improvements ranged from 35.0 to 88.0 feet (10.7–26.8 m) in the arformoterol groups, 104.0 feet (31.7 m) in the salmeterol group, and 92.5 feet (28.2 m) in the placebo group.

Tolerability

The AE profiles of the 3 doses of arformoterol were similar to those of the active-control salmeterol and placebo, including serious AEs and COPD AEs (Table V). Overall, most serious AEs were respiratory or cardiovascular in nature. Dose-related increases in tremor and nervousness were observed in the arformoterol groups. The overall frequency of COPD exacerbations was similar between the active-treatment and placebo groups (11.6%–13.9% vs 16.9%) and was stable over the course of the trial: the frequencies of exacerbations during the first 3 weeks were 6.4% in the arformoterol 15-µg BID group, 6.3% in the arformoterol 25-µg BID group, 2.1% in the arformoterol 50-µg QD group, 5.6% in the salmeterol group, and 4.9% in the placebo group. During the last 3 weeks, the rates were 4.0%, 5.2%, 3.2%, 3.3%, and 6.1%, respectively.

There were dose-related changes in serum potassium and glucose concentrations with increasing doses of arformoterol. The mean decreases in potassium concentrations at week 12 ranged from −0.05 to −0.19 mEq/L at 2 hours and −0.12 to −0.18 mEq/L at 6 hours after study drug administration (salmeterol, −0.02 and −0.14 mEq/L, respectively; placebo, 0.00 and −0.10 mEq/L, respectively). The mean increases in glucose concentrations in the arformoterol groups at week 12 ranged from 6.2 to 26.0 mg/dL at 2 hours and 9.1 to 18.8 mg/dL at 6 hours after study drug ad-

Table III. Response* in a 12-week trial in patients receiving arformoterol, salmeterol, or placebo for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.†

	Arformoterol				
Parameter	15 µg BID	25 µg BID	50 µg QD	Salmeterol 42 µg BID	Placebo
Week 0 (post-1st dose)					
No. of patients	141	143	145	141	143
Responders, no. (%)	135 (95.7)	134 (93.7)	138 (95.2)	120 (85.1)	79 (55.2)
% Difference from placebo (95% CI)	40.5 (30.5 to 50.5)	38.5 (28.4 to 48.6)	39.9 (30.0 to 49.9)	29.9 (19.2 to 40.5)	–
% Difference from salmeterol (95% CI)	10.6 (3.8 to 17.5)	8.6 (1.5 to 15.8)	10.1 (3.2 to 17.0)	–	–
Time to response, median (95% CI), min	2.4 (1.7 to 3.0)	1.8 (1.6 to 2.5)	2.2 (1.6 to 2.8)	15.2 (12.4 to 20.9)	171.3 (101.0 to 412.3)
Week 12					
No. of patients	120	105	120	113	105
Responders, no. (%)	97 (80.8)	81 (77.1)	105 (87.5)	66 (58.4)	50 (47.6)
% Difference from placebo (95% CI)	33.2 (20.8 to 45.7)	29.5 (16.4 to 42.6)	39.9 (27.8 to 52.0)	10.8 (–2.5 to 24.0)	–
% Difference from salmeterol (95% CI)	22.4 (10.7 to 34.2)	18.7 (6.3 to 31.2)	29.1 (17.7 to 40.5)	–	–
Time to response, median (95% CI), min	10.3 (3.8 to 24.2)	14.3 (9.6 to 34.6)	3.5 (2.6 to 7.3)	132.3 (98.9 to 246.3)	326.6 (106.5 to N/A)

FEV_1 = forced expiratory volume in 1 second.

*Defined as a ≥10% change in FEV_1 from values at visit predose.

†Nonresponders were censored at the 12-hour assessment. Data after supplemental/rescue medication use were excluded. Nonresponders with excluded or missing data prior to 12 hours were censored at the last valid FEV_1 measurement.

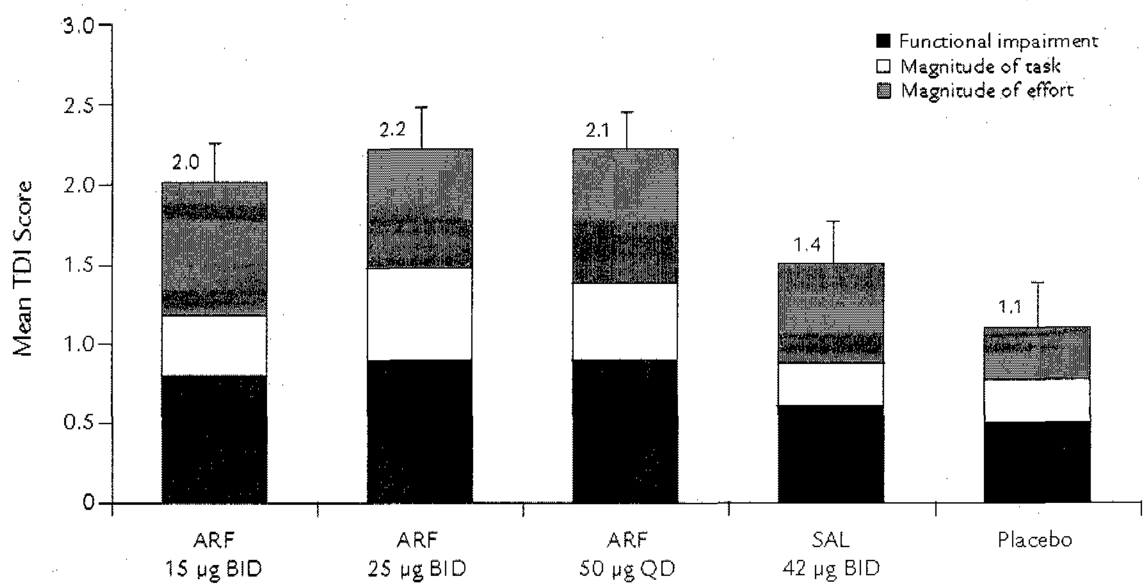


Figure 3. Mean (SE) Transitional Dyspnea Index (TDI) focal score at week 12 in a 12-week trial in patients receiving arformoterol, salmeterol, or placebo for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Mean scores may not be equal to the sum of the means of the functional impairment, magnitude of task, and magnitude of effort due to missing data. ARF = arformoterol; SAL = salmeterol. Between-treatment differences are described in the text.

ministration (salmeterol, 14.7 and 8.0 mg/dL, respectively; placebo, 3.8 and 4.7 mg/dL, respectively).

At week 12, dose-related increases in HR (measured from vital signs) 2 hours after study drug administration from predose levels observed were found with increasing doses of arformoterol (range, 1.2–5.5 bpm; salmeterol, 2.1 bpm; placebo, 0.6 bpm).

In the arformoterol groups, no consistent dose-related mean changes in QTc-F were observed 2 hours after study drug administration at week 0 (arformoterol 15 µg BID, 2.6 ms; arformoterol 25 µg BID, 1.5 ms; arformoterol 50 µg QD, 4.3 ms) or at week 12 (3.6, –1.7, and 2.4 ms, respectively). The mean changes in QTc-F values were 0.6 and –0.3 ms in the salmeterol group at weeks 0 and 12, respectively, and –1.4 and 0.3 ms, respectively, in the placebo group.

Changes from baseline in mean hourly HR observed during 24-hour ambulatory monitoring were similar at weeks 0, 6, and 12 in all treatment groups. Changes at week 0 were –1.7 bpm in the arformoterol 15-µg BID group, –0.2 bpm in the 25-µg BID group, 0.6 bpm in the 50-µg QD group, 0 bpm in the salmeterol group, and –1.3 bpm in the placebo group. At week 12, the mean hourly changes in HR were –2.6, –0.7, –0.1, –2.0, and –0.2 bpm in the respective groups.

DISCUSSION

The results of this clinical trial in patients with COPD suggest that daily treatment with each of 3 different doses of nebulized arformoterol was effective in improving bronchodilation over 12 weeks. Arformoterol administration was associated with clinically and statistically significant improvements in mean %Δ FEV_1 to the end of the dosing interval (morning trough FEV_1) in comparison with placebo. In general, arformoterol doses >15 µg BID were associated with only small, incremental improvements in bronchodilator efficacy. Substantial improvements from predose or trough levels in bronchodilation were also observed in FEV_1 measured over the dosing interval (FEV_1 $AUC_{0-12\,h}$) and in peak improvements in FEV_1 (peak %Δ FEV_1). Substantial improvements in airway function and patient-reported symptom improvement scale scores were observed when compared with those in the placebo group. Changes in these and other out-

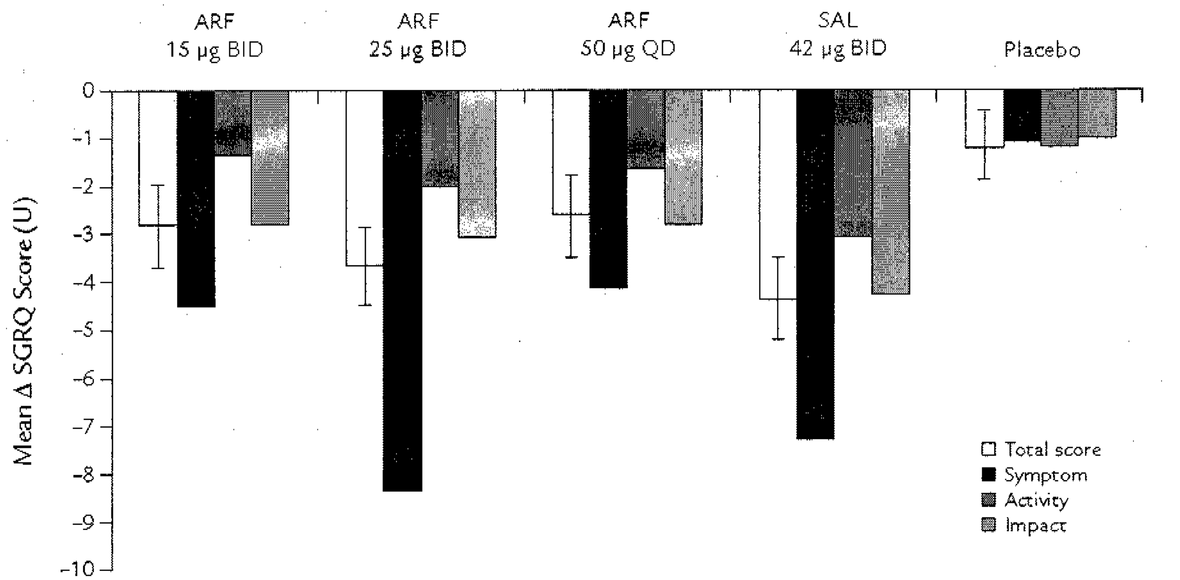


Figure 4. Mean changes from baseline in St. George's Respiratory Questionnaire (SGRQ)[18] scores at week 6 in a 12-week trial in patients receiving arformoterol, salmeterol, or placebo for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. SEs for the total scores are shown; each represents ±1 SE. Larger decreases indicate greater improvement from baseline. ARF = arformoterol; SAL = salmeterol. Between-treatment differences are described in the text.

comes in the active treatments versus placebo groups were evident even though patients in all groups could use 2 bronchodilators with different mechanisms of action (ipratropium and albuterol) as needed for symptom relief.

The extent and time course of FEV_1 improvement differed in arformoterol- versus salmeterol-treated patients. Bronchodilation was rapid in the arformoterol groups, as measured by the median time required for patients to achieve a 10% increase in FEV_1 from predose levels (<3 minutes at week 0 and <15 minutes at week 12). The median time to response was longer in the salmeterol group (15 minutes at week 0 and 132 minutes at week 12). Improvements in FEV_1 from visit predose values (FEV_1 $AUC_{0-12\ h}$ and peak %Δ FEV_1) also were greater with arformoterol treatment compared with salmeterol.

Tolerance, defined as a diminution in the extent of bronchodilator response over time, was evident in all active-treatment groups. The extent of improvement in trough FEV_1 at week 6 declined from week 0 by 26% to 33% in the arformoterol groups, and by 25% in the salmeterol group. Despite declines in the first 6 weeks, clinically meaningful and statistically significant bronchodilation continued to be observed in the arformoterol and salmeterol groups in comparison with placebo for all lung function outcome variables, including peak percent predicted FEV_1, throughout the 12 weeks of treatment. Importantly, no increases in the frequency of COPD exacerbations over time were observed among patients receiving the active treatments.

FEV_1 is an important indicator of COPD severity.[25] However, FEV_1 is imperfectly associated with other clinical signs and symptoms indicative of COPD severity and patients' response to treatment. In 1 study, dyspnea and health status were more predictive of risk for death than was FEV_1.[26]

Dyspnea is an important symptom in COPD that is associated with morbidity and risk for death in these patients. Therefore, effective treatments target improvement in dyspnea.[27] In this trial, clinically meaningful improvement[23] in TDI[17] was observed in 57% to 62% of patients receiving arformoterol, compared with 51% and 37% of patients receiving salmeterol and placebo, respectively. These findings were also consistent with the observed improvement in the SGRQ symptom domain scores[28] of 4 to 8 U in the active-

Table IV. Supplemental (ipratropium) and rescue (albuterol) medication use in a 12-week trial in patients receiving arformoterol, salmeterol, or placebo for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.

	Arformoterol				
Parameter	15 μg BID	25 μg BID	50 μg QD	Salmeterol 42 μg BID	Placebo
Supplemental ipratropium					
Baseline*					
No. of patients	141	143	146	144	143
Mean (SD), d/wk	4.06 (2.7)	3.70 (2.6)	3.94 (2.7)	3.95 (2.8)	4.41 (2.6)
Mean (SD), actuations/d	2.74 (2.7)	2.69 (3.1)	2.65 (2.6)	2.80 (2.8)	3.03 (2.5)
Weeks 0–3					
No. of patients	141	141	146	144	142
Δ, Mean (SD), d/wk	−1.02 (1.9)	−1.18 (2.1)	−1.00 (2.1)	−1.11 (1.8)	−0.48 (1.7)
Δ, Mean (SD), actuations/d	−0.87 (1.7)	−0.79 (2.0)	−0.88 (1.7)	−0.93 (1.5)	−0.26 (1.5)
Weeks 9–12					
No. of patients	123	115	122	116	111
Δ, Mean (SD), d/wk	−1.02 (2.4)	−1.10 (2.2)	−1.14 (2.5)	−1.30 (2.6)	−0.33 (2.2)
Δ, Mean (SD), actuations/d	−0.88 (2.1)	−0.89 (2.6)	−0.85 (1.7)	−0.93 (1.8)	0.00 (2.2)
Weeks 0–12					
Difference versus placebo					
No. of patients	139	141	143	141	139
Mean (95% CI), d/wk	−0.52 (−0.97 to −0.07)	−0.60 (−1.05 to −0.15)	−0.61 (−1.07 to −0.16)	−0.58 (−1.03 to −0.12)	–
Mean (95% CI), actuations/d	−0.57 (−0.98 to −0.17)	−0.53 (−0.98 to −0.08)	−0.62 (−1.00 to −0.24)	−0.62 (−1.00 to −0.23)	–

(continued)

Table IV. (Continued)

Parameter	Arformoterol 15 μg BID	Arformoterol 25 μg BID	Arformoterol 50 μg QD	Salmeterol 42 μg BID	Placebo
Rescue albuterol					
Baseline*					
No. of patients	141	143	146	144	143
Mean (SD), d/wk	2.99 (2.8)	3.17 (2.8)	3.09 (2.7)	3.02 (2.7)	3.25 (2.6)
Mean (SD), actuations/d	1.98 (2.6)	2.36 (3.3)	1.97 (2.5)	1.97 (2.4)	2.05 (2.3)
Weeks 0–3					
No. of patients	141	141	146	144	142
Δ, Mean (SD), d/wk	−0.69 (1.8)	−1.12 (2.0)	−0.79 (2.0)	−0.75 (1.9)	−0.20 (1.7)
Δ, Mean (SD), actuations/d	−0.62 (1.4)	−0.89 (2.0)	−0.78 (1.7)	−0.58 (1.6)	−0.06 (1.6)
Weeks 9–12					
No. of patients	123	115	122	116	111
Δ, Mean (SD), d/wk	−0.58 (2.2)	−1.14 (2.3)	−0.64 (2.4)	−0.68 (2.2)	−0.01 (2.1)
Δ, Mean (SD), actuations/d	−0.61 (1.7)	−0.76 (2.7)	−0.59 (1.9)	−0.42 (1.7)	0.36 (2.1)
Weeks 0–12					
Difference versus placebo					
No. of patients	139	141	143	141	139
Mean (95% CI), d/wk	−0.42 (−0.85 to 0)	−0.91 (−1.36 to −0.46)	−0.52 (−0.96 to −0.07)	−0.50 (−0.93 to −0.07)	–
Mean (95% CI), actuations/d	−0.68 (−1.07 to −0.29)	−0.95 (−1.44 to −0.46)	−0.75 (−1.15 to −0.34)	−0.50 (−0.99 to −0.21)	

*Obtained in the 3-week period before the administration of the first dose of study medication.

Table V. Tolerability in a 12-week trial in patients receiving arformoterol, salmeterol, or placebo for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). Values are no. (%) of patients.

	Arformoterol				
Parameter	15 μg BID (n = 141)	25 μg BID (n = 143)	50 μg QD (n = 146)	Salmeterol 42 μg BID (n = 144)	Placebo (n = 143)
Any AE*	95 (67.4)	101 (70.6)	104 (71.2)	99 (68.8)	103 (72.0)
AE type					
Respiratory	55 (39.0)	57 (39.9)	49 (33.6)	55 (38.2)	54 (37.8)
COPD†	8 (5.7)	9 (6.3)	10 (6.8)	15 (10.4)	12 (8.4)
Nervous system	18 (12.8)	22 (15.4)	24 (16.4)	10 (6.9)	11 (7.7)
Nervousness	2 (1.4)	2 (1.4)	5 (3.4)	0	0
Tremor	1 (0.7)	2 (1.4)	15 (10.3)	0	0
Cardiovascular	10 (7.1)	16 (11.2)	14 (9.6)	23 (16.0)	19 (13.3)
Arrhythmic‡	3 (2.1)	8 (5.6)	4 (2.7)	11 (7.6)	10 (7.0)
Ischemic§	0	0	3 (2.1)	2 (1.4)	1 (0.7)
Serious AEs	6 (4.3)	6 (4.2)	5 (3.4)	5 (3.5)	11 (7.7)
Respiratory	1 (0.7)	3 (2.1)	1 (0.7)	3 (2.1)	4 (2.8)
Cardiovascular	3 (2.1)	1 (0.7)	1 (0.7)	1 (0.7)	2 (1.4)
AEs that led to discontinuation	5 (3.5)	16 (11.2)	9 (6.2)	14 (9.7)	13 (9.1)
AEs that led to death‖	2 (1.4)	0	0	0	0
COPD exacerbation¶	19 (13.5)	19 (13.3)	17 (11.6)	20 (13.9)	24 (16.8)

AE = adverse event.
*Subjects with >1 AE were counted once for each type of event.
†Identified by investigators as AEs.
‡*Coding Symbols for the Thesaurus of Adverse Reaction Terms* (*COSTART*)[24] preferred terms for arrhythmia, atrial fibrillation, atrial flutter, atrioventricular (AV) block, AV block second degree, extrasystoles, ventricular or supraventricular extrasystoles, heart block, supraventricular tachycardia, syncope, tachycardia, ventricular fibrillation, ventricular arrhythmia, and ventricular tachycardia.
§*COSTART* preferred terms for angina pectoris, myocardial infarct, myocardial ischemia, bundle branch block, coronary artery disorder, ST depressed, ST elevated, or T-wave inverted.
‖Due to (1) hepatic lacerations secondary to a motor vehicle accident after 27 days on double-blind treatment and (2) complications following surgery for elective abdominal aortic aneurysm 4 days after the last dose. Both assessed as not related to treatment.
¶Defined in the protocol as an increase in symptoms leading to any change in baseline medication or additional medical attention (eg, hospitalization, emergency department visit).

treatment groups. As a further reflection of improved bronchodilation and symptoms, patients in the active-treatment groups had stable and consistent decreases in the use of supplemental ipratropium and rescue albuterol throughout the 12-week treatment period. Of patients treated with arformoterol, 72% to 76% reported overall improvement over the course of the trial, compared with 73% with salmeterol and 55% with placebo. Only marginal improvement was observed in the 6-minute walk distances in the active-treatment groups; this value did not differ from that with placebo. In other clinical trials in COPD, treatment-related improvement in exercise capacity with LABA use has not been consistently observed.[29,30]

The AE profiles of the 3 doses of arformoterol were similar to those of salmeterol and placebo. The frequency of COPD exacerbations was marginally lower in all arformoterol groups in comparison with the placebo group and did not increase over 12 weeks of treatment. There were no differences in the rates of cardiovascular AEs, including ECG parameters, cardiac repolarization, or arrhythmias as ascertained by 24-hour ambulatory ECG monitoring in patients treated with arformoterol relative to placebo. There were expected dose-related changes in serum potassium and glucose concentrations, as well as certain β-mediated AEs (tremor and nervousness) with increasing doses of arformoterol.

Arformoterol is unique in 2 ways: (1) it is the single (*R,R*) isomer of formoterol that has been demonstrated both in vitro[10,12,13] and in vivo[31] to provide the β-agonist activity of the racemate, and (2) it has been formulated as an inhalation solution. At present, arformoterol is the only nebulized long-acting bronchodilator approved for the treatment of COPD in the United States. A nebulized delivery system may be a more beneficial route of administration in some patients with COPD, especially those who have difficulty performing the coordinated deep inhalation required for effective use of single-breath inhalers, those without the dexterity required to manipulate a handheld device, and those with severe airway function impairment who cannot achieve a minimum inspiratory velocity and/or time for adequate drug delivery by dry powder inhalers.[32]

Potential limitations of this study related to its relatively short treatment duration (12 weeks) and entry criteria that limited the participation of patients with mild disease.

CONCLUSIONS

In this large, multicenter trial, arformoterol inhalation solution was observed to provide statistically significant and clinically meaningful long-term improvement in lung function over 12 weeks relative to placebo, and was well tolerated. In this study, the lowest dose of arformoterol tested (15 µg BID) was effective, and higher doses conferred only small, incremental improvements. Consensus guidelines support the use of long-acting bronchodilators in the treatment of COPD patients with moderate or severe degrees of airway function impairment. These results suggest that arformoterol is an effective option for patients with COPD who could benefit from sustained bronchodilation therapy delivered through nebulization.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Financial support for this study was provided by Sepracor Inc. Data were compiled, and statistical analyses for this study were performed, by Sepracor Inc. and were fully available to all authors. All authors were involved in the preparation of the manuscript.

Dr. Calhoun is a consultant for, and has received a research grant from, Sepracor Inc. Dr. Hanania is a consultant for, is an advisory board member at, and has received a research grant from, Sepracor Inc.

The authors thank Amy Wilson, PhD (Sepracor Inc.) for her assistance with the development of the manuscript. The authors also thank the investigators who participated in this trial: Victor F. Almufdi, Theodore R. Amgott, Luis E. Angles, Jonathan A. Bernstein, Bruce T. Bowling, Shari A. Brazinsky, Michael A. Brown, Jonathan Corren, Bruce C. Corser, Peter J. Costantini, Edward C. Cullen, Randy G. Dotson, Steven L. Duckor, Barry K. Feinstein, Eric L. Fernandez, Charles M. Fogarty, Walter N. Gaman, Stuart M. Garay, Gregory M. Gottschlich, Gary I. Greenwald, Robert E. Grubbe, Charles B. Herring, Frederick C. Hiller, E. Walter Hood, Benjamin Interiano, Jeffrey J. Kaladas, Lawrence D. Kaplan, Mitchell G. Kaye, Edward M. Kerwin, Kenneth T. Kim, Sylvia K. Knowlton, Craig F. LaForce, Eric A. Lang, Robert J. Lapidus, Dennis K. Ledford, Theodore M. Lee, Stephen R. Lewis, James H. Lott III, Bernard A. Michlin, William S. Mullican, Robert A. Nathan, Anjuli S. Nayak, Harold S. Nelson, Diane M. Normandin, Rohit G. Patel, Vandana A. Patel, Albert J. Razzetti, Stanley A. Rosenberg, Steven A. Sahn, Emil J. Schelbar, Jeffrey S. Schwartz, Joram S. Seggev, Thomas M. Siler, Stuart J. Simon, Selwyn Spangenthal, George E. Stewart II, James R. Taylor, Mark A. Wentworth, and Jan H. Westerman.

The DSMB consisted of Drs. Bernard R. Chaitman (chair), James F. Donohue, and Elizabeth Mauger.

REFERENCES

1. Mannino DM. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: Definition and epidemiology. *Respir Care.* 2003;48: 1185–1191, discussion 1191–1193.
2. The American Thoracic Society. Standards for the diagnosis and care of patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* 1995;152 (Suppl):S77–S121.
3. Murray CJ, Lopez AD. Alternative projections of mortality and disability by cause 1990–2020: Global Burden of Disease Study. *Lancet.* 1997;349:1498–1504.
4. Pauwels RA, Buist AS, Calverley PM, et al, for the NHLBI/WHO Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD) Scientific Committee. Global strategy for the diagnosis, management, and prevention of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* 2001;163:1256–1276.

5. Mahler DA. The effect of inhaled beta$_2$-agonists on clinical outcomes in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *J Allergy Clin Immunol.* 2002; 110(Suppl 6):S298–S303.
6. Appleton S, Poole P, Smith B, et al. Long-active beta$_2$-agonists for poorly reversible chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2006;3:CD001104.
7. O'Donohue WJ Jr, for the National Association for Medical Direction of Respiratory Care (NAMDRC) Consensus Group. Guidelines for the use of nebulizers in the home and at domiciliary sites. *Chest.* 1996;109: 814–820.
8. Boe J, Dennis JH, O'Driscoll BR, et al, for the European Respiratory Task Force on the Use of Nebulizers. European Respiratory Society Guidelines on the use of nebulizers. *Eur Respir J.* 2001;18:228–242.
9. British Thoracic Society, Standards of Care Committee, Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease Guidelines Group. BTS guidelines for the management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax.* 1997;52 (Suppl 5):S1–S28.
10. Trofast J, Osterberg K, Kallstrom BL, Waldeck B. Steric aspects of agonism and antagonism at beta-adrenoceptors: Synthesis of and pharmacological experiments with the enantiomers of formoterol and their diastereomers. *Chirality.* 1991; 3:443–450.
11. Handley DA, Senanayake CH, Dutczak W, et al. Biological actions of formoterol isomers. *Pulm Pharmacol Ther.* 2002;15:135–145.
12. Zhang XY, Zhu FX, Olszewski MA, Robinson NE. Effects of enantiomers of beta$_2$-agonists on ACh release and smooth muscle contraction in the trachea. *Am J Physiol.* 1998;274:L32–L38.
13. Schmidt D, Kallstrom BL, Waldeck B, et al. The effect of the enantiomers of formoterol on inherent and induced tone in guinea-pig trachea and human bronchus. *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol.* 2000;361:405–409.
14. European Agency for the Evaluation of Medicinal Products, International Conference on Harmonisation–World Health Organization. Guideline for Good Clinical Practice [EMEA Web site]. ICH Topic E6. Geneva, Switzerland: WHO; 2002. Available at: http://www.emea.eu.int.
15. World Medical Association Declaration of Helsinki: Ethical Principles for Medical Research Involving Human Subjects [WMA Web site]. Adopted by the 18th WMA General Assembly, Helsinki, Finland, June 1964, and amended by the 52nd WMA General Assembly, Edinburgh, Scotland, October 2000. Available at: http://www.wma.net/e/policy/b3.htm. Accessed December 15, 2006.
16. Bestall JC, Paul EA, Garrod R, et al. Usefulness of the Medical Research Council (MRC) dyspnoea scale as a measure of disability in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax.* 1999;54:581–586.
17. Mahler DA, Weinberg DH, Wells CK, Feinstein AR. The measurement of dyspnea: Contents, interobserver agreement, and physiologic correlates of two new clinical indexes. *Chest.* 1984;85:751–758.
18. Jones PW, Quirk FH, Baveystock CM, Littlejohns P. A self-complete measure of health status for chronic airflow limitation. The St. George's Respiratory Questionnaire. *Am Rev Respir Dis.* 1992;145:1321–1327.
19. American Thoracic Society (ATS), Committee on Proficiency Standards for Clinical Pulmonary Function Laboratories. ATS statement: Guidelines for the six-minute walk test. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* 2002; 166:111–117.
20. Diggle PJ, Liang K-Y, Zeger SL. *Analysis of Longitudinal Data.* New York, NY: Oxford University Press; 1994.
21. Guerin L, Stroup WW. A simulation study to evaluate PROC MIXED analysis of repeated measures data. In: Proceedings of the 12th Annual Conference on Applied Statistics in Agriculture; Manhattan, Kan; 2000.
22. Brookmeyer R, Crowley J. A confidence interval for the median survival time. *Biometrics.* 1982;38:29–41.
23. Witek TJ Jr, Mahler DA. Minimal important difference of transition dyspnoea index in a multinational clinical trial. *Eur Respir J.* 2003;21: 267–272.
24. *Coding Symbols for Thesaurus of Adverse Reaction Terms (COSTART).* 5th ed. Rockville, Md: Dept of Health and Human Services, US Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, 1995.
25. Anthonisen NR, Wright EC. Bronchodilator response in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am Rev Respir Dis.* 1986;133:814–819.
26. Nishimura K, Izumi T, Tsukino M, Oga T. Dyspnea is a better predictor of 5-year survival than airway obstruction in patients with COPD. *Chest.* 2002;121:1434–1440.
27. American Thoracic Society. Dyspnea. Mechanisms, assessment, and management: A consensus statement. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* 1999;159: 321–340.
28. Jones PW. Interpreting thresholds for a clinically significant change in health status in asthma and COPD. *Eur Respir J.* 2002;19:398–404.
29. Grove A, Lipworth BJ, Reid P, et al. Effects of regular salmeterol on lung function and exercise capacity in patients with chronic obstructive airways disease. *Thorax.* 1996;51:689–693.
30. Boyd G, Morice AH, Pounsford JC, et al. An evaluation of salmeterol in the treatment of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) [published correction appears in *Eur Respir J.* 1997;10:1696]. *Eur Respir J.* 1997;10:815–821.
31. Fozard JR, Buescher H. Comparison of the anti-bronchoconstrictor activities of inhaled formoterol, its (*R,R*)- and (*S,S*)-enantiomers and salmeterol in the rhesus monkey.

Pulm Pharmacol Ther. 2001;14:289-295.

32. Dolovich MB, Ahrens RC, Hess DR, et al, for the American College of Chest Physicians and the American College of Asthma, Allergy, and Immunology. Device selection and outcomes of aerosol therapy: Evidence-based guidelines: American College of Chest Physicians/American College of Asthma, Allergy, and Immunology. *Chest.* 2005;127:335-371.

Address correspondence to: John P. Hanrahan, MD, MPH, Sepracor Inc., 84 Waterford Drive, Marlborough, MA 01752. E-mail: john.hanrahan@sepracor.com

Datta D, Vitale A, Lahiri B, ZuWallack R. An evaluation of nebulized levalbuterol in stable COPD. *Chest* 2003; 124:844-849.

An Evaluation of Nebulized Levalbuterol in Stable COPD*

Debapriya Datta, MD; Anthony Vitale, BS, RPh; Bimalin Lahiri, MD, FCCP; and Richard ZuWallack, MD, FCCP

Background: Levalbuterol, the R-isomer of albuterol, has advantages over racemic albuterol in asthma; however, the effectiveness of this β-agonist in COPD has received little attention.
Objectives: To evaluate the effectiveness of a single dose of nebulized levalbuterol in COPD.
Design: A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial comparing nebulized levalbuterol to racemic albuterol, combined racemic albuterol and ipratropium, and placebo.
Patients: Thirty patients with stable COPD (FEV_1 between 45% and 70% of predicted) were studied.
Methods: After withholding usual bronchodilator medications for appropriate washout periods, patients were randomized on separate visits to receive single doses of each the following nebulized bronchodilator medications: (1) levalbuterol, 1.25 mg; (2) racemic albuterol, 2.5 mg; (3) combined racemic albuterol, 2.5 mg, and ipratropium, 0.5 mg; or (4) placebo. FEV_1, FVC, pulse rate, and oxygen saturation were measured at baseline, 0.5 h following nebulization, and hourly for 6 h. Hand tremor, using a 7-point scale, was measured at baseline, 0.5 h, 1 h, and 2 h. Treatment-placebo differences were analyzed using repeated-measures analysis of variance and least-squares means.
Results: The mean age (± SD) of patients was 69 ± 15 years. Mean FEV_1 was 1.15 ± 0.49 L. By 0.5 h following study drug administration, all three nebulized bronchodilator treatments led to similar, significant improvements in FEV_1 compared to placebo. These effects persisted at 1 h and 2 h for all three treatments; however, by 3 h, only the combined albuterol/ipratropium group had a mean change in FEV_1 significantly greater than placebo. There were no significant differences between bronchodilator groups at any time period. A mild increase in pulse rate was observed in all treatment groups. There were no significant treatment-placebo differences in oxygen saturation or hand tremor.
Conclusion: For single-dose, as-needed use in COPD, there appears to be no advantage in using levalbuterol over conventional nebulized bronchodilators. *(CHEST 2003; 124:844–849)*

Key words: bronchodilator; COPD; levalbuterol

COPD is characterized by limitation to airflow, which is caused by chronic bronchitis and/or emphysema.[1] Symptomatic disease is usually treated with maintenance bronchodilators, including inhaled anticholinergics, long-acting β-agonists, and theophylline, and supplemented with as-needed, short-acting, inhaled β-agonists.[2] The anticholinergic bronchodilator ipratropium can be added to short-acting β-agonists to augment peak bronchodilation and duration of effect.[3]

Racemic albuterol, the most commonly prescribed short-acting β-agonist for relief of symptoms, is a 1:1 mixture of two mirror-image isomers, R-albuterol (levalbuterol) and S-albuterol.[4] The R-isomer is predominately responsible for the bronchodilator effect of albuterol and, *in vitro*, has a higher affinity for β receptors than racemic albuterol.[5] The S-isomer, which is cleared at less than one tenth the rate of the R-isomer,[6] has potentially negative effects, including elevation of intracellular calcium levels,[7] small increases in bronchial hyperresponsiveness,[8] a proinflammatory effect,[9] and possible inverse agonist action.[10,11] These effects may explain the finding that, in asthma patients with an $FEV_1 < 60\%$ of predicted, 1.25 mg of nebulized levalbuterol pro-

*From the Section of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine (Drs. Lahiri and ZuWallack) and Department of Pharmacy (Mr. Vitale), St. Francis Hospital & Medical Center, Hartford; and Division of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine (Dr. Datta), University of Connecticut Health Center, Farmington, CT.
Manuscript received December 3, 2002; revision accepted March 25, 2003.

Correspondence to: Richard ZuWallack, MD, FCCP, Section of Pulmonary and Critical Care Medicine, St. Francis Hospital & Medical Center, 114 Woodland St, Hartford, CT 06105; e-mail: rzuwalla@stfranciscare.org

vided more bronchodilation than an otherwise equivalent 2.5-mg dose of the racemic drug.[10] The clinical significance of these potential negative influences of S-albuterol, however, has been questioned,[12,13] and a study[14] showed comparable potency and side effects of levalbuterol and racemic albuterol in patients with asthma.

Although levalbuterol has been studied in asthma, the potential usefulness of this short-acting bronchodilator in COPD has received little attention. Accordingly, this randomized, double-blinded, placebo-controlled, crossover trial was designed to compare the bronchodilator effect and side effects of single doses of nebulized levalbuterol with two commonly used as-needed bronchodilator regimens for COPD: racemic albuterol alone and combined racemic albuterol and ipratropium.

Materials and Methods

Patients

Thirty patients with a clinical diagnosis of COPD were recruited from office practices and a pulmonary clinic. Inclusion criteria were as follows: (1) signed informed consent approved by the institutional review board of the hospital; (2) a clinical diagnosis of COPD; (3) an FEV_1 between 45% and 70% of predicted, and an FEV_1/FVC ratio < 0.70; (4) stable disease, as indicated by the absence of a clinical exacerbation and no change in COPD medications in the preceding month; and (5) the ability of patients to withhold their bronchodilator medications for the appropriate washout time prior to each testing. Exclusion criteria were as follows: (1) a clinical diagnosis of asthma, and (2) any coexisting medical problem that might interfere with the conduct of the study or place the patient at risk by participating. Prior to the study, information on patient demographics and disease severity was obtained. This information included age, sex, race, height, weight, duration of COPD, history of hospitalizations for COPD, and current medications.

Study Design

This was a double-blind, crossover trial comparing single doses of the following four different nebulized treatments in randomized sequence, on separate days, at least 24 h apart: (1) racemic albuterol, 2.5 mg; (2) levalbuterol, 1.25 mg; (3) combined racemic albuterol, 2.5 mg, and ipratropium, 0.5 mg; and (4) placebo (normal saline solution). All test medications were diluted to 3 mL using normal saline solution, when necessary, and were dispensed as unit doses. An A Airlife Misty-Neb nebulizer (Allegiance HealthCare Corporation; McGaw Park, IL) was used to deliver the treatment; each patient used the same nebulizer apparatus for all four treatments. Maintenance bronchodilator medications were withheld prior to each test drug administration according to the following schedule: theophylline, 48 h; salmeterol, 24 h; ipratropium, 8 h, and albuterol, 6 h.

Measurements

The major outcome variable was the FEV_1. Other variables included FVC, pulse rate, oxygen saturation (determined by pulse oximetry), and hand tremor. Since we could not find a validated scale for hand tremor, we used the following 7-point scale: 0 = no tremor, 1 = very slight tremor, 2 = mild tremor, 3 = mild-to-moderate tremor, 4 = moderate tremor, 5 = moderate-to-severe tremor, and 6 = severe tremor. The tremor of both pronated hands, with arms extended and slightly flexed, was rated. The same blinded investigator rated tremor in all patients. Testing commenced between 7 AM and 9 AM. FEV_1, FVC, pulse rate, and oxygen saturation were measured immediately prior to drug nebulization, 0.5 h following drug administration, and hourly for 6 h. Hand tremor was measured at baseline, 0.5 h, 1 h, and 2 h.

Statistical Analysis

Patient characteristics are presented as mean ± SD. Comparisons of outcome variables among the study drugs at each time point were performed using repeated-measures analysis of variance, with least-squares means analyses for group comparisons. There was no significant drug order effect on outcome in this crossover study. Outcome variables are expressed as mean ± SE. Between-treatment changes were considered primary outcomes; $p < 0.05$ was considered significant.

Results

Of the 30 patients studied, 25 were men and 5 were women (mean age, 69 ± 15 years). The duration of COPD was 5.3 ± 4.5 years, and FEV_1 was 1.15 ± 0.49 L. Twenty percent were receiving supplemental oxygen, and 13% were receiving oral corticosteroids. All patients were receiving as-needed, short-acting β-agonists, and most were receiving long-acting β-agonists. Sixty percent of the patients were receiving inhaled steroids.

The mean changes in FEV_1 from baseline for the four groups are shown in Table 1 and Figure 1. By 0.5 h following study drug administration, all three nebulized bronchodilator treatments led to similar, significant improvements in FEV_1 compared to placebo (between-group changes). These effects persisted at 1 h for all three treatments. By 2 h, only the combined albuterol/ipratropium group had a mean change in FEV_1 significantly greater than placebo ($p = 0.04$), although the bronchodilator effects of albuterol and levalbuterol tended to be significant at this time period ($p = 0.09$ and $p = 0.12$, respectively). The combined albuterol/ipratropium effect persisted to 3 h. There were no significant differences between bronchodilator groups at any time period.

The percentage of patients with a positive bronchodilator response (*ie*, both a > 12% increase and a > 0.20-L increase in FEV_1) in the albuterol, combined albuterol/ipratropium, and levalbuterol groups was similar at 0.5 h (43%, 43%, and 40%, respectively) and significantly greater than placebo (13%) [$p = 0.02$, $p = 0.02$, and $p = 0.03$, respectively]. By 1 h, the proportion of bronchodilator responders in the three treatment groups remained similar (47%,

Table 1—*Change in FEV_1 (Milliliters) From Baseline Following Study Drug Administration**

Medications	0.5 h	1 h	2 h	3 h	4 h	5 h	6 h
Albuterol	199‡	197†	193	124	102	091	043
Albuterol/ipratropium	198‡	247‡	211†	180†	147	089	017
Levalbuterol	178†	216‡	186	105	077	050	017
Placebo	066	071	102	054	066	040	000

*All treatment groups resulted in significant increases in FEV_1 compared to placebo at 0.5 h and 1 h. Only combined racemic albuterol/ipratropium led to a significant treatment-placebo difference in FEV_1 past 1 h.
†$p < 0.05$ vs placebo.
‡$p < 0.01$ vs placebo.

53%, and 40%, respectively), vs placebo (13%) [p = 0.007, p = 0.001, and p = 0.03, respectively]. By 2 h and 3 h, only the proportion of bronchodilator responders in the combined albuterol/ipratropium group (43% and 40%, respectively) remained significantly greater than placebo (17% and 7%, respectively) [p = 0.03 and p = 0.003, respectively]. None of the bronchodilators led to a bronchodilator response significantly greater than placebo from 4 to 6 h.

The change in FVC from baseline is shown in Table 2. Similar to FEV_1, all three treatments resulted in similar, significant increases in FVC compared to placebo at 0.5 h. This effect remained

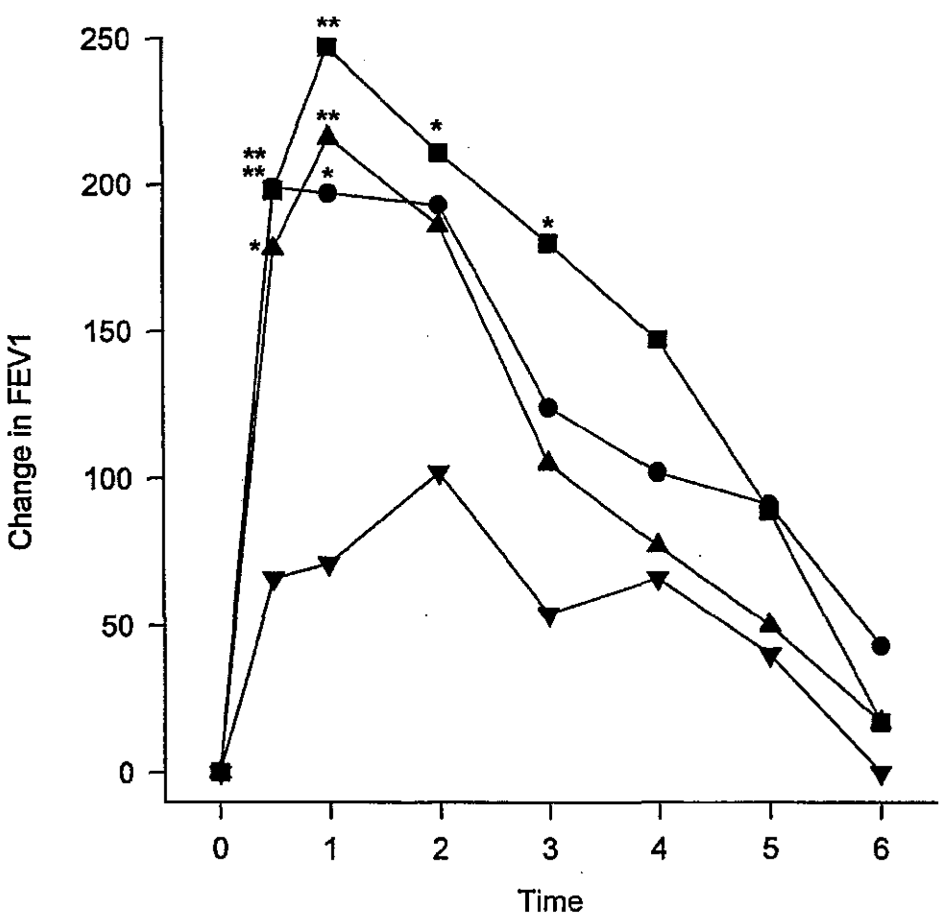


FIGURE 1. Changes in FEV_1 (in milliliters) over 6 h. ● = albuterol; ■ = albuterol/ipratropium; ▲ = levalbuterol; ▼ = placebo; *$p < 0.05$ vs placebo; **$p < 0.01$ vs placebo. All treatment groups resulted in significant increases in FEV_1 at 0.5 h and 1 h. Only combined racemic albuterol/ipratropium led to a significant increase in FEV_1 past 1 h.

Table 2—*Change in FVC From Baseline Following Study Drug Administration**

Medications	0.5 h	1 h	2 h	3 h	4 h	5 h	6 h
Albuterol	350‡	316	297	182	140	088	005
Albuterol/ipratropium	328‡	381†	287	339	232	146	134
Levalbuterol	250†	274	244	112	025	− 011	− 070
Placebo	102	135	173	183	206	069	000

*All treatment groups resulted in significant increases in FVC (measured in milliliters) compared to placebo at 0.5 h and 1 h. No significant treatment-placebo differences were present past 1 h.

†$p < 0.05$ vs placebo.

‡$p < 0.01$ vs placebo.

significant at 1 h only for the combined albuterol/ipratropium group. There were no significant treatment-placebo differences from 2 h onward, due in part to an increase in FVC in the placebo arm during the first 4 h of the study.

The effect of the bronchodilators on pulse rate, oxygen saturation, and tremor score are given in Tables 3–5, respectively. Albuterol and levalbuterol resulted in similar, small increases in pulse at 0.5 h, but this effect disappeared by 1 h. There were no significant differences in oxygen saturation. Although the tremor score increased by less than one-half unit in all groups, there were no significant group differences in this outcome measure.

Discussion

The purpose of this study was to compare the effectiveness and side effects of a 1.25-mg dose of nebulized levalbuterol with two commonly used nebulized rescue bronchodilator regimens for COPD: 2.5 mg of racemic albuterol, and the combination of 2.5 mg racemic albuterol and 0.5 mg ipratropium. The R-isomer of the racemic drug has virtually all of the bronchodilator activity of albuterol. If, as a previous study[15] in asthma might suggest, the S-isomer opposes the bronchodilator effect of the R-isomer, 1.25 mg of levalbuterol might be more effective than 2.50 mg of the racemic drug. In our study, levalbuterol resulted in significant bronchodilation compared to placebo at 0.5 h and 1 h following nebulization, but the magnitude of this effect was not significantly different from that of racemic albuterol or the combination of racemic albuterol and ipratropium. Although Figure 1 suggests that all bronchodilators appeared to have numerical benefit compared to placebo for 3 to 5 h after dosing, only the combination therapy led to significant bronchodilation past the 1-h observation period, and then only for 3 h. All three nebulized bronchodilator regimens were well tolerated. There was an increase in pulse in all three regimens, but this was only between 5 to 6 beats/min and was only observed at 0.5 h following drug administration. There were no significant treatment-placebo differences in oxygen saturation or hand tremor at any time period. Small but significant increases in hand tremor occurred with all treatments (including placebo), suggesting a strong placebo effect.

These results suggest that with single-dose, as-needed use, there is no special benefit from nebulized levalbuterol over racemic albuterol in patients with COPD. Furthermore, the bronchodilator duration of these short-acting β-agonists appears to be significantly less than when the anticholinergic bronchodilator ipratropium is added in combination. This is in accord with previous studies[3,16] testing this combination against its components. Of interest, the duration of action of both racemic albuterol and levalbuterol in our study is shorter than that described in other COPD trials. For instance, in a study of 652 patients with COPD, the mean duration of FEV_1 response > 15% over baseline on day 1 of testing was 3 h for 3 mg of nebulized albuterol.[3] The

Table 3—*Change in Pulse Rate From Baseline Following Study Drug Administration**

Medications	0.5 h	1 h	2 h	3 h	4 h	5 h	6 h
Albuterol	5.5†	2.5	2.6	0.7	3.2	2.2	1
Albuterol/ipratropium	3.5	1.9	− 0.2	0.2	− 0.6	1.1	1.1
Levalbuterol	5.6†	3.7	2.7	2.4	− 0.1	3.3	2
Placebo	− 0.8	0	1.4	− 1.6	− 1	0.5	1

*Small increases in pulse rate (measured in beats/min) compared to placebo were noted at 0.5 h following nebulization with racemic albuterol and levalbuterol.

†$p < 0.01$ vs placebo.

Table 4—*Change in Oxygen Saturation From Baseline Following Study Drug Administration**

Medications	0.5 h	1 h	2 h	3 h	4 h	5 h	6 h
Albuterol	− 0.63	− 0.26	− 0.10	0.56	− 0.23	0.36	0.13
Albuterol/ipratropium	− 0.13	0	− 0.30	− 0.23	− 0.30	0.03	− 0.6
Levalbuterol	− 0.03	0.36	− 0.16	0.36	0.60	0.56	0.30
Placebo	0.60	0.81	1	0.86	0.80	− 0.25	0.70

*There were no significant treatment-placebo differences in oxygen saturation (percentage) throughout the observation period.

short duration of β-agonist effect in our study was probably due in large part to the small number of study subjects, and consequent low power for the statistical analysis. Furthermore, inspection of Figure 1 shows an appreciable increase in FEV_1 in the placebo arm, peaking at 2 h. This may reflect diurnal changes in airway tone in addition to a placebo effect. Many of our patients had severe respiratory disease and were receiving frequent doses of short-acting β-agonists, and most were receiving regular, long-acting β-agonists. This may have resulted in some tachyphylaxis, thereby reducing the effectiveness of this bronchodilator class. Small and questionably clinically meaningful decreases in peak FEV_1 response and FEV_1 area under the curve over time have been demonstrated with regular nebulized albuterol and albuterol-ipratropium therapy.[3,16]

A limitation of this study is the relatively small number of patients studied, thereby reducing its power for statistical inference. As mentioned above, this may have reduced the likelihood of demonstrating longer durations of action, and it may have reduced the ability of showing the superiority of the combination over the single β-agonist therapies. However, since the levalbuterol effect on FEV_1 was numerically slightly less than albuterol over most time points, it is highly unlikely there was a type I error. Since the S-isomer probably accumulates over time with regular bronchodilator use, the major benefit from using the R-isomer may only be observed when these drugs are administered regularly over time. We did not design our study to test this potential effect, since nebulized short-acting bronchodilators are usually administered on an as-needed rather than regular basis.

Table 5—*Change in Tremor Score From Baseline Following Study Drug Administration**

Medications	0.5 h	1 h	2 h
Albuterol	0.43	0.50	0.46
Albuterol/ipratropium	0.30	0.33	0.30
Levalbuterol	0.30	0.30	0.26
Placebo	0.33	0.33	0.36

*Hand tremor score (units) increased following in all treatment groups and following placebo. There were no significant treatment-placebo differences.

In conclusion, a single nebulized dose of levalbuterol 1.25 mg in 30 patients with COPD led to similar bronchodilator effects at 0.5 h and 1 h as racemic albuterol and the combination of racemic albuterol and ipratropium. The combination therapy had a longer duration of action. Side effects were absent to minimal in all groups. Compared to conventional nebulized bronchodilator therapy, there appears to be no advantage to using an occasional, single dose of nebulized levalbuterol in COPD. A study testing multiple doses of these β-agonists administered on a regular basis would be needed to evaluate the potential negative effect of accumulation of the S-isomer.

References

1 American Thoracic Society. Standards for the diagnosis and care of patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Am J Respir Care Med 1995; 152:S77–S120

2 Pauwels RA, Buist AS, Calverley PM, et al. Global strategy for the diagnosis, management, and prevention of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: NHLBI/WHO Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD) Workshop summary. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2001; 163:1256–1276

3 The Combivent Inhalation Study Group. Routine nebulized ipratropium and albuterol together are better than either alone in COPD. Chest 1997; 112:1514–1521

4 Walle T, Eaton EA, Walle UK, et al. Stereoselective metabolism of RS-albuterol in humans. Clin Rev Allergy Immunol 1996; 14:101–113

5 Penn RB, Frielle T, McCullough JR, et al. Comparison of R-, S-, and RS-albuterol interaction with human β_1- and β_2-adrenergic receptors. Clin Rev Allergy Immunol 1996; 14: 37–45

6 Gumbhir-Shaw K, Kellerman DJ, DeGraw S, et al. Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of cumulative single doses of inhaled salbutamol enantiomers in asthmatic subjects. Pulm Pharmacol Ther 1999; 12:353–362

7 Mitra S, Ugur M, Ugur O, et al. (S)-albuterol increases intracellular free calcium by muscarinic receptor activation and a phospholipase C-dependent mechanism in airway smooth muscle. Mol Pharmacol 1998; 53:347–354

8 Johansson F, Rydberg I, Aberg G, et al. Effects of albuterol enantiomers on *in vitro* bronchial reactivity. Clin Rev Allergy Immunol 1996; 14:57–64

9 Baramki D, Koester J, Anderson AJ, et al. Modulation of T-cell function by (R)- and (S)-isomers of albuterol: anti-inflammatory influences of (R)-isomers are negated in the presence of the (S) isomer. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2002; 109:449–454

10 Nelson HS, Bensch G, Pleskow WW, et al. Improved bronchodilation with levalbuterol versus racemic albuterol in patients with asthma. Clin Rev Allergy Immunol 1998; 102: 943–952
11 Gawchik S, Saccar CL, Noonan M, et al. The safety and efficacy of nebulized levalbuterol compared with and placebo in the treatment of asthma. Clin Rev Allergy Immunol 1999; 103:615–621
12 Levalbuterol for asthma. Med Lett Drugs Ther 1999; 41: 51–53
13 Levalbuterol and racemic albuterol: are there therapeutic differences? J Allergy Clin Immunol 2001; 108:681–684
14 Lotvall J, Palmqvist M, Arvidsson P, et al. The therapeutic ratio of R-albuterol is comparable to that of RS-albuterol in asthmatic patients. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2001; 108: 726–731
15 Handley D. The asthma-like pharmacology and toxicology of (S)-isomers of β-agonists. J Allergy Clin Immunol 1999; S69–S76
16 Gross N, Tashkin D, Miller R, et al. Inhalation by nebulization of albuterol-ipratropium combination (Dey combination) is superior to either agent alone in the treatment of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Respiration 1998; 65:354–362

Donohue JF, Parsey M, Andrews C, D'Urzo T, Sharma S, Schaefer K, Claus R, Baumgartner R. Evaluation of the Efficacy and Safety of Levalbuterol in Subjects with COPD. *COPD: Journal of COPD* 2006a; 3:125-132.

COPD: Journal of Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease, 3:125–132
ISSN: 1541-2555 print / 1541-2563 online

DOI: 10.1080/15412550600829190

informa
healthcare

ORIGINAL RESEARCH

Evaluation of the Efficacy and Safety of Levalbuterol in Subjects with COPD

James F. Donohue[1] (jdonohue@med.unc.edu), **Merdad V. Parsey**[2] (merdad.parsey@sepracor.com), **Charles Andrews**[3] (dr.andrews@dxrg.com), **Tony D'Urzo**[4] (tonydurzo@sympatico.ca), **Satyendra Sharma**[5] (ssharma@mb.sympatico.ca), **Kendyl Schaefer**[2] (kendyl.schaefer@sepracor.com), **Raymond Claus**[2] (raymond.claus@sepracor.com), **Rudolf A. Baumgartner**[2] (rudolf.baumgartner@sepracor.com), and **for the Levalbuterol COPD Study Group**

University of North Carolina School of Medicine at Chapel Hill,[1] 4125 Bioinformatics Building, Chapel Hill, North Carolina, USA.
Sepracor Inc.,[2] Marlborough, Massachusetts, USA.
Diagnostics Research Group,[3] San Antonio, Texas, USA.
University of Toronto,[4] Toronto, Ontario, Canada.
University of Manitoba,[5] St. Boniface General Hospital, Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada.

ABSTRACT

The efficacy and safety of nebulized levalbuterol in adults with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) was evaluated in this multicenter, randomized, double-blind, parallel design study. Randomized subjects ($n = 209$) received levalbuterol (LEV) 0.63 mg or 1.25 mg, racemic albuterol (RAC) 2.5 mg, or placebo (PBO) TID for 6 weeks. Serial spirometry was completed in-clinic after study drug alone (weeks 0, 2, and 6) or in combination with ipratropium bromide 0.5 mg (week 4). The primary endpoint was the averaged FEV_1 $AUC_{(0-8\ hrs)}$ over weeks 0, 2 and 6 compared with placebo. Other endpoints included rescue medication use, safety parameters, COPD exacerbations, and global evaluations. All active treatments demonstrated improvements in the percent change in FEV_1 $AUC_{(0-8\ hrs)}$ over the double-blind period and at each visit vs PBO ($p < 0.05$). Rescue medication use vs. baseline (doses/day) changed over time: PBO $+0.38 \pm 3.3$; LEV 0.63 mg $+0.07 \pm 3.3$; LEV 1.25 mg -0.84 ± 3.8 ($p = 0.02$ vs. RAC); RAC $+0.97 \pm 2.5$. The overall rate of adverse events was PBO 56.4%, LEV 0.63 mg 56.6%, LEV 1.25 mg 67.3%, and RAC 65.4%. Protocol-defined COPD exacerbations occurred in all groups (PBO 12.7%, LEV 0.63 mg 11.3%; LEV 1.25 mg 18.4%; RAC 21.2%). Withdrawals due to COPD exacerbations were significantly higher in the RAC group compared with PBO (PBO 0%; LEV 0.63 mg 1.9%; LEV 1.25 mg 4.1%; RAC 9.6% $p = 0.01$ vs. PBO). In this study, levalbuterol treatment in subjects with COPD was generally well tolerated, produced significant bronchodilation compared with PBO, and improved clinical control of COPD as evidenced by reductions in rescue medication use compared with PBO and/or RAC.

INTRODUCTION

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) is currently the fourth leading cause of mortality worldwide (1). By the year 2020, it is projected to be the third-leading cause of death and the fifth-leading cause of disability worldwide (2). Over 5% of the adult population in the U.S. is diagnosed with COPD and it is the only major cause of death for which the morbidity and mortality are increasing worldwide (1).

After smoking cessation, the mainstays of therapy include β_2-agonists, anticholinergics, methylxanthines, supplemental oxygen, and corticosteroids (3). Studies evaluating the regular use of short-acting β_2-agonists in COPD, a common practice, are lacking. The short-acting β_2-agonist racemic albuterol is a 50/50 mixture of (R)-albuterol and (S)-albuterol, two mirror image enantiomers. (R)-Albuterol is responsible for the rapid bronchodilator effects. By contrast, (S)-albuterol has no bronchodilator properties and may be associated with effects leading to

Keywords: COPD, Bronchodilator, Levalbuterol, Racemic albuterol.
Support for this study provided by Sepracor Inc., Marlborough, Massachusetts, USA.
Correspondence to:
Merdad V. Parsey, MD, PhD
Sepracor Inc.
84 Waterford Drive
Marlborough, MA 01752 USA
phone: (508) 357-7575 fax: (508) 357-7874
email: merdad.parsey@sepracor.com

bronchoconstriction, including in vitro evidence of pro-inflammatory activity (4–7).

To date, there have been few studies evaluating the safety and efficacy of (R)-albuterol in patients with COPD. In a single center, single-dose crossover study, 30 patients with COPD had similar bronchodilator responses to (R)-albuterol and racemic albuterol (8). This study did not evaluate the effect of chronic dosing in patients with COPD. In addition, the safety of levalbuterol and the effect of combination levalbuterol and ipratropium bromide therapy have not been evaluated previously in COPD patients.

Because patients with COPD use nebulized short-acting β_2-agonists for rescue and maintenance therapy, the current study was designed to evaluate the bronchodilator response of patients with COPD to levalbuterol, racemic albuterol, or placebo all administered via nebulized inhalation TID for 6 weeks. Additionally, this study evaluated the effect of combined administration of levalbuterol and racemic albuterol with ipratropium bromide, an antimuscarinic agent widely used in the treatment of COPD. This study also evaluated the effects of regular short-acting β_2-agonist use on other measures of disease control and safety parameters, including the need for supplemental and rescue medications, the frequency of COPD exacerbations, and quality of life measures.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study design

This was a multicenter, randomized, double-blind, parallel-group study designed to determine the efficacy and safety of two doses of levalbuterol (0.63 mg and 1.25 mg) in comparison with placebo or racemic albuterol 2.5 mg. Enrolled subjects participated in a 2-week, single-blind, placebo run-in period during which short-acting β-agonist use was not permitted with the exception of the open-label racemic albuterol MDI (and ipratropium bromide MDI) that were provided as rescue therapy. Patients received nebulized placebo 3 times daily during this period. Eligible subjects were randomly allocated to receive nebulized treatment with 1 of 4 treatments 3 times a day for 6 weeks: levalbuterol 0.63 mg, levalbuterol 1.25 mg, racemic albuterol 2.5 mg, or placebo. Subjects received the initial dose of study medication on the day of random allocation and returned every 2 weeks for follow-up. The total duration of double-blind treatment was 6 weeks.

All treatments were supplied in unit dose vials (UDVs) (Sepracor Inc., Marlborough, MA) that delivered 3 mL of inhalation solution of either placebo, racemic albuterol 2.5 mg, levalbuterol 0.63 mg, or levalbuterol 1.25 mg, administered using a PARI LC Plus Nebulizer (with a mouthpiece or face mask) and a DURA-NEB 3000 compressor (PARI Respiratory Equipment, Inc, Midlothian, VA). Subjects were to administer a nebulized dose 3 times per day. Subjects were given open-label ipratropium metered dose inhalers (MDIs) (Boehringer Ingelheim, Ridgefield, CT, 18 μg/actuation) to use as supplemental therapy as needed during both the single- and double-blind periods. Subjects also received open-label racemic albuterol MDIs (Ventolin CFC [albuterol sulfate inhalation aerosol], 90 μg per actuation, GlaxoSmithKline, Research Triangle Park, NC) to use as rescue therapy during the single-blind period. During the double-blind period, subjects received double-blind levalbuterol MDIs (Xopenex HFA; Sepracor Inc., Marlborough, MA; 45 μg per actuation) as rescue medication if allocated to a levalbuterol group, or racemic albuterol MDIs (Ventolin CFC, 90 μg per actuation) as rescue medication if allocated to the racemic albuterol or placebo groups. Rescue/supplemental medications and study medications were withheld for at least 8 hours before study visits. During a brief period, because of a suspected quality control issue with the manufacture of the blinded MDI rescue device, all subjects enrolled at that time (n = 32) received open-label racemic albuterol MDI as rescue medication. Subjects continued to administer double-blinded study medications. Blinded rescue medication was reintroduced after the suspected problem with the device was ruled out. Substituted rescue medication was temporary, administered to all subjects regardless of treatment group, and did not permit subjects or study personnel to become unblinded. The action was precautionary and did not affect the integrity of the study.

Subjects returned to the clinic at 2-week intervals for a total of 6 weeks. At each visit during the double-blind period, serial spirometry was performed pre-dose, 15, and 60 minutes post-dose, then hourly for 7 additional hours. During the week-4 post-randomization visit, subjects were administered a standard dose of 0.5 mg ipratropium inhalation solution nebulized in combination with the blinded study medication to evaluate the impact of combination treatment on FEV_1. Serum potassium and glucose concentrations were measured pre-dose and 60 minutes post-dose at each study visit.

Subjects

Male and female subjects 35 years of age and older were eligible if they had a clinical diagnosis of COPD, baseline $FEV_1 \leq 65\%$ of predicted and >0.70 L, FEV_1/forced vital capacity (FVC) ratio $\leq$70%, a $\geq$15 pack-year smoking history, and a baseline breathlessness severity grade from the medical research council dyspnea scale score of $\geq$2 (i.e., shortness of breath when hurrying on the level or walking up a slight hill) (9). If a subject was taking corticosteroids (inhaled, oral, or nasal), xanthines, or leukotriene antagonists, the dose must have been stable for at least 30 days prior to study entry and maintained at stable doses throughout the study. Corticosteroids and xanthines were withheld for 12 hours prior to each clinic visit; leukotriene antagonists were withheld for 24 hours prior to each clinic visit.

Study endpoints

The primary efficacy parameter used to summarize the overall double-blind treatment effect was the average of the time-normalized percent change (from visit pre-dose) in FEV_1 area under the curve (FEV_1 $AUC_{(0-8\ hrs)}$) from serial spirometry performed over 8 hours after the first double-blind dose, after 2 weeks of treatment, and after 6 weeks of treatment. The bronchodilator response to combination treatment with ipratropium at Week 4 was measured and summarized as time normalized percent change in FEV_1 $AUC_{(0-8\ hrs)}$ and these data were excluded from the primary analysis.

Additional endpoints included protocol-defined exacerbations of COPD (defined as an increase in symptoms that required any change in baseline medication or additional medical attention and recorded as any adverse event, including COPD, bronchitis, and pneumonia, as assessed by the investigator); COPD control days (defined as any day requiring ≤ 2 puffs/day of short-acting β_2-agonist MDI, no nocturnal awakenings due to COPD symptoms, no unscheduled medical care due to worsening COPD symptoms, and no initiation of oral corticosteroid rescue medication or antibiotic use to treat a COPD exacerbation); transitional dyspnea index (10); rescue/supplemental medication use (either ipratropium or short-acting β_2-agonist); global evaluations; and St. George's Hospital Respiratory Questionnaire (SGRQ) (11). Additional safety endpoints included reporting of adverse events (i.e., any reaction, side effect or other undesirable event that occurred in conjunction with the use of the study drug, whether or not the event was considered drug related), vital signs, electrocardiograms, changes in potassium and glucose, and laboratory values.

Statistical analyses

The study was powered to detect a difference between the levalbuterol groups and placebo in the primary endpoint, but was not designed or powered to detect differences between active treatment groups. A sample of 24 subjects in the placebo treatment groups and 48 subjects in the pooled levalbuterol treatment groups was required in order to achieve 80% power to detect a 15% difference in peak FEV_1 percent change from visit predose assuming a standard deviation of 21% and a 2-sided significance level of 0.05.

The primary analysis to estimate the overall double-blind treatment effect on FEV_1 $AUC_{(0-8\ hrs)}$ used a repeated measures ANOVA with effects for site, treatment, elapsed time in weeks (0, 2, and 6), and treatment-by-time interaction. Dunnett's method for multiple comparisons was used to adjust the pairwise p-value comparisons between the active treatments and placebo. Pairwise tests of each dose of levalbuterol with racemic albuterol were evaluated unadjusted at the 0.05 significance level. As a significant treatment-by-time interaction was detected, analyses of FEV_1 $AUC_{(0-8\ hrs)}$ at each of the biweekly visits was performed, using an ANOVA model with effects for site and treatment. A post hoc analysis adjusting for the covariate of percent reversibility was performed.

A similar model was used to compare the differences between treatment groups of the supplemental effect of coadministration of ipratropium bromide and randomized treatment (combination therapy) with randomized treatment alone (monotherapy). Paired t-tests assessed the within-treatment difference of combination therapy versus monotherapy.

For the transitional dyspnea index and global evaluations, treatment groups were compared to placebo using a Cochran-Mantel-Haenszel test. Rescue/supplemental medication use was pooled in a post hoc analysis. The change from baseline (the placebo run-in period) in rescue medication use (either ipratropium bromide or short-acting β_2-agonist, recorded separately) was calculated as the number of doses per day of rescue medication used or the days per week on which rescue medication was used and descriptively summarized. The rate of withdrawals due to COPD exacerbations was analyzed post hoc using a Cochran-Mantel-Haenszel test.

RESULTS

Disposition and demographics

Of the 257 enrolled subjects, 209 (81.3%) were randomly allocated to treatment. One hundred seventy-one (81.8%) subjects completed the protocol. Withdrawals from the study were 5.5% in the placebo group, 18.9% in the levalbuterol 0.63 mg group, 18.4% in the levalbuterol 1.25 mg group, and 30.8% in the racemic albuterol group. The most common reason for withdrawal was an adverse event: 1 (1.8%) in the placebo group, 7 (13.2%) in the levalbuterol 0.63 mg group, 4 (8.2%) in the levalbuterol 1.25 mg group, and 12 (23.1%) in the racemic albuterol group (Figure 1). The most common adverse event leading to discontinuation was a COPD exacerbation (Figure 2).

The mean age was similar across treatment groups. The placebo group had more males proportionally compared with the other treatment groups and the majority of subjects were Caucasian. Pre-bronchodilator FEV_1 values were similar across groups (mean values 1.20 to 1.27 L; 40.7 to 43.3% of the predicted value). Most subjects had moderate to severe COPD as determined by the (post-bronchodilator) GOLD criteria at the screening visit FEV_1 (GOLD I: 1%; GOLD II: 48%; GOLD III: 41%; GOLD IV: 10%), and most subjects (81.8%) had at least 30 pack-years of smoking history (Table 1).

While reversibility to racemic albuterol was not a requirement for study entry, treatment group differences in reversibility were examined. Mean reversibility as defined in the protocol as at least a 10% change in FEV_1 after 2.5 mg racemic albuterol at the screening visit was similar between treatment groups (Table 1). Numerically more subjects were reversible in the racemic albuterol and placebo groups than in either the levalbuterol 0.63 mg or levalbuterol 1.25 mg groups (Table 1, p = NS). Additionally, the duration of COPD and the proportion of subjects using corticosteroids were somewhat unevenly distributed between groups (Table 1).

Bronchodilation

There was a significant treatment-by-time interaction detected for the analysis of the primary endpoint, FEV_1 $AUC_{(0-8\ hrs)}$ averaged over the double-blind period compared with placebo. Therefore, in place of the effect over the double-blind period, the FEV_1 $AUC_{(0-8\ hrs)}$ values for each individual visit were analyzed as the primary analysis. Because reversibility

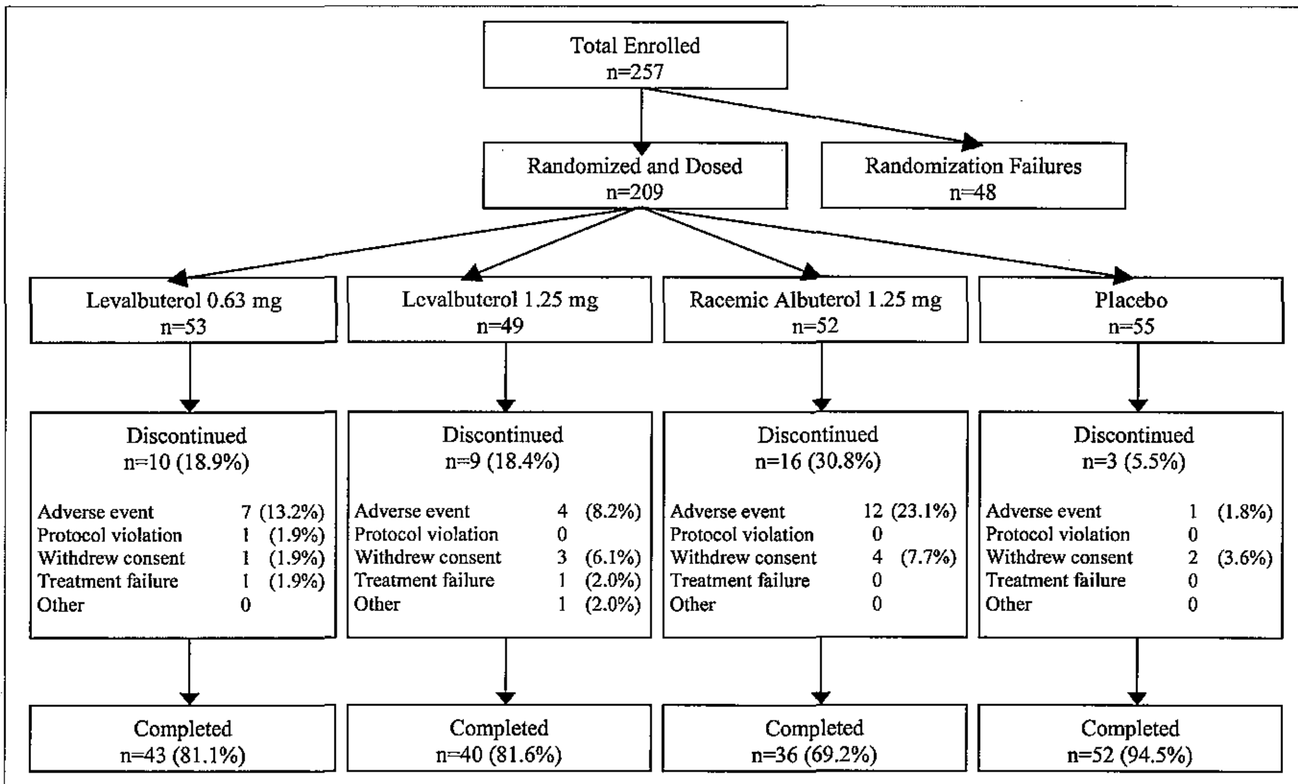


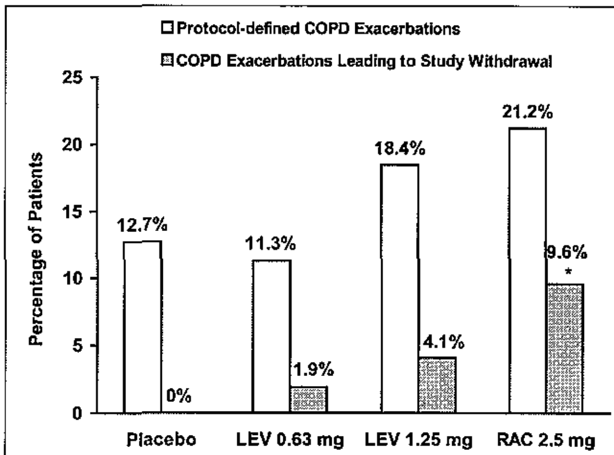
Figure 1. Study disposition.

to racemic albuterol was not an entry criterion and there was a difference in the proportion of subjects who were reversible in the treatment groups, the analysis was repeated post hoc with percent reversibility at baseline as a covariate. All active treatments administered as monotherapy were significantly better than placebo. A statistically significant difference between racemic albuterol and levalbuterol 1.25 mg demonstrated at week 6 (and marginally significant at week 0) was not significantly different when the baseline reversibility was included in the ANCOVA model (Table 2).

Because subjects with COPD are often treated with a combination of a short-acting β_2-agonist and a muscarinic antagonist, we evaluated the response to a combination of ipratropium bromide with placebo, levalbuterol, or racemic albuterol. As expected, subjects receiving placebo in combination with ipratropium demonstrated an increase in FEV_1 $AUC_{(0-8\ hrs)}$. The combination of levalbuterol 0.63 mg, levalbuterol 1.25 mg, or racemic albuterol with ipratropium demonstrated numerically larger FEV_1 $AUC_{(0-8\ hrs)}$ than ipratropium alone.

Disease control measurements

COPD Exacerbations. Protocol-defined COPD exacerbations occurred in 12.7% of the placebo group, 11.3% of the levalbuterol 0.63 mg group, 18.4% of the levalbuterol 1.25 mg group, and 21.2% of the racemic albuterol group (Figure 2). The proportion of subjects who withdrew from the study due to these COPD exacerbations was significantly greater in the racemic albuterol group (9.6%) compared with the placebo group (0%; p = 0.01). Neither levalbuterol 0.63 mg (1.9%) nor



*p=0.0103 compared with placebo

LEV = levalbuterol; RAC = racemic albuterol

Figure 2. Percentage of subjects with protocol-defined COPD exacerbations and withdrawals due to COPD exacerbations.

Table 1. Demographics, COPD history, and baseline pulmonary function

Characteristic	Placebo (N = 55)	Levalbuterol 0.63 mg (N = 53)	Levalbuterol 1.25 mg (N = 49)	Racemic albuterol (N = 52)
Mean age in years (SD)	66.9 (8.6)	65.0 (8.3)	63.5 (8.9)	65.7 (9.2)
Gender n (%)				
Male	40 (72.7)	29 (54.7)	25 (51.0)	30 (57.7)
Female	15 (27.3)	24 (45.3)	24 (49.0)	22 (42.3)
Mean FEV_1 % Reversibility (SD)	19.7 (13.7)	18.2 (14.4)	18.7 (14.2)	22.0 (13.4)
Reversible* n (%)	41 (74.5)	34 (64.2)	33 (67.3)	39 (75.0)
Mean FEV_1 % predicted (SD)	42.30 (14.98)	43.33 (15.04)	42.79 (13.12)	40.67 (13.04)
Corticosteroid users† n (%)	35 (63.6)	29 (54.7)	28 (57.1)	34 (65.4)
COPD Duration (years) n (%)				
≥0.25 to <5 yrs	24 (43.6)	26 (49.1)	22 (44.9)	20 (38.5)
≥5 to <10 yrs	12 (21.8)	15 (28.3)	15 (30.6)	20 (38.5)
≥10 to <15 yrs	10 (18.2)	3 (5.7)	6 (12.2)	9 (17.3)
≥15 yrs	9 (16.4)	9 (17.0)	6 (12.2)	3 (5.8)

*Reversibility was defined as a change in FEV_1 after 2.5 mg racemic albuterol of at least 10% at the screening visit.
†Corticosteroid use included inhaled or oral corticosteroids.

levalbuterol 1.25 mg (4.1%) was significantly different from placebo.

Rescue/Supplemental Medication Use. Rescue short-acting β_2-agonist or supplemental ipratropium use increased in the racemic albuterol and placebo groups and decreased in both levalbuterol groups (data not shown, p = NS). In a post hoc analysis, the use of short-acting β_2-agonist and supplemental ipratropium was pooled. In this analysis, the change in rescue/supplemental medication use compared with baseline (i.e., pooled-use during the run-in period) was: placebo +0.38 ± 3.3 doses/day; levalbuterol 0.63 mg +0.07 ± 3.3 doses/day; levalbuterol 1.25 mg −0.84 ± 3.8 doses/day; and racemic albuterol +0.97 ± 2.5 doses/day (Figure 3). None of these differences vs. placebo was statistically significant at the $p < 0.050$ level. Subjects in the racemic albuterol group, however, required a mean of 1.81 more doses/day of rescue/supplemental medications than subjects in the levalbuterol 1.25 mg group ($p = 0.02$).

Table 2. Time-normalized $AUC_{(0-8\ hrs)}$ in percent change FEV_1

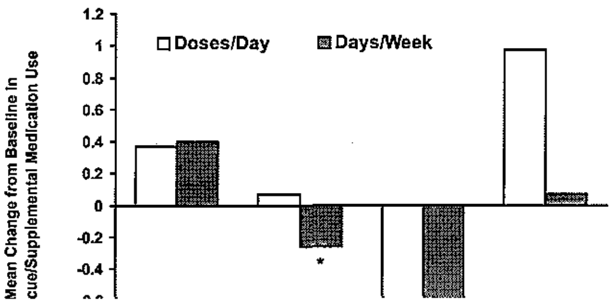
Treatment group	ANOVA	ANCOVA (Baseline percent reversibility as covariate)
	Week 0	
Placebo	1.93 (1.38)	2.00 (1.41)
LEV 0.63 mg	16.56 (1.80)[1]	17.16 (1.66)[1]
LEV 1.25 mg	15.65 (1.61)[1]	16.55 (1.58)[1]
RAC 2.5 mg	22.54 (3.18)[1]	21.19 (3.12)[1]
	Week 2	
Placebo	3.70 (1.47)	3.71 (1.58)
LEV 0.63 mg	14.12 (1.72)[1]	14.50 (1.55)[1]
LEV 1.25 mg	11.56 (1.61)[1]	12.36 (1.59)[1]
RAC 2.5 mg	12.65 (2.02)[1]	12.20 (2.02)[1]
	Week 4 (Combined with ipratropium bromide)	
Placebo	17.7 (2.22)	17.88 (2.17)
LEV 0.63 mg	22.29 (2.20)	23.23 (2.09)
LEV 1.25 mg	24.19 (3.45)	26.21 (3.04)
RAC 2.5 mg	23.00 (2.46)	21.58 (2.83)
	Week 6	
Placebo	1.64 (1.19)	1.57 (1.25)
LEV 0.63 mg	10.47 (1.59)[1]	10.74 (1.57)[1]
LEV 1.25 mg	9.19 (1.96)[1,2]	10.40 (1.84)[1]
RAC 2.5 mg	15.29 (1.93)[1]	14.56 (1.98)[1]

All values are LS Means (SE).
[1] $p < 0.003$ vs. PBO.
[2] $p = 0.025$ vs. RAC.

When evaluating the number of days per week rescue/supplemental medication was used, the placebo group (+0.41 ± 1.0 days/week) and the racemic albuterol group (+0.09 ± 1.6 days/week) were not significantly different from baseline. Levalbuterol 0.63 mg also was not significantly different from baseline (−0.27 ± 1.8 days/week), although it was significantly lower than placebo ($p = 0.04$). Among subjects randomized to levalbuterol 1.25 mg, rescue/supplemental medication use decreased significantly, when compared with baseline (−0.61 ± 1.7 days/week; $p = 0.02$), placebo ($p = 0.006$), and racemic albuterol ($p = 0.048$) (Figure 3).

Symptoms and Subject Global Evaluations. The percentage of COPD control days was similar between groups: placebo (51.5%), levalbuterol 0.63 mg (45.4%), levalbuterol 1.25 mg (54.5%), racemic albuterol (46.4%). A larger proportion of subjects in the levalbuterol 1.25 mg (47.5%) and levalbuterol 0.63 mg (48.8%) groups rated their overall improvement at the end of the study as much better or moderately better than subjects in the racemic albuterol (27.7%) or placebo (27.0%) groups (p = NS).

The majority of subjects experienced no significant change in transitional dyspnea index scores in functional impairment, magnitude of task, or magnitude of effort with treatment. By the end of the study, 15.3% of the placebo group, 16.3% of the levalbuterol 0.63 mg group, 15.0% of the levalbuterol 1.25 mg group, and 16.7% of the racemic albuterol group experienced clinically meaningful improvements (≥1 unit) in functional impairment



Values of the mean change in number of doses used in a day (open bars) or days in a week (closed bars) of rescue short-acting β_2-agonist MDI or supplemental ipratropium bromide MDI during the double-blind period compared with the placebo run-in period.
*p < 0.037 vs. placebo **p = 0.020 vs. racemic albuterol
†p = 0.048 vs. racemic albuterol; p = 0.023 from baseline; p = 0.06 vs. placebo
LEV = levalbuterol; RAC = racemic albuterol

Figure 3. Change in rescue/supplemental medication use from baseline.

(p = NS). Like the transitional dyspnea index, there were no significant changes in the St. George's Respiratory Questionnaire at the end of the study compared to baseline in any treatment group (data not shown).

Adverse events

Adverse events were generally self-limited, mild to moderate in intensity, and occurred in a similar percentage of subjects across treatment groups (Table 3). The percentage of withdrawals due to adverse events was 1.8%, 13.2%, 8.2%, and 23.1% in the placebo, levalbuterol 0.63 mg, levalbuterol 1.25 mg, and racemic albuterol treatment groups, respectively. The most common adverse event was COPD (Table 3). These adverse events were recorded separately from the protocol-defined COPD exacerbations noted earlier.

β_2-adrenergic mediated adverse events were similar in all treatment groups with the exception of ventricular heart rate. For example, 30 minutes after the first dose of study drug, there was a change of -3.8 ± 6.8 beats per minute (bpm) in the placebo group, -1.2 ± 6.3 bpm in the levalbuterol 0.63 mg group (p = NS vs. placebo), $+1.4 \pm 6.5$ bpm in the levalbuterol 1.25 mg group ($p < 0.001$ vs. placebo), and $+2.8 \pm 8.6$ bpm in the racemic albuterol group ($p < 0.001$ vs. placebo). Changes in serum potassium, glucose, and heart rate were similar in all active treatment groups (data not shown). Cardiovascular adverse events occurred in 10.9% of placebo-treated subjects, 3.8% of levalbuterol 0.63 mg-treated subjects, 8.2% of levalbuterol 1.25 mg-treated subjects, and 9.6% of racemic albuterol-treated subjects.

Seven serious adverse events during the double-blind period occurred in 6 (2.9%) subjects: 1 (1.8%) placebo-treated subject (joint disorder), 3 (6.1%) levalbuterol 1.25 mg-treated subjects (atrial fibrillation, COPD exacerbation, pneumonia), and 2 (3.8%) racemic albuterol-treated subjects (pneumonia, and one subject with bronchitis and overdose). Both subjects with pneumonia (1 treated with levalbuterol 1.25 mg, 1 treated

Table 3. Adverse events during the double-blind period >5% in any treatment group

	Placebo	Levalbuterol 0.63 mg	Levalbuterol 1.25 mg	Racemic Albuterol
All adverse events	31 (56.4%)	30 (56.6%)	33 (67.3%)	34 (65.4%)
Accidental injury	0	4 (7.5%)	1 (2.0%)	1 (1.9%)
Chest pain	2 (3.6%)	2 (3.8%)	4 (8.2%)	0
Headache	7 (12.7%)	2 (3.8%)	4 (8.2%)	5 (9.6%)
Infection	0	3 (5.7%)	3 (6.1%)	1 (1.9%)
Pain	3 (5.5%)	0	1 (2.0%)	3 (5.8%)
Dry mouth	2 (3.6%)	1 (1.9%)	1 (2.0%)	3 (5.8%)
Nausea	3 (5.5%)	1 (1.9%)	0	0
Ecchymosis	0	1 (1.9%)	3 (6.1%)	1 (1.9%)
Edema	3 (5.5%)	0	1 (2.0%)	2 (3.8%)
Insomnia	3 (5.5%)	0	0	1 (1.9%)
Nervousness	0	0	3 (6.1%)	2 (3.8%)
Tremor	0	1 (1.9%)	1 (2.0%)	4 (7.7%)
Bronchitis	2 (3.6%)	1 (1.9%)	1 (2.0%)	3 (5.8%)
COPD	4 (7.3%)	4 (7.5%)	7 (14.3%)	6 (11.5%)
Cough increased	3 (5.5%)	2 (3.8%)	4 (8.2%)	4 (7.7%)
Dyspnea	2 (3.6%)	2 (3.8%)	1 (2.0%)	3 (5.8%)
Respiratory infection	5 (9.1%)	0[1]	0[1]	2 (3.8%)
Rhinitis	3 (5.5%)	3 (5.7%)	1 (2.0%)	2 (3.8%)
Diarrhea	3 (5.5%)	1 (1.9%)	1 (2.0%)	2 (3.8%)
Peripheral edema	3 (5.5%)	1 (1.9%)	2 (4.1%)	2 (3.8%)

[1]p < 0.02 vs. placebo

with racemic albuterol) discontinued treatment, and a subject with atrial fibrillation (levalbuterol 1.25 mg) also discontinued.

DISCUSSION

Many subjects with COPD require nebulized medications when high doses, or a combination of drugs, are needed; or when controlled coordinated breathing required for the use of metered dose inhalers is difficult (12). This is the first large multicenter study of nebulized levalbuterol in the treatment of COPD. Enrolled subjects had, on average, moderate to severe COPD as evidenced by baseline FEV_1 and GOLD criteria (all but one subject was GOLD II or more severe). Most subjects were on concomitant corticosteroids and demonstrated FEV_1 reversibility of at least 10%. Despite similar baseline FEV_1 percent of predicted values, the levalbuterol groups had numerically fewer subjects who demonstrated reversibility of $\geq$10% compared with the racemic albuterol or the placebo groups. Concomitant corticosteroid therapy was similarly reported in a slightly lower number of levalbuterol-treated subjects.

This study demonstrated that all active treatments improved FEV_1 over the 6-week double-blind study period compared with placebo. Levalbuterol treatment was associated with greater disease control. Specifically, levalbuterol treatment resulted in less rescue/supplemental medication use than placebo or racemic albuterol treatment. In addition, withdrawals due to COPD exacerbations were significantly more prevalent in the racemic albuterol group compared with placebo, while the levalbuterol groups were similar to placebo. Similar trends were evident in COPD control days, subject global evaluations at the end of the trial, study discontinuations, and discontinuation due to adverse events. Taken together, these results support incremental improvements in meaningful clinical outcomes for levalbuterol-treated subjects.

The combination of a β_2-agonist with an anticholinergic agent has been shown to provide additive improvements in lung function in subjects with COPD that are presumably due to differences in the mechanism of action of these agents and their site of action in the airways (8, 13, 14). In the current study, ipratropium led to bronchodilation in the placebo group, as expected. There was also evidence of additive increases in the other treatment groups given that greater improvements in airway function were observed at week 4 than at the other study visits when ipratropium was not co-administered. These results require further evaluation in a prospective manner.

Subjects were permitted the use of ipratropium and matched short-acting β_2-agonists (racemic albuterol MDI for the racemic albuterol and placebo treatment groups and levalbuterol MDI for the levalbuterol groups) as supplemental and rescue medications. The regular use of 0.63 mg or 1.25 mg of levalbuterol TID was associated with a reduction in the use of supplemental or rescue medications compared with placebo. The mean decrease in supplemental/rescue medication use in the levalbuterol 1.25 mg group (−0.84 doses/day) exceeded the minimally important clinical difference for rescue medication use in subjects with asthma (−0.81 doses/day) reported in a prior study (15). A possible explanation of this finding is that, as observed in a study of subjects with acute asthma exacerbations, subjects with elevated (S)-albuterol levels are less responsive to additional doses of racemic albuterol (16, 17). Alternatively, destabilization of disease may have increased the requirement for rescue therapy in the racemic albuterol group.

Exacerbations of COPD lead to substantial impacts on disease burden, often leading to unscheduled health-care provider visits, hospitalizations, and a reduction in quality of life (18). Furthermore, these exacerbations may have a deleterious impact on the long-term course of patients with COPD. Exacerbations have been associated with: incomplete recovery; long-term, accelerated declines in lung function; and relapses after hospital discharge (19–21). Indeed, mortality after acute exacerbations of severe COPD was reported at 11%, with an additional 49% mortality within 2 years of the exacerbation (3). These observations have contributed to the Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD), which emphasizes prevention of exacerbations as part of the management of COPD (3).

All treatment groups in the current study had a subset of subjects who experienced protocol-defined COPD exacerbations. Significantly more subjects from the racemic albuterol group withdrew from the study due to COPD exacerbations compared with placebo. The proportion of subjects that experienced exacerbations leading to withdrawal did not appear to be explained by corticosteroid use: the proportion of subjects using corticosteroids was similar in the racemic albuterol and placebo groups at baseline.

None of the treatments resulted in significant changes in the transitional dyspnea index score or the St. George's Respiratory Questionnaire. It is likely that the sample size and the duration of therapy were insufficient to demonstrate significant changes in these measures. Furthermore, measures like the St. George's questionnaire may have been biased by the dropout rates. Most of those subjects who discontinued prematurely, including those who discontinued due to COPD exacerbations, did not complete the end of study questionnaires.

Because racemic albuterol 2.5 mg and levalbuterol 1.25 mg differ in the administration of 1.25 mg of (S)-albuterol with racemic albuterol, a possible explanation for the results of this study is the effect of chronic exposure to (S)-albuterol. Preclinical studies have demonstrated pro-inflammatory properties of (S)-albuterol (4–7). A large study of subjects with acute asthma demonstrated that subjects with the highest plasma (S)-albuterol concentrations at the time of enrollment responded more poorly to additional doses of racemic albuterol and were more likely to require hospitalization (16). Further evaluations of the clinical impact of chronic (S)-albuterol administration on COPD outcomes will be required to validate the preclinical data.

With regard to β_2-adrenergic mediated adverse effects, all treatments were similar, with the exception of statistically significant increases in ventricular heart rate in the levalbuterol 1.25 mg and racemic albuterol 2.5 mg groups. The incidence of cardiovascular adverse events was similar across all treatment groups.

There are limitations in the interpretation of these study results. First, the sample size is relatively small in comparison with other multicenter studies of subjects with COPD. Second, the analysis of rescue medication use and COPD exacerbations were not the primary objective of the study, and should be viewed as hypothesis generating in nature until replicated in a prospective manner. Third, the duration of therapy was 6 weeks; more COPD exacerbations could have been observed in a longer study.

In summary, this study demonstrated that nebulized levalbuterol at doses of 0.63 mg and 1.25 mg provided effective bronchodilation and disease control compared with placebo in subjects with COPD and was generally well tolerated. Levalbuterol 1.25 mg and 0.63 mg were associated with a significant reductions in rescue/supplemental medication use compared with placebo or racemic albuterol.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Our research and this study were conducted by Sepracor Inc., in conjunction with Charles Andrews, Francis Averill, Sidney Braman, Amarjit Cheema, Mark Clark, Dennis Clifford, Adnan Dahdul, Rajiv Dhand, Edward Diamond, James Donohue, Tony D'Urzo, William George, Nicholas Gross, Shull Lemire, Robert Lipetz, Dennis McCluskey, Delbert Meyer, Timothy Moriarty, Peter Murphy, Gilbert Salazar, Paul Scheinberg, Satyendra Sharma, Robert Sussman, Martha White, and Noe Zamal for the Levalbuterol COPD Study Group.

REFERENCES

1. **Murray CJ, Lopez AD.** Alternative projections of mortality and disability by cause 1990–2020: Global burden of disease study. Lancet 1997; 349:1498–1504.
2. **Michaud CM, Murray CJ, Bloom BR.** Burden of disease-implications for future research. JAMA 2001; 285:535–539.
3. **Pauwels RA, Buist AS, Calverley PM, Jenkins CR, Hurd SS, GOLD Scientific Committee.** Global strategy for the diagnosis, management, and prevention of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. NHLBI/WHO Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD) workshop summary. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2001; 163:1256–1276. GOLD Guidelines 2003 at (www.goldcopd.com)
4. **Agrawal DK, Ariyarathna K, Kelbe PW.** (S)-albuterol activates pro-constrictory and pro-inflammatory pathways in human bronchial smooth muscle cells. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2004; 113:503–510.
5. **Ameredes BT, Calhoun WJ.** Modulation of GM-CSF-release by enantiomers of β-agonists in human airway smooth muscle. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2005; 116:65–72.
6. **Cho SH, Hartleroad JY, Oh CK.** (S)-Albuterol increases the production of histamine and IL-4 mast cells. Int Arch Allergy Immunol 2001; 124:478–484.
7. **Baramki D, Koester J, Anderson AJ, Borish L.** Modulation of *t*-cell function by (R)- and (S)-isomers of albuterol: anti-inflammatory influences of (R)-isomers are negated in the presence of the (S)-isomer. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2002; 108:449–454.
8. **Datta D, Vitale A, Lahiri B, ZuWallack R.** An evaluation of nebulized levalbuterol in stable COPD. Chest 2003; 124:844–849.
9. **Bestall JC , Paul EA, Garrod R, Jones PW, Wedzicha JA.** Usefulness of the Medical Research Council (MRC) dyspnea scale as a measure of disability in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Thorax 1999; 54:581–586.
10. **Mahler D, Rosiello R, Harver A, Lentine T, McGovern J, Daubenspeck J.** Comparison of clinical dyspnea ratings and psychological measurements of respiratory sensation in obstructive pulmonary disease. Am Rev Respir Dis 1987; 135:1229–1233.
11. **Jones PW, Quirk FH, Baveystock CM, Littlejohns P.** A self-complete measure of health status for chronic airflow limitation. The St. George's Respiratory Questionnaire. Am Rev Respir Dis 1992; 145:1321–1327.
12. **Dolovich MB, Ahrens RC, Hess DR, Anderson P, Dhand R, Rau JL, Smaldone GC, Guyatt G.** American College of Chest Physicians; American College of Asthma, Allergy, and Immunology. Device selection and outcomes of aerosol therapy: evidence-based guidelines. Chest 2005; 127:335–371.
13. **The Combivent Inhalation Aerosol Study Group.** In chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, a combination of ipratropium and albuterol is more effective than either agent alone. An 85-day multicenter trial. Chest 1994; 105:1411–1419.
14. **The Combivent Inhalation Aerosol Study Group.** Routine nebulized ipratropium and albuterol together are better than either alone in COPD. Chest 1997; 112:1514–1521.
15. **Santello NC, Zhang J, Seidenberg B, Seidenberg, Reiss TF, Barber BL.** What are the minimal important changes for asthma measures in a clinical trial. Eur Respir J 1999; 14:23–27.
16. **Carl JC, Myers TR, Kirchner HL, Kercsmar CM.** Comparison of racemic albuterol and levalbuterol for treatment of acute asthma. J Pediatr 2003; 143:731–736.
17. **Nowak R, Emerman C, Hanrahan JP, Parsey MV, Hanania NA, Schaefer K, Baumgartner RA.** A comparison of levalbuterol and racemic albuterol in the treatment of acute severe asthma exacerbations in adults. Am J Emer Med 2006; 24:259–267.
18. **Seemungal TA, Donaldson GC, Paul EA, Bestall JC, Jeffries DJ, Wedzicha JA.** Effect of exacerbation on quality of life in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 1998; 157:1418–1422.
19. **Donaldson GC, Seemungal TA, Bhowmik A, Wedzicha JA.** Relationship between exacerbation frequency and lung function decline in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Thorax 2002; 57: 847–852.
20. **Seemungal TA, Donaldson GC, Bhowmik A, Jeffries DJ, Wedzicha JA.** Time course and recovery of exacerbations in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 2000; 161:1608–1613.
21. **Kim S, Emerman CL, Cydulka RK, Rowe BH, Clark S, Camargo CA.** Prospective multicenter study of relapse following emergency department treatment of COPD exacerbation. Chest 2004; 125:473–481.

Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease. Updated 2006. Available from: www.goldcopd.org.

Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease

GLOBAL INITIATIVE FOR CHRONIC OBSTRUCTIVE LUNG DISEASE™

GLOBAL STRATEGY FOR THE DIAGNOSIS, MANAGEMENT, AND PREVENTION OF CHRONIC OBSTRUCTIVE PULMONARY DISEASE

2006

GLOBAL INITIATIVE FOR CHRONIC OBSTRUCTIVE LUNG DISEASE

GLOBAL STRATEGY FOR THE DIAGNOSIS, MANAGEMENT, AND PREVENTION OF CHRONIC OBSTRUCTIVE PULMONARY DISEASE (2006)

Global Strategy for the Diagnosis, Management, and Prevention of Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (2006)

GOLD EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE*

A. Sonia Buist, MD, *Chair*
Oregon Health & Science University
Portland, Oregon, USA

Antonio Anzueto, MD
(Representing the American Thoracic Society)
University of Texas Health Science Center
San Antonio, Texas, USA

Peter Calverley, MD
University Hospital Aintree
Liverpool, UK

Teresita S. deGuia, MD
Philippine Heart Center
Quezon City, Philippines

Yoshinosuke Fukuchi, MD
(Representing the Asian Pacific Society for Respirology)
Tokyo, Japan

Christine Jenkins, MD
Woolcock Institute of Medical Research
Sydney, NSW, Australia

Nikolai Khaltaev, MD
(Representing the World Health Organization)
Geneva, Switzerland

James Kiley, PhD
(Representing the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute,
National Institutes of Health,
Department of Health and Human Services)
Bethesda, Maryland, USA

Ali Kocabas, MD
Cukurova University School of Medicine
Balcali, Adana, Turkey

Mará Victorina López, MD
(Representing the Latin American Thoracic Society)
Montevideo, Uruguay

Ewa Nizankowska-Mogilnicka, MD
University School of Medicine
Krakow, Poland

Klaus F. Rabe, MD, PhD
Leiden University Medical Center
Leiden, The Netherlands

Roberto Rodriguez Roisin, MD
Hospital Clinic
Barcelona, Spain

Thys van der Molen, MD
University of Groningen
Groningen, The Netherlands

Chris van Weel, MD
(Representing the World Organization of Family Doctors (WONCA))
University of Nijmegen
Nijmegen, The Netherlands

GOLD SCIENCE COMMITTEE*

Klaus F. Rabe, MD, PhD, *Chair*
Leiden University Medical Center
Leiden, The Netherlands

A. G. Agusti, MD (Effective June 2006)
Hospital Universitari Son Dureta
Palma de Mallorca, Spain

Antonio Anzueto, MD
University of Texas Health Science Center
San Antonio, Texas, USA

Peter J. Barnes, MD
National Heart and Lung Institute
London, UK

A. Sonia Buist, MD
Oregon Health & Science University
Portland, Oregon, USA

Peter Calverley, MD
University Hospital Aintree
Liverpool, UK

Marc Decramer, MD (Effective June 2006)
University Hospital
Leuven, Belgium

Yoshinosuke Fukuchi, MD
President
Asian Pacific Society for Respirology
Tokyo, Japan

Paul Jones, MD (Effective June 2006)
St. George's Hospital Medical School
London, UK

*Disclosure forms for GOLD Committees are posted on the GOLD Website, www.goldcopd.org

Roberto Rodriguez Roisin, MD
Hospital Clinic
Barcelona, Spain

Jorgen Vestbo, MD (Effective June 2006)
Hvidovre University Hospital
Hvidovre, Denmark

Jan Zielinski, MD
Institute of TB and Lung Diseases
Warsaw, Poland

CHAPTER CONTRIBUTORS

Leonardo Fabbri, MD
University of Modena & Reggio Emilia
Modena, Italy

James C. Hogg, MD
St. Paul's Hospital
Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada

Christine Jenkins, MD
Woolcock Institute of Medical Research
Sydney, NSW, Australia

Ewa Nizankowska-Mogilnicka, MD
University School of Medicine
Krakow, Poland

Sean Sullivan, MD
University of Washington
Seattle, Washington, USA

Thys van der Molen, MD
University of Groningen
Groningen, The Netherlands

Chris van Weel, MD
University of Nijmegen
Nijmegen, The Netherlands

REVIEWERS

Bart Celli, MD
Caritas St. Elizabeth's Medical Center
Brighton, Massachusetts, USA

M.W. Elliott, MD
St. James's University Hospital
West Yorkshire, UK

H.A.M. Kerstjens, MD, PhD
University Medical Center Groningen
Groningen, The Netherlands

Peter Lange, MD
Hvidovre Hospital
Hvidovre, Denmark

Carlos M. Luna, MD
President, ALAT
Buenos Aires, Argentina

Dennis Niewoehner, MD
University of Minnesota
Minneapolis, Minnesota, USA

Jim Reid, MD
Dunedin School of Medicine
University of Otago
Dunedin, New Zealand

Sanjay Sethi, MD
VA Medical Research
Buffalo, New York, USA

Peter Sterk, MD
Leiden University Medical Center
Leiden, The Netherlands

GOLD NATIONAL LEADERS WHO SUBMITTED COMMENTS

Lorenzo Corbetta, MD
Università di Firenze
Firenze, Italy

Maia Gotua, MD, PhD
Center of Allergy & Immunology
Tbilisi, Georgia

Gérard Huchon, MD
University of Paris
Paris, France

Prof. E.M. Irusen
South Africa Thoracic Society
University of Stellenbosch
Cape Town, South Africa

Yousser Mohammad, MD
Tishreen University School of Medicine
Lattakia, Syria

Jaromir Musil, PhD
Stanislav Kos, MD, PhD
F. Salajka, PhD
Vladimir Vondra, MD, PhD
Czech Association Against COPD
Prague, Czech Republic

Júlio A. Oliveira, MD
Fernando Lundgren, MD
José R. Jardim, MD
Brazil

Vesna Petrovic, MD
JUDAH Association for Asthma and COPD
Serbia

PREFACE

Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD) remains a major public health problem. It is the fourth leading cause of chronic morbidity and mortality in the United States, and is projected to rank fifth in 2020 in burden of disease caused worldwide, according to a study published by the World Bank/World Health Organization. Furthermore, although COPD has received increasing attention from the medical community in recent years, it is still relatively unknown or ignored by the public as well as public health and government officials.

In 1998, in an effort to bring more attention to COPD, its management, and its prevention, a committed group of scientists encouraged the US National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute and the World Health Organization to form the Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD). Among the important objectives of GOLD are to increase awareness of COPD and to help the millions of people who suffer from this disease and die prematurely from it or its complications.

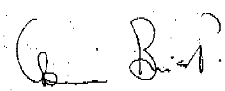
The first step in the GOLD program was to prepare a consensus report, *Global Strategy for the Diagnosis, Management, and Prevention of COPD,* which was published in 2001. The report was written by an Expert Panel, which was chaired by Professor Romain Pauwels of Belgium and included a distinguished group of health professionals from the fields of respiratory medicine, epidemiology, socioeconomics, public health, and health education. The Expert Panel reviewed existing COPD guidelines and new information on pathogenic mechanisms of COPD, bringing all of this material together in the consensus document. The present, newly revised document follows the same format as the original consensus report, but has been updated to reflect the many publications on COPD that have appeared since 2001.

Since the original consensus report was published in 2001, a network of international experts known as GOLD National Leaders has been formed to implement the report's recommendations. Many of these experts have initiated investigations of the causes and prevalence of COPD in their countries, and developed innovative approaches for the dissemination and implementation of COPD management guidelines. We appreciate the enormous amount of work the GOLD National Leaders have done on behalf of their patients with COPD.

In spite of the achievements in the five years since the GOLD report was originally published, considerable additional work is ahead of all of us if we are to control this major public health problem. The GOLD initiative will continue to bring COPD to the attention of governments, public health officials, health care workers, and the general public, but a concerted effort by all involved in health care will be necessary.

I would like to acknowledge the work of the members of the GOLD Science Committee who prepared this revised report. We look forward to our continued work with interested organizations and the GOLD National Leaders to meet the goals of this initiative.

We are most appreciative of the unrestricted educational grants from Altana, AstraZeneca, Boehringer Ingelheim, Chiesi, GlasoSmithKline, Mitsubishi Pharma Corporation, Nikken Chemicals, Co,. Ltd., Novartis, and Pfizer that enabled development of this report.



A. Sonia Buist, MD
Portland, Oregon, USA
Chair, GOLD Executive Committee

TABLE OF CONTENTS

GLOBAL STRATEGY FOR THE DIAGNOSIS, MANAGEMENT, AND PREVENTION OF COPD

INTRODUCTION

Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD) is a major cause of chronic morbidity and mortality throughout the world. Many people suffer from this disease for years and die prematurely from it or its complications. COPD is the fourth leading cause of death in the world[1], and further increases in its prevalence and mortality can be predicted in the coming decades[2].

The goals of the **G**lobal **I**nitiative for Chronic **O**bstructive **L**ung **D**isease (**GOLD**) are to increase awareness of COPD and decrease morbidity and mortality from the disease. GOLD aims to improve prevention and management of COPD through a concerted worldwide effort of people involved in all facets of health care and health care policy, and to encourage an expanded level of research interest in this highly prevalent disease. A nihilistic attitude toward COPD continues among some health care providers, due to the relatively limited success of primary and secondary prevention (i.e., avoidance of factors that cause COPD or its progression), the prevailing notion that COPD is largely a self-inflicted disease, and disappointment with available treatment options. Another important goal of the GOLD initiative is to work toward combating this nihilistic attitude by disseminating information about available treatments (both pharmacologic and nonpharmacologic), and by working with a network of experts—the GOLD National Leaders—to implement effective COPD management programs developed in accordance with local health care practices.

Tobacco smoking continues to be a major cause of COPD, as well as of many other diseases. A worldwide decline in tobacco smoking would result in substantial health benefits and a decrease in the prevalence of COPD and other smoking-related diseases. There is an urgent need for improved strategies to decrease tobacco consumption. However, tobacco smoking is not the only cause of COPD, and it may not even be the major cause in some parts of the world. Furthermore, not all smokers develop clinically significant COPD, which suggests that additional factors are involved in determining each individual's susceptibility. Thus, investigations of COPD risk factors, ways to reduce exposure to these factors, and the molecular and cellular mechanisms involved in COPD pathogenesis continue to be important areas of research to develop more effective treatments that slow or halt the course of the disease.

One strategy to help achieve the objectives of GOLD is to provide health care workers, health care authorities, and the general public with state-of-the-art information about COPD and specific recommendations on the most appropriate management and prevention strategies. The GOLD report, *Global Strategy for the Diagnosis, Management, and Prevention of COPD*, is based on the best-validated current concepts of COPD pathogenesis and the available evidence on the most appropriate management and prevention strategies. The report, developed by individuals with expertise in COPD research and patient care and reviewed by many additional experts, provides state-of-the-art information about COPD for pulmonary specialists and other interested physicians. The document serves as a source for the production of various communications for other audiences, including an Executive Summary, a Pocket Guide for Health Care Professionals, and a Patient Guide[2].

The GOLD report is not intended to be a comprehensive textbook on COPD, but rather to summarize the current state of the field. Each chapter starts with *Key Points* that crystallize current knowledge. The chapters on the *Burden of COPD* and *Risk Factors* demonstrate the global importance of COPD and the various causal factors involved. The chapter on *Pathology, Pathogenesis, and Pathophysiology* documents the current understanding of, and remaining questions about, the mechanism(s) that lead to COPD, as well as the structural and functional abnormalities of the lung that are characteristic of the disease.

A major part of the GOLD report is devoted to the clinical Management of COPD and presents a management plan with four components: (1) *Assess and Monitor Disease*; (2) *Reduce Risk Factors*; (3) *Manage Stable COPD*; (4) *Manage Exacerbations*.

Management recommendations are presented according to the severity of the disease, using a simple classification of severity to facilitate the practical implementation of the available management options. Where appropriate, information about health education for patients is included. A new chapter at the end of the document will assist readers in *Translating Guideline Recommendations to the Context of (Primary) Care*.

A large segment of the world's population lives in areas with inadequate medical facilities and meager financial resources, and fixed international guidelines and rigid scientific protocols will not work in many locations. Thus, the recommendations found in this report must be adapted to fit local practices and the availability of health care resources. As the individuals who participate in the GOLD program expand their work, every effort will be made to interact with patient and physician groups at national, district, and local levels, and in multiple health care settings, to continuously examine new and innovative approaches that will ensure the delivery of the best care possible to COPD patients, and the initiation of programs for early detection and prevention of this disease. GOLD is a partner organization in a program launched in March 2006 by the World Health Organization, the Global Alliance Against Chronic Respiratory Diseases (GARD). Through the work of the GOLD committees, and in cooperation with GARD initiatives, progress toward better care for all patients with COPD should be substantial in the next decade.

METHODOLOGY

A. Preparation of yearly updates: Immediately following the release of the first GOLD report in 2001, the GOLD Executive Committee appointed a Science Committee, charged with keeping the GOLD documents up-to-date by reviewing published research, evaluating the impact of this research on the management recommendations in the GOLD documents, and posting yearly updates of these documents on the GOLD Website. The first update to the GOLD report was posted in July 2003, based on publications from January 2001 through December 2002. A second update appeared in July 2004, and a third in July 2005, each including the impact of publications from January through December of the previous year.

Producing the yearly updates began with a PubMed (http://www.nlm.nih.gov) search using search fields established by the Science Committee: 1) *COPD OR chronic bronchitis OR emphysema, All Fields, All Adult, 19+ years, only items with abstracts, Clinical Trial, Human, sorted by Author*; and 2) *COPD OR chronic bronchitis OR emphysema AND systematic, All Fields, All Adult, 19+ years, only items with abstracts, Human, sorted by Author.* In addition, publications in peer-reviewed journals not captured by PubMed could be submitted to individual members of the Science Committee, provided that an abstract and the full paper were submitted in (or translated into) English.

All members of the committee received a summary of citations and all abstracts. Each abstract was assigned to two committee members (members were not assigned papers they had authored), although any member was offered the opportunity to provide an opinion on any abstract. Each member evaluated the assigned abstracts or, where s/he judged necessary, the full publication, by answering specific written questions from a short questionnaire, and indicating whether the scientific data presented affected recommendations in the GOLD report. If so, the member was asked to specifically identify modifications that should be made. The GOLD Science Committee met on a regular basis to discuss each individual publication indicated by at least one member of the committee to have an impact on COPD management, and to reach a consensus on the changes needed in the report. Disagreements were decided by vote.

The publications that met the search criteria for each yearly update (between 100 and 200 articles per year) mainly affected Chapter 5, Management of COPD. Lists of the publications considered by the Science Committee each year, along with the yearly updated reports, are posted on the GOLD Website, www.goldcopd.org.

B. Preparation of the New 2006 Report: In January 2005, the GOLD Science Committee initiated its work on a comprehensively updated version of the GOLD report. During a two-day meeting, the committee established that the report structure should remain the same as in the 2001 document, but that each chapter would be carefully reviewed and modified in accordance with new published literature. The committee met in May and September 2005 to evaluate progress and to reach consensus on the messages to be provided in each chapter. Throughout its work, the committee made a commitment to develop a document that would reach a global audience, be based on the most current scientific literature, and be as concise as possible, while at the same time recognizing that one of the values of the GOLD report has been to provide background information on COPD management and the scientific principles on which management recommendations are based.

In January 2006, the Science Committee met with the Executive Committee for a two-day session during which another in-depth evaluation of each chapter was conducted. At this meeting, members reviewed the literature that appeared in 2005—using the same criteria developed for the update process. The list of 2005 publications that were considered is posted on the GOLD website. At the January meeting, it was clear that work remaining would permit the report to be finished during the summer of 2006, and the Science Committee requested that, as publications appeared throughout early 2006, they be reviewed carefully for their impact on the recommendations. At the committee's next meeting, in May 2006, publications meeting the search criteria were considered and incorporated into the current drafts of the chapters where appropriate. A final meeting of the committee was held in September 2006, at which time publications that appeared prior to July 31, 2006 were considered for their impact on the document.

Periodically throughout the preparation of this report (May and September 2005, May and September 2006), representatives from the GOLD Science Committee met with the GOLD National Leaders to discuss COPD management and issues specific to each of the chapters. The GOLD National Leaders include representatives from over 50 countries and many participated in these interim discussions. In addition, GOLD National Leaders were invited to submit comments on a DRAFT document and their comments were considered by the committee. When the committee completed its work, several other individuals were invited to submit comments on the document as reviewers. The names of reviewers and GOLD National Leaders who submitted comments are in the front material.

NEW ISSUES PRESENTED IN THIS REPORT

1. Throughout the document, emphasis has been made that COPD is characterized by chronic airflow limitation and a range of pathological changes in the lung, some significant extrapulmonary effects, and important comorbidities that may contribute to the severity of the disease in individual patients.

2. In the definition of COPD, the phrase "preventable and treatable" has been incorporated following the ATS/ERS recommendations to recognize the need to present a positive outlook for patients, to encourage the health care community to take a more active role in developing programs for COPD prevention, and to stimulate effective management programs to treat those with the disease.

3. The spirometric classification of severity of COPD now includes four stages—*Stage I: Mild; Stage II: Moderate; Stage III: Severe; Stage IV: Very Severe*. A fifth category - "*Stage 0: At Risk*," - that appeared in the 2001 report is no longer included as a stage of COPD, as there is incomplete evidence that the individuals who meet the definition of "At Risk" (chronic cough and sputum production, normal spirometry) necessarily progress on to *Stage I*. Nevertheless, the importance of the public health message that chronic cough and sputum are not normal is unchanged.

4. The spirometric classification of severity continues to recommend use of the fixed ratio, postbronchodilator $FEV_1/FVC < 0.7$, to define airflow limitation. Using the fixed ratio (FEV_1/FVC) is particularly problematic in milder patients who are elderly as the normal process of aging affects lung volumes. Postbronchodilator reference values in this population are urgently needed to avoid potential overdiagnosis.

5. Chapter 2, Burden of COPD, provides references to published data from prevalence surveys carried out in a number of countries, using standardized methods and including spirometry, to estimate that about one-quarter of adults aged 40 years and older may have airflow limitation classified as *Stage I: Mild COPD* or higher. Evidence is also provided that the prevalence of COPD (*Stage I: Mild COPD* and higher) is appreciably higher in smokers and ex-smokers than in nonsmokers, in those over 40 years than those under 40, and higher in men than in women. The chapter also provides new data on COPD morbidity and mortality.

6. Throughout it is emphasized that cigarette smoke is the most commonly encountered risk factor for COPD and elimination of this risk factor is an important step toward prevention and control of COPD. However, other risk factors for COPD should be taken into account where possible. These include occupational dusts and chemicals, and indoor air pollution from biomass cooking and heating in poorly ventilated dwellings—the latter especially among women in developing countries.

7. Chapter 4, Pathology, Pathogenesis, and Pathophysiology, continues with the theme that inhaled cigarette smoke and other noxious particles cause lung inflammation, a normal response which appears to be amplified in patients who develop COPD. The chapter has been considerably updated and revised.

8. Management of COPD continues to be presented in four components: (1) Assess and Monitor Disease; (2) Reduce Risk Factors; (3) Manage Stable COPD; (4) Manage Exacerbations. All components have been updated based on recently published literature. Throughout the document, it is emphasized that the overall approach to managing stable COPD should be individualized to address symptoms and improve quality of life.

9. In Component 4, Manage Exacerbations, a COPD exacerbation is defined as: *an event in the natural course of the disease characterized by a change in the patient's baseline dyspnea, cough, and/or sputum that is beyond normal day-to-day variations, is acute in onset, and may warrant a change in regular medication in a patient with underlying COPD.*

10. It is widely recognized that a wide spectrum of health care providers are required to assure that COPD is diagnosed accurately, and that individuals who have COPD are treated effectively. The identification of effective health care teams will depend on the local health care system, and much work remains to identify how best to build these health care teams. A chapter on COPD implementation programs and issues for clinical practice has been included but it remains a field that requires considerable attention.

LEVELS OF EVIDENCE

Levels of evidence are assigned to management recommendations where appropriate in Chapter 5, Management of COPD. Evidence levels are indicated in boldface type enclosed in parentheses after the relevant statement–e.g., (**Evidence A**). The methodological issues concerning the use of evidence from meta-analyses were carefully considered[3].

This evidence level scheme (**Table A**) has been used in previous GOLD reports, and was in use throughout the preparation of this document. The GOLD Science Committee was recently introduced to a new approach to evidence levels[4] and plans to review and consider the possible introduction of this approach in future reports.

Figure A. Description of Levels of Evidence

Evidence Category	Sources of Evidence	Definition
A	Randomized controlled trials (RCTs). Rich body of data.	Evidence is from endpoints of well-designed RCTs that provide a consistent pattern of findings in the population for which the recommendation is made. Category A requires substantial numbers of studies involving substantial numbers of participants.
B	Randomized controlled trials (RCTs). Limited body of data.	Evidence is from endpoints of intervention studies that include only a limited number of patients, posthoc or subgroup analysis of RCTs, or meta-analysis of RCTs. In general, Category B pertains when few randomized trials exist, they are small in size, they were undertaken in a population that differs from the target population of the recommendation, or the results are somewhat inconsistent.
C	Nonrandomized trials. Observational studies.	Evidence is from outcomes of uncontrolled or nonrandomized trials or from observational studies.
D	Panel Consensus Judgment.	This category is used only in cases where the provision of some guidance was deemed valuable but the clinical literature addressing the subject was deemed insufficient to justify placement in one of the other categories. The Panel Consensus is based on clinical experience or knowledge that does not meet the above-listed criteria.

REFERENCES

1. *World Health Report.* Geneva: World Health Organization. Available from URL: http://www.who.int/whr/2000/en/statistics.htm; 2000.
2. Lopez AD, Shibuya K, Rao C, Mathers CD, Hansell AL, Held LS, et al. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: current burden and future projections. *Eur Respir J* 2006;27(2):397-412.
3. Jadad AR, Moher M, Browman GP, Booker L, Sigouin C, Fuentes M, *et al.* Systematic reviews and meta-analyses on treatment of asthma: critical evaluation. *BMJ* 2000;320(7234):537-40.
4. Guyatt G, Vist G, Falck-Ytter Y, Kunz R, Magrini N, Schunemann H. An emerging consensus on grading recommendations? *ACP J Club* 2006;144(1):A8-9. Available from URL: http://www.evidence-basedmedicine.com.

CHAPTER 1

DEFINITION

CHAPTER 1: DEFINITION

KEY POINTS:

- Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD) is a preventable and treatable disease with some significant extrapulmonary effects that may contribute to the severity in individual patients. Its pulmonary component is characterized by airflow limitation that is not fully reversible. The airflow limitation is usually progressive and associated with an abnormal inflammatory response of the lung to noxious particles or gases.

- The chronic airflow limitation characteristic of COPD is caused by a mixture of small airway disease (obstructive bronchiolitis) and parenchymal destruction (emphysema), the relative contributions of which vary from person to person.

- COPD has a variable natural history and not all individuals follow the same course. However, COPD is generally a progressive disease, especially if a patient's exposure to noxious agents continues.

- The impact of COPD on an individual patient depends on the severity of symptoms (especially breathlessness and decreased exercise capacity), systemic effects, and any comorbidities the patient may have—not just on the degree of airflow limitation.

DEFINITION

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) is characterized by chronic airflow limitation and a range of pathological changes in the lung, some significant extra-pulmonary effects, and important comorbidities which may contribute to the severity of the disease in individual patients. Thus, COPD should be regarded as a pulmonary disease, but these significant comorbidities must be taken into account in a comprehensive diagnostic assessment of severity and in determining appropriate treatment.

Based on current knowledge, a working definition is:

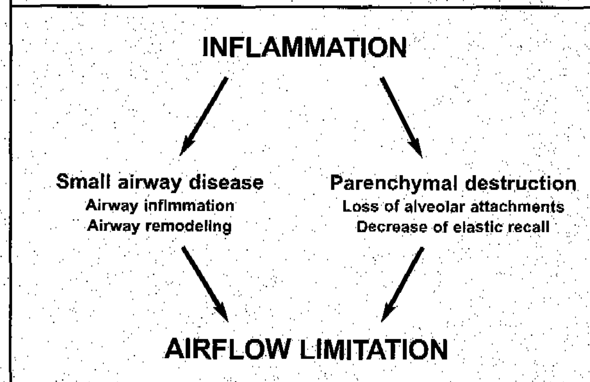
Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease (COPD) is a preventable and treatable disease with some significant extrapulmonary effects that may contribute to the severity in individual patients. Its pulmonary component is characterized by airflow limitation that is not fully reversible. The airflow limitation is usually progressive and associated with an abnormal inflammatory response of the lung to noxious particles or gases.

Worldwide, cigarette smoking is the most commonly encountered risk factor for COPD, although in many countries, air pollution resulting from the burning of wood and other biomass fuels has also been identified as a COPD risk factor.

Airflow Limitation in COPD

The chronic airflow limitation characteristic of COPD is caused by a mixture of small airway disease (obstructive bronchiolitis) and parenchymal destruction (emphysema), the relative contributions of which vary from person to person (**Figure 1-1**). Chronic inflammation causes structural changes and narrowing of the small airways. Destruction of the lung parenchyma, also by inflammatory processes, leads to the loss of alveolar attachments to the small airways and decreases lung elastic recoil; in turn, these changes diminish the ability of the airways to remain open during expiration. Airflow limitation is best measured by spirometry, as this is the most widely available, reproducible test of lung function.

Figure 1-1. Mechanisms Underlying Airflow Limitation in COPD



Many previous definitions of COPD have emphasized the terms "emphysema" and "chronic bronchitis," which are not included in the definition used in this and earlier GOLD reports. Emphysema, or destruction of the gas-exchanging surfaces of the lung (alveoli), is a pathological term that is often (but incorrectly) used clinically and describes only one of several structural abnormalities present in patients with COPD. Chronic bronchitis, or the presence of cough and sputum production for at least 3 months in each of two consecutive years, remains a clinically and epidemiologically useful term. However, it does not reflect the major impact of airflow limitation on morbidity and mortality in COPD patients. It is also important to recognize that cough and sputum production may precede the development of airflow limitation; conversely, some patients develop significant airflow limitation without chronic cough and sputum production.

COPD and Comorbidities

Because COPD often develops in long-time smokers in middle age, patients often have a variety of other diseases related to either smoking or aging[1]. COPD itself also has significant extrapulmonary (systemic) effects that lead to comorbid conditions[2]. Data from the Netherlands show that up to 25% of the population 65 years and older suffer from two comorbid conditions and up to 17% have three[3]. Weight loss, nutritional abnormalities and skeletal muscle dysfunction are well-recognized extrapulmonary effects of COPD and patients are at increased risk for myocardial infarction, angina, osteoporosis, respiratory infection, bone fractures, depression, diabetes, sleep-disorders, anemia, and glaucoma[4]. The existence of COPD may actually increase the risk for other diseases; this is particularly striking for COPD and lung cancer[5-8]. Whether this association is due to common risk factors (e.g., smoking), involvement of susceptibility genes, or impaired clearance of carcinogens is not clear.

Thus, COPD should be managed with careful attention also paid to comorbidities and their effect on the patient's quality of life. A careful differential diagnosis and comprehensive assessment of severity of comorbid conditions should be performed in every patient with chronic airflow limitation.

NATURAL HISTORY

COPD has a variable natural history and not all individuals follow the same course. However, COPD is generally a progressive disease, especially if a patient's exposure to noxious agents continues. Stopping exposure to these agents, even when significant airflow limitation is present, may result in some improvement in lung function and slow or even halt progression of the disease. However, once developed, COPD and its comorbidities cannot be cured and thus must be treated continuously. COPD treatment can reduce symptoms, improve quality of life, reduce exacerbations, and possibly reduce mortality.

Spirometric Classification of Severity

For educational reasons, a simple spirometric classification of disease severity into four stages is recommended (**Figure 1-2**). Spirometry is essential for diagnosis and provides a useful description of the severity of pathological changes in COPD. Specific spirometric cut-points (e.g., post-bronchodilator FEV_1/FVC ratio < 0.70 or FEV_1 < 80, 50, or 30% predicted) are used for purposes of simplicity: these cut-points have not been clinically validated. A study in a random population sample found that the post-bronchodilator FEV_1/FVC exceeded 0.70 in all age groups, supporting the use of this fixed ratio[9].

Figure 1-2. Spirometric Classification of COPD Severity Based on Post-Bronchodilator FEV_1

Stage I: Mild	$FEV_1/FVC < 0.70$ $FEV_1 \geq 80\%$ predicted
Stage II: Moderate	$FEV_1/FVC < 0.70$ $50\% \leq FEV_1 < 80\%$ predicted
Stage III: Severe	$FEV_1/FVC < 0.70$ $30\% \leq FEV_1 < 50\%$ predicted
Stage IV: Very Severe	$FEV_1/FVC < 0.70$ $FEV_1 < 30\%$ predicted or $FEV_1 < 50\%$ predicted plus chronic respiratory failure

FEV_1: forced expiratory volume in one second; FVC: forced vital capacity; respiratory failure: arterial partial pressure of oxygen (PaO_2) less than 8.0 kPa (60 mm Hg) with or without arterial partial pressure of CO_2 ($PaCO_2$) greater than 6.7 kPa (50 mm Hg) while breathing air at sea level.

However, because the process of aging does affect lung volumes, the use of this fixed ratio may result in over diagnosis of COPD in the elderly, especially of mild disease. Using the lower limit of normal (LLN) values for FEV_1/FVC, that are based on the normal distribution and classify the bottom 5% of the healthy population as abnormal, is one way to minimize the potential misclassification. In principle, all programmable spirometers could do this calculation if reference equations for the LLN of the ratio were available. However, reference equations using post-bronchodilator FEV_1 and longitudinal studies to validate the use of the LLN are urgently needed.

Spirometry should be performed after the administration of an adequate dose of an inhaled bronchodilator (e.g., 400 µg salbutamol)[10] in order to minimize variability. In a random population study to determine spirometry reference values, post-bronchodilator values differed markedly from pre-bronchodilator values[9]. Furthermore, post-bronchodilator lung function testing in a community setting has been demonstrated to be an effective method to identify individuals with COPD[11].

While post-bronchodilator FEV_1/FVC and FEV_1 measurements are recommended for the diagnosis and assessment of severity of COPD, the degree of reversibility of airflow limitation (e.g., ΔFEV_1 after bronchodilator or glucocorticosteroids) is no longer recommended for diagnosis, differential diagnosis with asthma, or predicting the response to long-term treatment with bronchodilators or glucocorticosteroids.

Stages of COPD

The impact of COPD on an individual patient depends not just on the degree of airflow limitation, but also on the severity of symptoms (especially breathlessness and decreased exercise capacity). There is only an imperfect relationship between the degree of airflow limitation and the presence of symptoms. Spirometric staging, therefore, is a pragmatic approach aimed at practical implementation and should only be regarded as an educational tool and a general indication to the initial approach to management.

The characteristic symptoms of COPD are chronic and progressive dyspnea, cough, and sputum production. Chronic cough and sputum production may precede the development of airflow limitation by many years. This pattern offers a unique opportunity to identify smokers and others at risk for COPD (**Figure 1-3**), and intervene when the disease is not yet a major health problem.

Figure 1-3. "At Risk for COPD"

A major objective of GOLD is to increase awareness among health care providers and the general public of the significance of COPD symptoms. The classification of severity of COPD now includes four stages classified by spirometry—*Stage I: Mild COPD; Stage II: Moderate COPD; Stage III: Severe COPD; Stage IV: Very Severe COPD*. A fifth category - "*Stage 0: At Risk*," – that appeared in the 2001 report is no longer included as a stage of COPD, as there is incomplete evidence that the individuals who meet the definition of "At Risk" (chronic cough and sputum production, normal spirometry) necessarily progress on to *Stage I. Mild COPD*. Nevertheless, the importance of the public health message that chronic cough and sputum are not normal is unchanged and their presence should trigger a search for underlying cause(s).

Conversely, significant airflow limitation may develop without chronic cough and sputum production. Although COPD is defined on the basis of airflow limitation, in practice the decision to seek medical help (and so permit the diagnosis to be made) is normally determined by the impact of a particular symptom on a patient's lifestyle. Thus, COPD may be diagnosed at any stage of the illness.

Stage I: Mild COPD - Characterized by mild airflow limitation ($FEV_1/FVC < 0.70$; $FEV_1 \geq 80\%$ predicted). Symptoms of chronic cough and sputum production may be present, but not always. At this stage, the individual is usually unaware that his or her lung function is abnormal.

Stage II: Moderate COPD - Characterized by worsening airflow limitation ($FEV_1/FVC < 0.70$; $50\% \leq FEV_1 < 80\%$ predicted), with shortness of breath typically developing on exertion and cough and sputum production sometimes also present. This is the stage at which patients typically seek medical attention because of chronic respiratory symptoms or an exacerbation of their disease.

Stage III: Severe COPD - Characterized by further worsening of airflow limitation ($FEV_1/FVC < 0.70$; $30\% \leq FEV_1 < 50\%$ predicted), greater shortness of breath, reduced exercise capacity, fatigue, and repeated exacerbations that almost always have an impact on patients' quality of life.

Stage IV: Very Severe COPD - Characterized by severe airflow limitation ($FEV_1/FVC < 0.70$; $FEV_1 < 30\%$ predicted *or* $FEV_1 < 50\%$ predicted plus the presence of chronic respiratory failure). Respiratory failure is defined as an arterial partial pressure of O_2 (PaO_2) less than 8.0 kPa (60 mm Hg), with or without arterial partial pressure of CO_2 ($PaCO_2$) greater than 6.7 kPa (50 mm Hg) while breathing air at sea level. Respiratory failure may also lead to effects on the heart such as cor pulmonale (right heart failure). Clinical signs of cor pulmonale include elevation of the jugular venous pressure and pitting ankle edema. Patients may have *Stage IV: Very Severe COPD* even if the FEV_1 is > 30% predicted, whenever these complications are present. At this stage, quality of life is very appreciably impaired and exacerba-tions may be life threatening.

The common statement that only 15-20% of smokers develop clinically significant COPD is misleading[12]. A much higher proportion may develop abnormal lung function at some point if they continue to smoke[13]. Not all individuals with COPD follow the classical linear course as outlined in the Fletcher and Peto diagram, which is actually the mean of many individual courses[14]. Causes of death in patients with COPD are mainly cardiovascular diseases, lung cancer, and, in those with advanced COPD, respiratory failure[15].

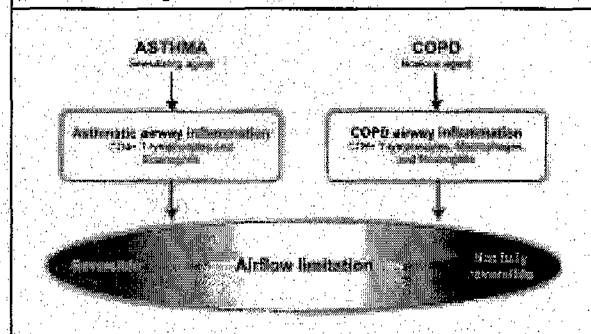
SCOPE OF THE REPORT

It is not the scope of this report to provide a comprehensive discussion of the natural history of comorbidities associated with COPD but to focus primarily on chronic airflow limitation caused by inhaled particles and gases, the most common of which worldwide is cigarette smoke. However, chronic airflow limitation may develop also in nonsmokers who present with similar symptoms and may be associated with other diseases, e.g., asthma, congestive heart failure, lung carcinoma, bronchiectasis, pulmonary tuberculosis, bronchiolitis obliterans, and interstitial lung diseases. Poorly reversible airflow limitation associated with these conditions is not addressed except insofar as these conditions overlap with COPD.

Asthma and COPD

COPD can coexist with asthma, the other major chronic obstructive airway disease characterized by an underlying airway inflammation. The underlying chronic airway inflammation is very different in these two diseases (**Figure 1-4**). However, individuals with asthma who are exposed to noxious agents, particularly cigarette smoke[16], may also develop fixed airflow limitation and a mixture of "asthma-like" and "COPD-like" inflammation. Furthermore, there is epidemiologic evidence that longstanding asthma on its own can lead to fixed airflow limitation[17]. Other patients with COPD may have features of asthma such as a mixed inflammatory pattern with increased eosinophils[18]. Thus, while asthma can usually be distinguished from COPD, in some individuals with chronic respiratory symptoms and fixed airflow limitation it remains difficult to differentiate the two diseases. Population-based surveys[19,20] have documented that chronic airflow limitation may occur in up to 10% of lifetime nonsmokers 40 years and older; the causes of airflow limitation in nonsmokers needs further investigation.

Figure 1-4. Asthma and COPD



Pulmonary Tuberculosis and COPD

In many developing countries both pulmonary tuberculosis and COPD are common[21]. In countries where tuberculosis is very common, respiratory abnormalities may be too readily attributed to this disease[22]. Conversely, where the rate of tuberculosis is greatly diminished, the possible diagnosis of this disease is sometimes overlooked. Therefore, in all subjects with symptoms of COPD, a possible diagnosis of tuberculosis should be considered, especially in areas where this disease is known to be prevalent[23].

REFERENCES

1. Soriano JB, Visick GT, Muellerova H, Payvandi N, Hansell AL. Patterns of comorbidities in newly diagnosed COPD and asthma in primary care. *Chest* 2005;128(4):2099-107.
2. Agusti AG. Systemic effects of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Proc Am Thorac Soc* 2005;2(4):367-70.
3. van Weel C. Chronic diseases in general practice: the longitudinal dimension. *Eur J Gen Pract* 1996;2:17-21.
4. van Weel C, Schellevis FG. Comorbidity and guidelines: conflicting interests. *Lancet* 2006;367(9510):550-1.
5. Stavem K, Aaser E, Sandvik L, Bjornholt JV, Erikssen G, Thaulow E, *et al.* Lung function, smoking and mortality in a 26-year follow-up of healthy middle-aged males. *Eur Respir J* 2005;25(4):618-25.
6. Skillrud DM, Offord KP, Miller RD. Higher risk of lung cancer in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. A prospective, matched, controlled study. *Ann Intern Med* 1986;105(4):503-7.
7. Tockman MS, Anthonisen NR, Wright EC, Donithan MG. Airways obstruction and the risk for lung cancer. *Ann Intern Med* 1987;106(4):512-8.
8. Lange P, Nyboe J, Appleyard M, Jensen G, Schnohr P. Ventilatory function and chronic mucus hypersecretion as predictors of death from lung cancer. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1990;141(3):613-7.
9. Johannessen A, Lehmann S, Omenaas ER, Eide GE, Bakke PS, Gulsvik A. Post-bronchodilator spirometry reference values in adults and implications for disease management. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2006;173(12):1316-25.
10. Pellegrino R, Viegi G, Brusasco V, Crapo RO, Burgos F, Casaburi R, *et al.* Interpretative strategies for lung function tests. *Eur Respir J* 2005;26(5):948-68.
11. Johannessen A, Omenaas ER, Bakke PS, Gulsvik A. Implications of reversibility testing on prevalence and risk factors for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a community study. *Thorax* 2005;60(10):842-7.

12. Rennard S, Vestbo J. COPD: the dangerous underestimate of 15%. *Lancet* 2006;367:1216-9.

13. Lokke A, Lange P, Scharling H, Fabricius P, Vestbo J. Developing COPD - a 25 years follow-up study of the general population. *Thorax* 2006;61:935-9.

14. Fletcher C, Peto R. The natural history of chronic airflow obstruction. *BMJ* 1977;1(6077):1645-8.

15. Mannino DM, Doherty DE, Sonia Buist A. Global Initiative on Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD) classification of lung disease and mortality: findings from the Atherosclerosis Risk in Communities (ARIC) study. *Respir Med* 2006;100(1):115-22.

16. Thomson NC, Chaudhuri R, Livingston E. Asthma and cigarette smoking. *Eur Respir J* 2004;24(5):822-33.

17. Lange P, Parner J, Vestbo J, Schnohr P, Jensen G. A 15-year follow-up study of ventilatory function in adults with asthma. *N Engl J Med* 1998;339(17):1194-200.

18. Chanez P, Vignola AM, O'Shaugnessy T, Enander I, Li D, Jeffery PK, *et al.* Corticosteroid reversibility in COPD is related to features of asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1997;155(5):1529-34.

19. Menezes AM, Perez-Padilla R, Jardim JR, Muino A, Lopez MV, Valdivia G, et al. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease in five Latin American cities (the PLATINO study): a prevalence study. *Lancet* 2005;366(9500):1875-81.

20. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Surveillance Summaries. *MMWR* 2002:51(No. SS-6).

21. Fairall LR, Zwarenstein M, Bateman ED, Bachmann M, Lombard C, Majara BP, *et al.* Effect of educational outreach to nurses on tuberculosis case detection and primary care of respiratory illness: pragmatic cluster randomised controlled trial. *BMJ* 2005;331(7519):750-4.

22. de Valliere S, Barker RD. Residual lung damage after completion of treatment for multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 2004;8(6):767-71.

23. Bateman ED, Feldman C, O'Brien J, Plit M, Joubert JR. Guideline for the management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD): 2004 revision. *S Afr Med J* 2004;94(7 Pt 2):559-75.

CHAPTER

2

BURDEN OF COPD

CHAPTER 2: BURDEN OF COPD

KEY POINTS:

- COPD is a leading cause of morbidity and mortality worldwide and results in an economic and social burden that is both substantial and increasing.

- COPD prevalence, morbidity, and mortality vary across countries and across different groups within countries but, in general, are directly related to the prevalence of tobacco smoking, although in many countries, air pollution resulting from the burning of wood and other biomass fuels has also been identified as a COPD risk factor.

- The prevalence and burden of COPD are projected to increase in the coming decades due to continued exposure to COPD risk factors and the changing age structure of the world's population.

- COPD is a costly disease with both direct costs (value of health care resources devoted to diagnosis and medical management) and indirect costs (monetary consequences of disability, missed work, premature mortality, and caregiver or family costs resulting from the illness).

INTRODUCTION

COPD is a leading cause of morbidity and mortality worldwide and results in an economic and social burden that is both substantial and increasing. COPD prevalence, morbidity, and mortality vary across countries and across different groups within countries but, in general, are directly related to the prevalence of tobacco smoking although in many countries, air pollution resulting from the burning of wood and other biomass fuels has also been identified as a COPD risk factor. The prevalence and burden of COPD are projected to increase in the coming decades due to continued exposure to COPD risk factors and the changing age structure of the world's population (with more people living longer, and thus reaching the age at which COPD normally develops).

EPIDEMIOLOGY

In the past, imprecise and variable definitions of COPD have made it difficult to quantify prevalence, morbidity and mortality. Furthermore, the underrecognition and underdiagnosis of COPD lead to significant underreporting. The extent of the underreporting varies across countries and depends on the level of awareness and understanding of COPD among health professionals, the organization of health care services to cope with chronic diseases, and the availability of medications for the treatment of COPD[1].

There are several sources of information on the burden of COPD: publications such as the 2003 European Lung White Book[2], international Websites such as the World Health Organization (http://www.who.int) and the World Bank/WHO Global Burden of Disease Study (http://www.who.int/topics/global_burden_of_disease), and country-specific Websites such as the US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (http://www.cdc.gov) and the UK Health Survey for England (http://www.doh.gov.uk).

Prevalence

Existing COPD prevalence data show remarkable variation due to differences in survey methods, diagnostic criteria, and analytic approaches[3,4]. Survey methods can include:

- Self-report of a doctor diagnosis of COPD or equivalent condition
- Spirometry with or without a bronchodilator
- Questionnaires that ask about the presence of respiratory symptoms

The *lowest* estimates of prevalence are usually those based on self-reporting of a doctor diagnosis of COPD or equivalent condition. For example, most national data show that less than 6% of the population has been told that they have COPD[3]. This likely reflects the widespread underrecognition and underdiagnosis of COPD[5] as well as the fact that those with *Stage I: Mild COPD* may have no symptoms, or else symptoms (such as chronic cough and sputum) that are not perceived by individuals or their health care providers as abnormal and possibly indicative of early COPD[5]. These estimates may have value, however, since they may most accurately reflect the burden of *clinically significant* disease that is of sufficient severity to require health services, and therefore is likely to generate significant direct and indirect costs.

By contrast, data from prevalence surveys carried out in a number of countries, using standardized methods and including spirometry, estimate that up to about one-quarter of adults aged 40 years and older may have airflow limitation classified as *Stage I: Mild COPD* or higher[6-9].

Because of the large gap between the prevalence of COPD as defined by the presence of airflow limitation and the prevalence of COPD as defined by clinically significant disease, the debate continues as to which of these it is better to use in estimating the burden of COPD. Early diagnosis and intervention may help to identify the number of individuals who progress to a clinically significant stage of disease, but there is insufficient evidence at this time to recommend community-based spirometric screening for COPD[10].

Different diagnostic criteria also give widely different estimates and there is little consensus regarding the most appropriate criteria for different settings (e.g., epidemiologic surveys, clinical diagnosis), or the strengths and weaknesses of the different criteria. It is recognized that defining irreversible airflow obstruction as a post-bronchodilator FEV_1/FVC ratio less than 0.70 leads to the potential for significant misclassification, with ***under***diagnosis (false negatives) in younger adults and ***over***-diagnosis (false positives) over age 50 years[11-13]. This has led to the recommendation that the use of the lower limit of normal (LLN) of the post-bronchodilator FEV_1/FVC ratio rather than the fixed ratio be used to define irreversible airflow obstruction[14,15]. However, more information is needed from population-based longitudinal studies to determine the outcome of individuals classified using either definition.

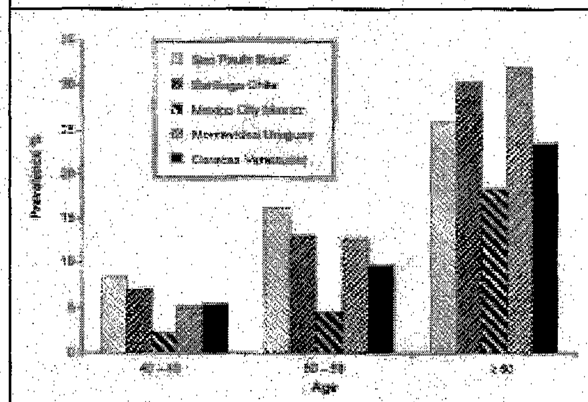
Many additional sources of variation can affect estimates of COPD prevalence, including sampling methods, response rates, quality control of spirometry, and whether spirometry is performed pre- or post-bronchodilator. Samples that are not population-based and poor response rates may give biased estimates of prevalence, with the direction of bias sometimes hard to determine. Inadequate emptying of the lungs during the spirometric maneuver is common and leads to an artificially high ratio of FEV_1/FVC and therefore to an underestimate of the prevalence of COPD. Failure to use post-bronchodilator value instead of pre-bronchodilator values leads to an overdiagnosis of irreversible airflow limitation In future prevalence surveys, *post-bronchodilator* spirometry should be used to confirm the diagnosis of COPD[16].

Despite these complexities, data are emerging that enable some conclusions to be drawn regarding COPD prevalence. A systematic review and meta-analysis of studies carried out in 28 countries between 1990 and 2004[3], and an additional study from Japan[17], provide evidence that the prevalence of COPD (*Stage I: Mild COPD* and higher) is appreciably higher in smokers and ex-smokers than in nonsmokers, in those over 40 years than those under 40, and in men than in women.

The Latin American Project for the Investigation of Obstructive Lung Disease (PLATINO) examined the prevalence of post-bronchodilator airflow limitation (*Stage I: Mild COPD* and higher) among persons over age 40 in five major Latin American cities each in a different country – Brazil, Chile, Mexico, Uruguay, and Venezuela. In each country, the prevalence of *Stage I: Mild COPD* and higher increased steeply with age (**Figure 2-1**), with the highest prevalence among those over 60 years, ranging from a low of 18.4% in Mexico City, Mexico to a high of 32.1% in Mentevideo, Uruguay. In all cities/countries the prevalence was appreciably higher in men than in women. The reasons for the differences in prevalence across the five Latin American cities are still under investigation[6].

In 12 Asia-Pacific countries and regions a study based on a prevalence estimation model indicated a mean prevalence rate for moderate to severe COPD among individuals 30 years and older of 6.3% for the region. The rates varied twofold across the 12 Asian countries and ranged from a minimum of 3.5% (Hong Kong and Singapore) to a maximum of 6.7% (Vietnam)[18].

Figure 2-1. COPD Prevalence by Age in Five Latin American Cities[6]



Prevalence = postbronchodilator $FEV_1/FVC < 0.70$ (Stage I: Mild COPD and higher)

Morbidity

Morbidity measures traditionally include physician visits, emergency department visits, and hospitalizations. Although COPD databases for these outcome parameters are less readily available and usually less reliable than mortality databases, the limited data available indicate that morbidity due to COPD increases with age and is greater in men than in women[19-21]. In these data sets, however, COPD in its early stages (*Stage I: Mild COPD* and *Stage 2: Moderate COPD*) is usually not recognized, diagnosed, or treated, and therefore may not be included as a diagnosis in a patient's medical record.

Morbidity from COPD may be affected by other comorbid chronic conditions[22] (e.g., musculoskeletal disease, diabetes mellitus) that are not directly related to COPD but nevertheless may have an impact on the patient's health status, or may negatively interfere with COPD management. In patients with more advanced disease (*Stage III: Severe COPD* and *Stage IV: Very Severe COPD*), morbidity from COPD may be misattributed to another comorbid condition.

Morbidity data are greatly affected by the availability of resources (e.g., hospitalization rates are highly dependent on the availability of hospital beds) and thus have to be interpreted cautiously and with a clear understanding of the possible biases inherent in the dataset. Despite the limitations in the data for COPD, the European White Book provides good data on the mean number of consultations for major respiratory diseases across 19 countries of the European Economic Community[2]. In most countries, consultations for COPD greatly outnumbered consultations for asthma, pneumonia, lung and tracheal cancer, and tuberculosis. In the United States in 2000, there were 8 million physician office/hospital outpatient visits for COPD, 1.5 million emergency department visits, and 673,000 hospitalizations[23].

Another way of estimating the morbidity burden of disease is to calculate years of living with disability (YLD). The Global Burden of Disease Study estimates that COPD results in 1.68 YLD per 1,000 population, representing 1.8% of all YLDs, with a greater burden in men than in women (1.93% vs. 1.42%)[8,24,25].

Mortality

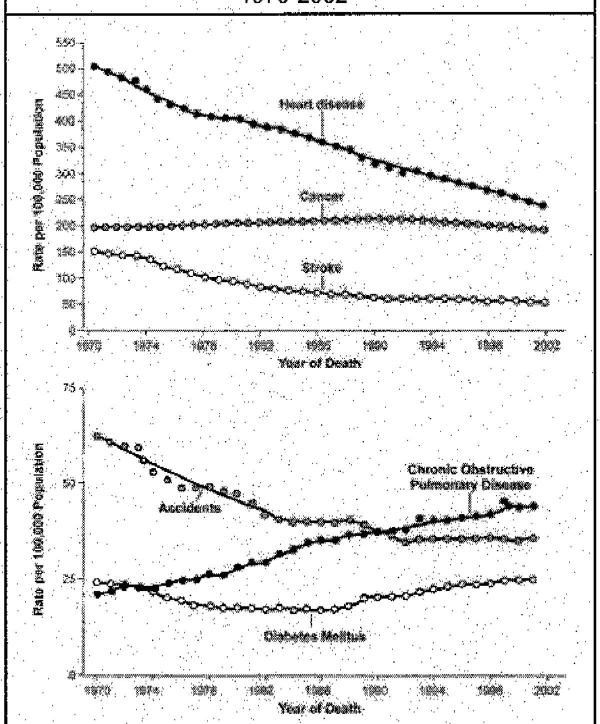
The World Health Organization publishes mortality statistics for selected causes of death annually for all WHO regions; additional information is available from the WHO Evidence for Health Policy Department (http://www.who.int/evidence). Data must be interpreted cautiously, however, because of inconsistent use of terminology for COPD. Prior to about 1968 and the Eighth Revision of the International Classification of Diseases (ICD), the terms "chronic bronchitis" and "emphysema" were used extensively. During the 1970s, the term "COPD" increasingly replaced those terms in some but not all countries, making COPD mortality comparisons in different countries very difficult. However, the situation has improved with the Ninth and Tenth Revisions of the ICD, in which deaths from COPD or chronic airways obstruction are included in the broad category of "COPD and allied conditions" (ICD-9 codes 490-496 and ICD-10 codes J42-46).

Thus, the problem of labeling has been partly solved, but underrecognition and underdiagnosis of COPD still affect the accuracy of mortality data. Although COPD is often a *primary* cause of death, it is more likely to be listed as a *contributory* cause of death or omitted from the death certificate entirely, and the death attributed to another condition such as cardiovascular disease.

Despite the problems with the accuracy of the COPD mortality data, it is clear that COPD is one of the most important causes of death in most countries. The Global Burden of Disease Study[8,24,25] has projected that COPD, which ranked sixth as the cause of death in 1990, will become the third leading cause of death worldwide by 2020. This increased mortality is driven by the expanding epidemic of smoking and the changing demographics in most countries, with more of the population living longer. Of these two forces, demographics is the stronger driver of the trend.

Trends in mortality rates over time provide further important information but, again, these statistics are greatly affected by terminology, awareness of the disease, and potential gender bias in its diagnosis. COPD mortality trends generally track several decades behind smoking trends. Trends in age-standardized death rates for the six leading causes of death in the United States from 1970 through 2002[26] indicates that while mortality from several of these chronic conditions declined over that period, COPD mortality increased (**Figure 2-2**). Death rates for COPD in Canada, in both men and women, have also been increasing since 1997. In Europe, however, the trends are different, with decreasing mortality from COPD already being seen in many countries[7]. There is no obvious reason for the difference between trends in North America and Europe, although presumably factors such as awareness, changing terminology, and diagnostic bias contribute to these differences.

Figure 2-2. Trends in Age-standardized Death Rates for the 6 Leading Causes of Death in the United States, 1970-2002[26]



Reprinted from Jemal A, Ward E, Hao Y, Thun M. Trends in the leading causes of death in the United States, 1970-2002. JAMA 2005;294(10):1255-9. with permission from JAMA

The mortality trends for COPD have been particularly striking for women. In Canada, the death rate from COPD among women accelerated in the 1990s and is expected to soon overtake the rate among men[21]. In the United States, COPD deaths among women have been rising steeply since the 1970s. In 2000, the *number* of deaths from COPD in the United States was greater among women than men (59,936 vs. 59,118), although the mortality rates among women remain somewhat lower than among men[27].

Worldwide, recent increases in COPD deaths are likely to continue. The Global Burden of Disease Study[8,24,25] projected baseline, optimistic, and pessimistic models for COPD mortality from 1990 to 2020 that take into account the expected aging of the world's population, projected increases in smoking rates, and projected declines in other causes of death such as diarrheal and HIV-related diseases.

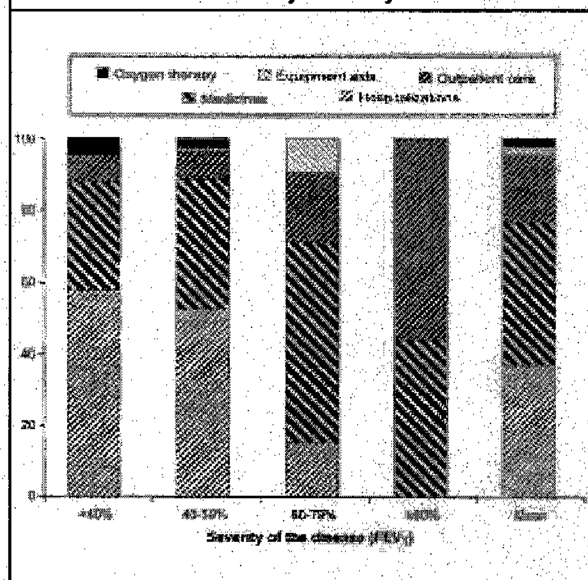
ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL BURDEN OF COPD

Economic Burden

COPD is a costly disease with both direct costs (value of health care resources devoted to diagnosis and medical management) and indirect costs (monetary consequences of disability, missed work, premature mortality, and caregiver or family costs resulting from the illness)[2]. In developed countries, exacerbations of COPD account for the greatest burden on the health care system. In the European Union, the total *direct* costs of respiratory disease are estimated to be about 6% of the total health care budget, with COPD accounting for 56% (38.6 billion Euros) of this[2]. In the United States in 2002, the direct costs of COPD were $18 billion and the indirect costs totaled $14.1 billion[26]. Costs per patient will vary across countries since these costs depend on how health care is provided and paid[7].

Not surprisingly, there is a striking direct relationship between the severity of COPD and the cost of care[29], and the distribution of costs changes as the disease progresses. For example, hospitalization and ambulatory oxygen costs soar as COPD severity increases, as illustrated by data from Sweden shown in **Figure 2-3.**

Figure 2-3. Distribution of Direct Costs of COPD by Severity[29]



Printed with permission. Copyright 2002 American College of Chest Physicians.

The presence of COPD greatly increases the total cost of care for patients, especially when inpatient costs are considered. In a study of COPD-related illness costs in the United States based on the 1987 National Medical Expenditure Survey, *per capita* expenditures for hospitalizations of COPD patients were 2.7 times the expenditures for patients without COPD ($5,409 vs. $2,001)[30]. In a 1992 study of Medicare, the US government health insurance program for individuals over 65, annual *per capita* expenditures for people with COPD ($8,482) were nearly 2.5 times the expenditures for people without COPD ($3,511)[31].

Individuals with COPD frequently receive professional medical care in their homes. In some countries, national health insurance plans provide coverage for oxygen therapy, visiting nursing services, rehabilitation, and even mechanical ventilation in the home, although coverage for specific services varies from country to country[32]. Any estimate of direct medical expenditures for home care underrepresents the true cost of home care to society, because it ignores the economic value of the care provided to those with COPD by family members. In developing countries, direct medical costs may be less important than the impact of COPD on workplace and home productivity. Because the health care sector might not provide long-term supportive care services for severely disabled individuals, COPD may force two individuals to leave the workplace—the affected individual and a family member who must now stay home to care for the disabled relative. Since human capital is often the most important national asset for developing countries, the indirect costs of COPD may represent a serious threat to their economies.

Social Burden

Since mortality offers a limited perspective on the human burden of a disease, it is desirable to find other measures of disease burden that are consistent and measurable across nations. The authors of the Global Burden of Disease Study designed a method to estimate the fraction of mortality and disability attributable to major diseases and injuries using a composite measure of the burden of each health problem, the Disability-Adjusted Life Year (DALY)[8,24,25]. The DALYs for a specific condition are the sum of years lost because of premature mortality and years of life lived with disability, adjusted for the severity of disability. In 1990, COPD was the twelfth leading cause of DALYs lost in the world, responsible for 2.1% of the total. According to the projections, COPD will be the fifth leading cause of DALYs lost worldwide in 2020, behind ischemic heart disease, major depression, traffic accidents, and cerebrovascular disease. This substantial increase in the global burden of COPD projected over the next twenty years reflects, in large part, the continued high use of tobacco in many countries and the changing age structure of populations in developing countries.

REFERENCES

1. Tirimanna PR, van Schayck CP, den Otter JJ, van Weel C, van Herwaarden CL, van den Boom G, *et al.* Prevalence of asthma and COPD in general practice in 1992: has it changed since 1977? *Br J Gen Pract* 1996;46(406):277-81.
2. European Respiratory Society. European Lung White Book: Huddersfield, *European Respiratory Society Journals, Ltd;* 2003.
3. Halbert RJ, Natoli JL, Gano A, Badamgarav E, Buist AS, Mannino DM. Global burden of COPD: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Eur Respir J* 2006.
4. Halbert RJ, Isonaka S, George D, Iqbal A. Interpreting COPD prevalence estimates: what is the true burden of disease? *Chest* 2003;123(5):1684-92.
5. van den Boom G, van Schayck CP, van Mollen MP, Tirimanna PR, den Otter JJ, van Grunsven PM, *et al.* Active detection of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and asthma in the general population. Results and economic consequences of the DIMCA program. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1998;158(6):1730-8.
6. Menezes AM, Perez-Padilla R, Jardim JR, Muino A, Lopez MV, Valdivia G, *et al.* Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease in five Latin American cities (the PLATINO study): a prevalence study. *Lancet* 2005;366(9500):1875-81.
7. Chapman KR, Mannino DM, Soriano JB, Vermeire PA, Buist AS, Thun MJ, *et al.* Epidemiology and costs of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Eur Respir J* 2006;27(1):188-207.
8. Lopez AD, Shibuya K, Rao C, Mathers CD, Hansell AL, Held LS, *et al.* Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: current burden and future projections. *Eur Respir J* 2006;27(2):397-412.
9. Buist AS, Vollmer WM, Sullivan SD, Weiss KB, Lee TA, Menezes AM, *et al.* The burden of obstructive lung disease initiative (BOLD): Rationale and Design. *J COPD* 2005;2:277-83.
10. Wilt TJ, Niewoehner D, Kim C, Kane RL, Linabery A, Tacklind J, *et al.* Use of spirometry for case finding, diagnosis, and management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). *Evid Rep Technol Assess* (Summ) 2005(121):1-7.
11. Hnizdo E, Glindmeyer HW, Petsonk EL, Enright P, Buist AS. Case Definitions for Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease. *J COPD* 2006;3:1-6.
12. Roberts SD, Farber MO, Knox KS, Phillips GS, Bhatt NY, Mastronarde JG, *et al.* FEV_1/FVC ratio of 70% misclasifies patients with obstructin at the extremes of age. *Chest* 2006;130:200-6.

13. Celli BR, Halbert RJ, Isonaka S, Schau B. Population impact of different definitions of airway obstruction. *Eur Respir J* 2003;22(2):268-73.

14. Pellegrino R, Viegi G, Brusasco V, Crapo RO, Burgos F, Casaburi R, *et al.* Interpretative strategies for lung function tests. *Eur Respir J* 2005;26(5):948-68.

15. Hankinson JL, Odencrantz JR, Fedan KB. Spirometric reference values from a sample of the general US population. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1999;159:179-87.

16. Sterk PJ. Let's not forget: the GOLD criteria for COPD are based on post-bronchodilator FEV_1. *Eur Respir J* 2004;23:497-8.

17. Fukuchi Y, Nishimura M, Ichinose M, Adachi M, Nagai A, Kuriyama T, *et al.* COPD in Japan: the Nippon COPD Epidemiology study. *Respirology* 2004;9(4):458-65.

18. COPD Prevalence in 12 Asia-Pacific Countries and regions: Projections based on the COPD prevalence estimation model. Regional COPD Working Group. *Respirology* 2003;8:192-8.

19. National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute. *Morbidity & Mortality: Chartbook on Cardiovascular, Lung, and Blood Diseases.* Bethesda, MD: US Department. of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health; 1998.

20. Soriano JR, Maier WC, Egger P, Visick G, Thakrar B, Sykes J, *et al.* Recent trends in physician diagnosed COPD in women and men in the UK. *Thorax* 2000;55:789-94.

21. Chapman KR. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: are women more susceptible than men? *Clin Chest Med* 2004;25(2):331-41.

22. Schellevis FG, Van de Lisdonk EH, Van der Velden J, Hoogbergen SH, Van Eijk JT, Van Weel C. Consultation rates and incidence of intercurrent morbidity among patients with chronic disease in general practice. *Br J Gen Pract* 1994;44(383):259-62.

23. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Surveillance Summaries. *MMWR* 2002:51(No. SS-6).

24. Murray CJL, Lopez AD, editors. In: The global burden of disease: a comprehensive assessment of mortality and disability from diseases, injuries and risk factors in 1990 and projected to 2020. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press; 1996.

25. Murray CJ, Lopez AD. Alternative projections of mortality and disability by cause 1990-2020: Global Burden of Disease Study. *Lancet* 1997;349(9064):1498-504.

26. Jemal A, Ward E, Hao Y, Thun M. Trends in the leading causes of death in the United States, 1970-2002. *JAMA* 2005;294(10):1255-9.

27. Mannino DM, Homa DM, Akinbami LJ, Ford ES, Redd SC. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease surveillance--United States, 1971-2000. *MMWR Surveill Summ* 2002;51(6):1-16.

28. National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute. Morbidity and mortality chartbook on cardiovascular, lung and blood diseases. Bethesda, Maryland: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health. Accessed at: http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/resources/docs/cht-book.htm; 2004.

29. Jansson SA, Andersson F, Borg S, Ericsson A, Jonsson E, Lundback B. Costs of COPD in Sweden according to disease severity. *Chest* 2002;122(6):1994-2002.

30. Sullivan SD, Strassels S, Smith DH. Characterization of the incidence and cost of COPD in the US. *Eur Respir J* 1996;9(Supplement 23):S421.

31. Grasso ME, Weller WE, Shaffer TJ, Diette GB, Anderson GF. Capitation, managed care, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1998;158:133-8.

32. Fauroux B, Howard P, Muir JF. Home treatment for chronic respiratory insufficiency: the situation in Europe in 1992. The European Working Group on Home Treatment for Chronic Respiratory Insufficiency. *Eur Respir J* 1994;7:1721-6.

CHAPTER 3

RISK FACTORS

CHAPTER 3: RISK FACTORS

KEY POINTS:

- Worldwide, cigarette smoking is the most commonly encountered risk factor for COPD.
- The genetic risk factor that is best documented is a severe hereditary deficiency of alpha-1 antitrypsin. It provides a model for how other genetic risk factors are thought to contribute to COPD.
- Of the many inhalational exposures that may be encountered over a lifetime, only tobacco smoke and occupational dusts and chemicals (vapors, irritants, and fumes) are known to cause COPD on their own. More data are needed to explore the causative role of other risk factors.
- Indoor air pollution, especially from burning biomass fuels in confined spaces, is associated with increased risk for COPD in developing countries, especially among women.

INTRODUCTION

The identification of risk factors is an important step toward developing strategies for prevention and treatment of any disease. Identification of cigarette smoking as the most commonly encountered risk factor for COPD has led to the incorporation of smoking cessation programs as a key element of COPD prevention, as well as an important intervention for patients who already have the disease. However, although smoking is the best-studied COPD risk factor, it is not the only one and there is consistent evidence from epidemiologic studies that nonsmokers may develop chronic airflow obstruction[1,2].

Much of the evidence concerning risk factors for COPD comes from cross-sectional epidemiological studies that identify associations rather than cause-and-effect relationships. Although several longitudinal studies (which are capable of revealing causal relationships) of COPD have followed groups and populations for up to 20 years[3], none has monitored the progression of the disease through its entire course, or has included the pre-and perinatal periods which may be important in shaping an individual's future COPD risk. Thus, current understanding of risk factors for COPD is in many respects incomplete.

RISK FACTORS

As the understanding of the importance of risk factors (**Figure 3-1**) for COPD has grown, so has the recognition that essentially all risk for COPD results from a gene-environment interaction. Thus, of two people with the same smoking history, only one may develop COPD due to differences in genetic predisposition to the disease, or in how long they live. Risk factors for COPD may also be related in more complex ways. For example, gender may influence whether a person takes up smoking or experiences certain occupational or environmental exposures; socioeconomic status may be linked to a child's birth weight (as it impacts on lung growth and development); and longer life expectancy will allow greater lifetime exposure to risk factors. Understanding the relationships and interactions among risk factors requires further investigation.

Figure 3-1. Risk Factors for COPD.

Genes
Exposure to particles
- Tobacco smoke
- Occupational dusts, organic and inorganic
- Indoor air pollution from heating and cooking with biomass in poorly vented dwellings
- Outdoor air pollution

Lung Growth and Development
Oxidative stress
Gender
Age
Respiratory infections
Socioeconomic status
Nutrition
Comorbidities

Genes

COPD is a polygenic disease and a classic example of gene-environment interaction. The genetic risk factor that is best documented is a severe hereditary deficiency of alpha-1 antitrypsin[4], a major circulating inhibitor of serine proteases. This rare recessive trait is most commonly seen in individuals of Northern European origin[5]. Premature and accelerated development of panlobular emphysema and decline in lung function occur in both smokers and nonsmokers with the severe deficiency, although smoking increases the risk appreciably. There is considerable variation between individuals in the extent and severity of the emphysema and the rate of lung function decline. Although alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency is relevant to only a small part of the world's population, it illustrates the interaction between genes and environmental exposures leading to COPD. In this way, it provides a model for how other genetic risk factors are thought to contribute to COPD.

A significant familial risk of airflow obstruction has been observed in smoking siblings of patients with severe COPD[6], suggesting that genetic factors could influence this susceptibility. Through genetic linkage analysis, several regions of the genome have been identified that likely contain COPD susceptibility genes, including chromosome 2q[7]. Genetic association studies have implicated a variety of genes in COPD pathogenesis, including transforming growth factor beta 1 (TGF-β1)[8] microsomal epoxide hydrolase 1 (mEPHX1)[9], and tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNFα)[10]. However, the results of these genetic association studies have been largely inconsistent, and functional genetic variants influencing the development of COPD (other than alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency) have not been definitively identified[7].

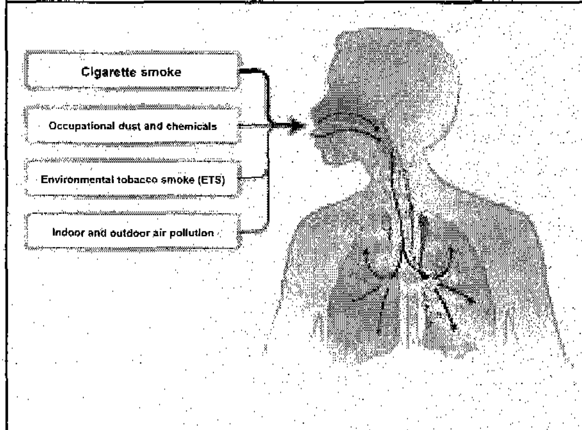
Inhalational Exposures

Because individuals may be exposed to a variety of different types of inhaled particles over their lifetime, it is helpful to think in terms of the total burden of inhaled particles. Each type of particle, depending on its size and composition, may contribute a different weight to the risk, and the total risk will depend on the integral of the inhaled exposures (**Figure 3-2**). Of the many inhalational exposures that may be encountered over a lifetime, only tobacco smoke[11,12] and occupational dusts and chemicals (vapors, irritants, and fumes)[13-16] are known to cause COPD on their own. Tobacco smoke and occupational exposures also appear to act additively to increase the risk of developing COPD. However this may reflect an inadequate data base from populations who are exposed to other risk factors, such as heavy exposures to indoor air pollution from poorly vented biomass cooking and heating.

Tobacco Smoke: Cigarette smoking is by far the most commonly encountered risk factor for COPD. Cigarette smokers have a higher prevalence of respiratory symptoms and lung function abnormalities, a greater annual rate of decline in FEV_1, and a greater COPD mortality rate than nonsmokers. Pipe and cigar smokers have greater COPD morbidity and mortality rates than nonsmokers, although their rates are lower than those for cigarette smokers[11]. Other types of tobacco smoking popular in various countries are also risk factors for COPD[17,18], although their risk relative to cigarette smoking has not been reported. The risk for COPD in smokers is dose-related[12]. Age at starting to smoke, total pack-years smoked, and current smoking status are predictive of COPD mortality. Not all smokers develop clinically significant COPD, which suggests that genetic factors must modify each individual's risk[9].

Passive exposure to cigarette smoke (also known as environmental tobacco smoke or ETS) may also contribute to respiratory symptoms[19] and COPD[20] by increasing the lungs' total burden of inhaled particles and gases[21,22]. Smoking during pregnancy may also pose a risk for the fetus, by affecting lung growth and development *in utero* and possibly the priming of the immune system[23,24].

Figure 3-2. COPD Risk is Related to the Total Burden of Inhaled Particles



Occupational Dusts and Chemicals: Occupational exposures are an underappreciated risk factor for COPD[14-16,25]. These exposures include organic and inorganic dusts and chemical agents and fumes. An analysis of the large US population-based NHANES III survey of almost 10,000 adults aged 30-75 years, which included lung function tests, estimated the fraction of COPD attributable to work was 19.2% overall, and 31.1% among never smokers[16]. These estimates are consistent with a statement published by the American Thoracic Society that concluded that occupational exposures account for 10-20% of either symptoms or functional impairment consistent with COPD[26].

Indoor Air Pollution: Wood, animal dung, crop residues, and coal, typically burned in open fires or poorly functioning stoves, may lead to very high levels of indoor air pollution. The evidence that indoor pollution from biomass cooking and heating in poorly ventilated dwellings is an important risk factor for COPD (especially among women in developing countries) continues to grow[27-33], with case-control studies[32,33] and other robustly designed studies now available.

Almost 3 billion people worldwide use biomass and coal as their main source of energy for cooking, heating, and other household needs, so the population at risk worldwide is very large. In these communities, indoor air pollution is responsible for a greater fraction of COPD risk than SO_2 or particulates from motor vehicle emissions, even in cities densely populated with people and cars. Biomass fuels used by women for cooking account for the high prevalence of COPD among nonsmoking women in parts of the Middle East, Africa, and Asia[34,35]. Indoor air pollution resulting from the burning of wood and other biomass fuels is estimated to kill two million women and children each year[36].

Outdoor Air Pollution: High levels of urban air pollution are harmful to individuals with existing heart or lung disease. The role of outdoor air pollution in causing COPD is unclear, but appears to be small when compared with that of cigarette smoking. It has also been difficult to assess the effects of single pollutants in long-term exposure to atmospheric pollution. However, air pollution from fossil fuel combustion, primarily from motor vehicle emissions in cities, is associated with decrements of respiratory function[37]. The relative effects of short-term, high-peak exposures and long-term, low-level exposures is a question yet to be resolved.

Lung Growth and Development

Lung growth is related to processes occurring during gestation, birth, and exposures during childhood[38-40]. Reduced maximal attained lung function (as measured by spirometry) may identify individuals who are at increased risk for the development of COPD[41]. Any factor that affects lung growth during gestation and childhood has the potential for increasing an individual's risk of developing COPD. For example, a large study and meta-analysis confirmed a positive association between birth weight and FEV_1 in adulthood[42].

Oxidative Stress

The lungs are continuously exposed to oxidants generated either endogenously from phagocytes and other cell types or exogenously from air pollutants or cigarette smoke. In addition, intracellular oxidants, such as those derived from mitochondrial electron transport, are involved in many cellular signaling pathways. Lung cells are protected against this oxidative challenge by well-developed enzymatic and nonenzymatic systems. When the balance between oxidants and antioxidants shifts in favor of the former—i.e., an excess of oxidants and/or a depletion of antioxidants—oxidative stress occurs. Oxidative stress not only produces direct injurious effects in the lungs but also activates molecular mechanisms that initiate lung inflammation. Thus, an imbalance between oxidants and antioxidants is considered to play a role in the pathogenesis of COPD[43].

Gender

The role of gender in determining COPD risk remains unclear[44]. In the past, most studies showed that COPD prevalence and mortality were greater among men than women. Studies from developed countries[45,46] show that the prevalence of the disease is now almost equal in men and women, which probably reflects changing patterns of tobacco smoking. Some studies have suggested that women are *more* susceptible to the effects of tobacco smoke than men[44,47,48]. This is an important question given the increasing rate of smoking among women in both developed and developing countries.

Infections

Infections (viral and bacterial) may contribute to the pathogenesis and progression of COPD[49], and the bacterial colonization associated with airway inflammation[50], and may also play a significant role in exacerbations[51]. A history of severe childhood respiratory infection has been associated with reduced lung function and increased respiratory symptoms in adulthood[38,41,52]. There are several possible explanations for this association (which are not mutually exclusive). There may be an increased diagnosis of severe infections in children who have underlying airway hyperresponsiveness, itself considered a risk factor for COPD. Susceptibility to viral infections may be related to another factor, such as birth weight, that is related to COPD. HIV infection has been shown to accelerate the onset of smoking-related emphysema; HIV-induced pulmonary inflammation may play a role in this process[53].

Socioeconomic Status

There is evidence that the risk of developing COPD is inversely related to socioeconomic status[54]. It is not clear, however, whether this pattern reflects exposures to indoor and outdoor air pollutants, crowding, poor nutrition, or other factors that are related to low socioeconomic status[55,56].

Nutrition

The role of nutrition as an independent risk factor for the development of COPD is unclear. Malnutrition and weight loss can reduce respiratory muscle strength and endurance, apparently by reducing both respiratory muscle mass and the strength of the remaining muscle fibers[57]. The association of starvation and anabolic/catabolic status with the development of emphysema has been shown in experimental studies in animals[58]. Lung CT scans of women chronically malnourished because of anorexia nervosa showed emphysema-like changes[59].

Asthma

Asthma may be risk factor for the development of COPD, although the evidence is not conclusive. In a report from a longitudinal cohort of the Tucson Epidemiological Study of Airway Obstructive Disease adults with asthma were found to have a twelvefold higher risk of acquiring COPD over time than those without asthma, after adjusting for smoking[60]. Another longitudinal study of people with asthma found that around 20% of subjects developed functional signs of COPD, irreversible airflow limitation, and reduced transfer coefficient[61].

REFERENCES

1. Celli BR, Halbert RJ, Nordyke RJ, Schan B. Airway obstruction in never smokers: results from the Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey. *Am J Med* 2005;118:1364-72.
2. Behrendt CE. Mild and moderate-to-severe COPD in non-smokers. Distinct demographic profiles. *Chest* 2005;128:1239-44.
3. Anthonisen NR, Connett JE, Murray RP. Smoking and lung function of Lung Health Study participants after 11 years. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2002;166(5):675-9.
4. Stoller JK, Aboussouan LS. Alpha1-antitrypsin deficiency. *Lancet* 2005;365(9478):2225-36.
5. Blanco I, de Serres FJ, Fernandez-Bustillo E, Lara B, Miravitlles M. Estimated numbers and prevalence of PI*S and PI*Z alleles of alpha1-antitrypsin deficiency in European countries. *Eur Respir J* 2006;27(1):77-84.
6. McCloskey SC, Patel BD, Hinchliffe SJ, Reid ED, Wareham NJ, Lomas DA. Siblings of patients with severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease have a significant risk of airflow obstruction. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2001;164 (8 Pt 1):1419-24.
7. Silverman EK, Palmer LJ, Mosley JD, Barth M, Senter JM, Brown A, *et al.* Genomewide linkage analysis of quantitative spirometric phenotypes in severe early-onset chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Hum Genet* 2002;70(5):1229-39.
8. Wu L, Chau J, Young RP, Pokorny V, Mills GD, Hopkins R, *et al.* Transforming growth factor-beta1 genotype and susceptibility to chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax* 2004;59(2):126-9.
9. Smith CA, Harrison DJ. Association between polymorphism in gene for microsomal epoxide hydrolase and susceptibility to emphysema. *Lancet* 1997;350(9078):630-3.
10. Huang SL, Su CH, Chang SC. Tumor necrosis factor-alpha gene polymorphism in chronic bronchitis. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1997;156(5):1436-9.
11. US Surgeon General. *The health consequences of smoking: chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.* Washington, D.C.: US Department of Health and Human Services; 1984.
12. Burrows B, Knudson RJ, Cline MG, Lebowitz MD. Quantitative relationships between cigarette smoking and ventilatory function. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1977;115(2):195-205.
13. Becklake MR. Occupational exposures: evidence for a causal association with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1989;140(3 Pt 2):S85-91.
14. Trupin L, Earnest G, San Pedro M, Balmes JR, Eisner MD, Yelin E, *et al.* The occupational burden of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Eur Respir J* 2003;22(3):462-9.
15. Matheson MC, Benke G, Raven J, Sim MR, Kromhout H, Vermeulen R, *et al.* Biological dust exposure in the workplace is a risk factor for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax* 2005;60(8):645-51.
16. Hnizdo E, Sullivan PA, Bang KM, Wagner G. Association between chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and employment by industry and occupation in the US population: a study of data from the Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey. *Am J Epidemiol* 2002;156(8):738-46.
17. Jindal SK, Aggarwal AN, Chaudhry K, Chhabra SK, D'Souza GA, Gupta D, *et al.* A multicentric study on epidemiology of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and its relationship with tobacco smoking and environmental tobacco smoke exposure. *Indian J Chest Dis Allied Sci* 2006;48(1):23-9.
18. Al-Fayez SF, Salleh M, Ardawi M, AZahran FM. Effects of sheesha and cigarette smoking on pulmonary function of Saudi males and females. *Trop Geogr Med* 1988;40(2):115-23.
19. The Health Consequences of Involuntary Exposure to Tobacco Smoke: A Report of the Surgeon General, Department of Health and Human Services. Washington, DC, US; 2006.
20. Eisner MD, Balmes J, Katz BP, Trupin L, Yelin E, Blanc P. Lifetime environmental tobacco smoke exposure and the risk of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Environ Health Perspect* 2005;4:7-15.
21. Leuenberger P, Schwartz J, Ackermann-Liebrich U, Blaser K, Bolognini G, Bongard JP, *et al.* Passive smoking exposure in adults and chronic respiratory symptoms (SAPALDIA Study). Swiss Study on Air Pollution and Lung Diseases in Adults, SAPALDIA Team. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1994;150 (5 Pt 1):1222-8.
22. Dayal HH, Khuder S, Sharrar R, Trieff N. Passive smoking in obstructive respiratory disease in an industrialized urban population. *Environ Res* 1994;65(2):161-71.
23. Tager IB, Ngo L, Hanrahan JP. Maternal smoking during pregnancy. Effects on lung function during the first 18 months of life. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1995;152:977-83.
24. Holt PG. Immune and inflammatory function in cigarette smokers. *Thorax* 1987;42(4):241-9.
25. Hnizdo E, Sullivan PA, Bang KM, Wagner G. Airflow obstruction attributable to work in industry and occupation among U.S. race/ethnic groups: a study of NHANES III data. *Am J Ind Med* 2004;46(2):126-35.

26. Balmes J, Becklake M, Blanc P, Henneberger P, Kreiss K, Mapp C, *et al.* American Thoracic Society Statement: Occupational contribution to the burden of airway disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2003;167(5):787-97.

27. Warwick H, Doig A. Smoke the killer in the kitchen: Indoor air pollution in developing countries. *ITDG Publishing, 103-105 Southampton Row, London WC1B HLD, UK* 2004:URL: http://www.itdgpublishing.org.uk.

28. Ezzati M. Indoor air pollution and health in developing countries. *Lancet* 2005;366(9480):104-6.

29. Smith KR, Mehta S, Maeusezahl-Feuz M. Indoor air-pollution from household solid fuel use. In: Ezzati, M., Lopez, A. D., Rodgers, M., Murray, C. J., eds. Comparative quantification of health risks: global and regional burden of disease attributable to selected major risk factors. *Geneva: World Health Organization*; 2004.

30. Mishra V, Dai X, Smith KR, Mika L. Maternal exposure to biomass smoke and reduced birth weight in Zimbabwe. *Ann Epidemiol* 2004;14(10):740-7.

31. Boman C, Forsberg B, Sandstrom T. Shedding new light on wood smoke: a risk factor for respiratory health. *Eur Respir J* 2006;27(3):446-7.

32. Oroczo-Levi M, Garcia -Aymerich J, Villar J, Ramirez-Sarmiento A, Anto JM, Gea J. Wood smoke exposure and risk of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Eur Respir J* 2006;27:542-6.

33. Sezer H, Akkurt I, Guler N, Marakoglu K, Berk S. A case-control study on the effect of exposure to different substances on the development of COPD. *Ann Epidemiol* 2006;16(1):59-62.

34. Smith KR. Inaugural article: national burden of disease in India from indoor air pollution. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 2000;97(24):13286-93.

35. Chan-Yeung M, Ait-Khaled N, White N, Ip MS, Tan WC. The burden and impact of COPD in Asia and Africa. *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 2004;8(1):2-14.

36. Smith K. Pollution management in focus. The World Bank, Washington, DC 1999.

37. Abbey DE, Burchette RJ, Knutsen SF, McDonnell WF, Lebowitz MD, Enright PL. Long-term particulate and other air pollutants and lung function in nonsmokers. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1998;158(1):289-98.

38. Barker DJ, Godfrey KM, Fall C, Osmond C, Winter PD, Shaheen SO. Relation of birth weight and childhood respiratory infection to adult lung function and death from chronic obstructive airways disease. *BMJ* 1991;303(6804):671-5.

39. Todisco T, de Benedictis FM, Iannacci L, Baglioni S, Eslami A, Todisco E, *et al.* Mild prematurity and respiratory functions. *Eur J Pediatr* 1993;152(1):55-8.

40. Stein CE, Kumaran K, Fall CH, Shaheen SO, Osmond C, Barker DJ. Relation of fetal growth to adult lung function in South India. *Thorax* 1997;52(10):895-9.

41. Tager IB, Segal MR, Speizer FE, Weiss ST. The natural history of forced expiratory volumes. Effect of cigarette smoking and respiratory symptoms. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1988;138(4):837-49.

42. Lawlor DA, Ebrahim S, Davey Smith G. Association of birth weight with adult lung function: findings from the British Women's Heart and Health Study and a meta-analysis. *Thorax* 2005;60(10):851-8.

43. MacNee W. Pulmonary and systemic oxidant/antioxidant imbalance in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Proc Am Thorac Soc* 2005;2(1):50-60.

44. Xu X, Weiss ST, Rijcken B, Schouten JP. Smoking, changes in smoking habits, and rate of decline in FEV1: new insight into gender differences. *Eur Respir J* 1994;7(6):1056-61.

45. National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute. Morbidity and mortality chartbook on cardiovascular, lung and blood diseases. Bethesda, Maryland: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health, 2004. Accessed at: http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/resources/docs/cht-book.htm.

46. Mannino DM, Homa DM, Akinbami LJ, Ford ES, Redd SC. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease surveillance--United States, 1971-2000. *MMWR Surveill Summ* 2002;51(6):1-16.

47. Anthonisen NR, Connett JE, Kiley JP, Altose MD, Bailey WC, Buist AS, et al. Effects of smoking intervention and the use of an inhaled anticholinergic bronchodilator on the rate of decline of FEV_1. The Lung Health Study. *JAMA* 1994;272(19):1497-505.

48. Silverman EK, Weiss ST, Drazen JM, Chapman HA, Carey V, Campbell EJ, *et al.* Gender-related differences in severe, early-onset chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2000;162(6):2152-8.

49. Retamales I, Elliott WM, Meshi B, Coxson HO, Pare P, Sciurba FC, *et al.* Amplification of inflammation in emphysema and its association with latent adenoviral infection. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2001;164:469-73.

50. Sethi S, Maloney J, Grove L, Wrona C, Berenson CS. Airway inflammation and bronchial bacterial colonization in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2006;173:991-8.

51. Seemungal T, Harper-Owen R, Bhowmik A, Moric I, Sanderson G, Message S, *et al.* Respiratory viruses, symptoms, and inflammatory markers in acute exacerbations and stable chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2001;164(9):1618-23.

52. Shaheen SO, Barker DJ, Shiell AW, Crocker FJ, Wield GA, Holgate ST. The relationship between pneumonia in early childhood and impaired lung function in late adult life. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1994;149(3 Pt 1):616-9.

53. Diaz PT, King MA, Pacht ER, Wewers MD, Gadek JE, Nagaraja HN, *et al.* Increased susceptibility to pulmonary emphysema among HIV-seropositive smokers. *Ann Intern Med* 2000;132(5):369-72.

54. Prescott E, Lange P, Vestbo J. Socioeconomic status, lung function and admission to hospital for COPD: results from the Copenhagen City Heart Study. *Eur Respir J* 1999;13(5):1109-14.

55. Tao X, Hong CJ, Yu S, Chen B, Zhu H, Yang M. Priority among air pollution factors for preventing chronic obstructive pulmonary disease in Shanghai. *Sci Total Environ* 1992;127(1-2):57-67.

56. US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *Criteria for a recommended standard: occupational exposure to respirable coal mine dust:* National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health; 1995.

57. Wilson DO, Rogers RM, Wright EC, Anthonisen NR. Body weight in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. The National Institutes of Health Intermittent Positive-Pressure Breathing Trial. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1989;139(6):1435-8.

58. Sahebjami H, Vassallo CL. Influence of starvation on enzyme-induced emphysema. *J Appl Physiol* 1980;48(2):284-8.

59. Coxson HO, Chan IH, Mayo JR, Hlynsky J, Nakano Y, Birmingham CL. Early emphysema in patients with anorexia nervosa. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2004;170(7):748-52.

60. Silva GE, Sherrill DL, Guerra S, Barbee RA. Asthma as a risk factor for COPD in a longitudinal study. *Chest* 2004;126(1):59-65.

61. Vonk JM, Jongepier H, Panhuysen CI, Schouten JP, Bleecker ER, Postma DS. Risk factors associated with the presence of irreversible airflow limitation and reduced transfer coefficient in patients with asthma after 26 years of follow up. *Thorax* 2003;58(4):322-7.

CHAPTER

4

PATHOLOGY, PATHOGENESIS, AND PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

CHAPTER 4: PATHOLOGY, PATHOGENESIS, AND PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

KEY POINTS:

- Pathological changes characteristic of COPD are found in the proximal airways, peripheral airways, lung parenchyma, and pulmonary vasculature. These changes include chronic inflammation, and structural changes resulting from repeated injury and repair.
- Inhaled cigarette smoke and other noxious particles cause lung inflammation, a normal response which appears to be amplified in patients who develop COPD.
- There is a characteristic pattern of inflammation in the lungs of COPD patients, with increased numbers of neutrophils (in the airway lumen), macrophages (airway lumen, airway wall, and parenchyma), and CD8+ lymphocytes (airway wall and parenchyma). The pattern is different from that seen in asthma.
- Lung inflammation is further amplified by oxidative stress and an excess of proteases in the lung.
- Physiological changes characteristic of the disease include mucus hypersecretion, airflow limitation and air trapping (leading to hyperinflation), gas exchange abnormalities, and cor pulmonale.
- Systemic features of COPD, particularly in patients with severe disease, include cachexia, skeletal muscle wasting, increased risk of cardiovascular disease, anemia, osteoporosis, and depression.
- Exacerbations represent a further amplification of the inflammatory response in the airways of patients with COPD, and may be triggered by infection with bacteria or viruses or by environmental pollutants.

INTRODUCTION

Inhaled cigarette smoke and other noxious particles cause lung inflammation, a normal response which appears to be amplified in patients who develop COPD. This abnormal inflammatory response may induce parenchymal tissue destruction (resulting in emphysema), and disrupt normal repair and defense mechanisms (resulting in small airway fibrosis). These pathological changes lead to air trapping and progressive airflow limitation. A brief overview follows of the pathologic changes in COPD, their cellular and molecular mechanisms, and how these underlie physiologic abnormalities and symptoms characteristic of the disease[1].

PATHOLOGY

Pathological changes characteristic of COPD are found in the proximal airways, peripheral airways, lung parenchyma, and pulmonary vasculature[2] (**Figure 4-1**). The pathological changes include chronic inflammation, with increased numbers of specific inflammatory cell types in different parts of the lung, and structural changes resulting from

Figure 4-1. Pathological Changes in COPD

Proximal airways (trachea, bronchi > 2 mm internal diameter)
Inflammatory cells: ↑Macrophages, ↑$CD8^+$ (cytotoxic) T lymphocytes, few neutrophils or eosinophils
Structural changes: ↑Goblet cells, enlarged submucosal glands (both leading to mucus hypersecretion), squamous metaplasia of epithelium[3]

Peripheral airways (bronchioles < 2mm i.d.)
Inflammatory cells: ↑Macrophages, ↑T lymphocytes ($CD8^+ > CD4^+$), ↑B lymphocytes, lymphoid follicles, ↑fibroblasts, few neutrophils or eosinophils
Structural changes: Airway wall thickening, peribronchial fibrosis, luminal inflammatory exudate, airway narrowing (obstructive bronchiolitis)
Increased inflammatory response and exudate correlated with disease severity[4]

Lung parenchyma (respiratory bronchioles and alveoli)
Inflammatory cells: ↑Macrophages, ↑$CD8^+$ T lymphocytes
Structural changes: Alveolar wall destruction, apoptosis of epithelial and endothelial cells[5]
- Centrilobular emphysema: dilatation and destruction of respiratory bronchioles; most commonly seen in smokers
- Panacinar emphysema: destruction of alveolar sacs as well as respiratory bronchioles; most commonly seen in alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency

Pulmonary vasculature
Inflammatory cells: ↑Macrophages, ↑T lymphocytes
Structural changes: Thickening of intima, endothelial cell dysfunction, ↑smooth muscle → pulmonary hypertension[6].

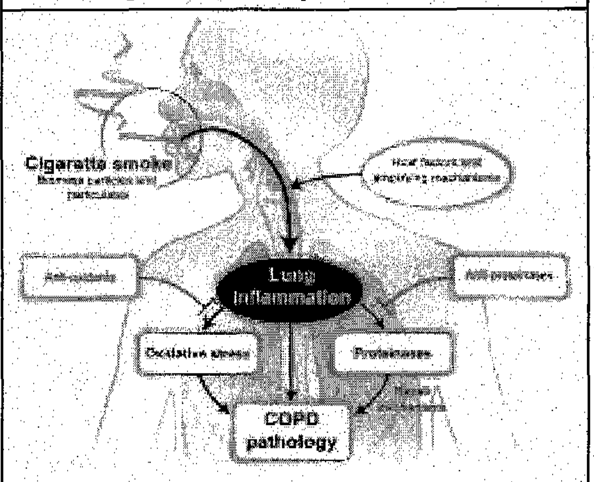
+Illustrations of many of the topics covered in this chapter can be found on the GOLD Website: http://www.goldcopd.org.

repeated injury and repair. In general, the inflammatory and structural changes in the airways increase with disease severity and persist on smoking cessation.

PATHOGENESIS

The inflammation in the respiratory tract of COPD patients appears to be an amplification of the normal inflammatory response of the respiratory tract to chronic irritants such as cigarette smoke. The mechanisms for this amplification are not yet understood but may be genetically determined. Some patients develop COPD without smoking, but the nature of the inflammatory response in these patients is unknown[7]. Lung inflammation is further amplified by oxidative stress and an excess of proteinases in the lung. Together, these mechanisms lead to the characteristic pathological changes in COPD (**Figure 4-2**).

Figure 4-2. Pathogenesis of COPD



Inflammatory Cells

COPD is characterized by a specific pattern of inflammation involving neutrophils, macrophages, and lymphocytes[1] (**Figure 4-3**). These cells release inflammatory mediators and interact with structural cells in the airways and lung parenchyma.

Inflammatory Mediators

The wide variety of inflammatory mediators that have been shown to be increased in COPD patients[10] attract inflammatory cells from the circulation (chemotactic factors), amplify the inflammatory process (proinflammatory cytokines), and induce structural changes (growth factors). Examples of each type of mediator are listed in **Figure 4-4**.

Figure 4-3. Inflammatory Cells in COPD

Neutrophils: ↑ in sputum of normal smokers. Further ↑ in COPD and related to disease severity. Few neutrophils are seen in tissue. They may be important in mucus hypersecretion and through release of proteases[8].

Macrophages: Greatly ↑ numbers are seen in airway lumen, lung parenchyma, and bronchoalveolar lavage fluid. Derived from blood monocytes that differentiate within lung tissue. Produce increased inflammatory mediators and proteases in COPD patients in response to cigarette smoke and may show defective phagocytosis[9].

T lymphocytes: Both CD4+ and CD8+ cells are increased in the airway wall and lung parenchyma, with ↑ CD8+:CD4+ ratio. ↑ CD8+ T cells (Tc1) and Th1 cells which secrete interferon-γ and express the chemokine receptor CXCR3[9]. CD8+ cells may be cytotoxic to alveolar cells, contributing to their destruction.

B lymphocytes: ↑ in peripheral airways and within lymphoid follicles, possibly as a response to chronic colonization and infection of the airways[4].

Eosinophils: ↑ eosinophil proteins in sputum and ↑ eosinophils in airway wall during exacerbations.

Epithelial cells: May be activated by cigarette smoke to produce inflammatory mediators.

Figure 4-4. Inflammatory Mediators Involved in COPD

Chemotactic factors:

- **Lipid mediators:** e.g., leukotriene B_4 (LTB_4) attracts neutrophils and T lymphocytes
- **Chemokines:** e.g., interleukin-8 (IL-8) attracts neutrophils and monocytes.

Proinflammatory cytokines: e.g., tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), IL-1β, and IL-6 amplify the inflammatory process and may contribute to some of the systemic effects of COPD.

Growth factors: e.g., transforming growth factor-ß (TGF-ß) may induce fibrosis in small airways.

Oxidative Stress

Oxidative stress may be an important amplifying mechanism in COPD[11]. Biomarkers of oxidative stress (e.g., hydrogen peroxide, 8-isoprostane) are increased in the exhaled breath condensate, sputum, and systemic circulation of COPD patients. Oxidative stress is further increased in exacerbations. Oxidants are generated by cigarette smoke and other inhaled particulates, and released from activated inflammatory cells such as macrophages and neutrophils[12]. There may also be a reduction in endogenous antioxidants in COPD patients. Oxidative stress has several adverse consequences in the lungs, including activation of inflammatory genes, inactivation of antiproteases, stimulation of mucus secretion, and stimulation of increased plasma exudation. Many of these adverse effects are mediated by peroxynitrite, which is formed via an interaction between superoxide anions and nitric oxide. In turn, the nitric oxide is generated by inducible nitric oxide synthase, which is expressed in the peripheral airways and lung parenchyma of COPD patients. Oxidative stress may also account for a reduction in histone deacetylase activity in lung tissue from COPD patients, which may lead to enhanced expression of inflammatory genes and also a reduction in the anti-inflammatory action of glucocorticosteroids[13].

Protease-Antiprotease Imbalance

There is compelling evidence for an imbalance in the lungs of COPD patients between proteases that break down connective tissue components and antiproteases that protect against this. Several proteases, derived from inflammatory cells and epithelial cells, are increased in COPD patients. There is increasing evidence that they may interact with each other (**Figure 4-5**). Protease-mediated destruction of elastin, a major connective tissue component in lung parenchyma, is an important feature of emphysema and is likely to be irreversible.

Figure 4-5. Proteases and Antiproteases Involved in COPD

Increased Proteases	*Decreased Antiproteases*
Serine proteases	
Neutrophil elastase	alpha-1 antitrypsin
Cathepsin G	alpha-1 antichymotrypsin
Proteinase 3	Secretory leukoprotease inhibitor
	Elafin
Cysteine proteinases	
Cathepsins B, K, L, S	Cystatins
Matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs)	
MMP-8, MMP-9, MMP-12	Tissue inhibitors of MMP 1-4 (TIMP1-4)

Differences in Inflammation Between COPD and Asthma

Although both COPD and asthma are associated with chronic inflammation of the respiratory tract, there are marked differences in the inflammatory cells and mediators involved in the two diseases, which in turn account for differences in physiological effects, symptoms, and response to therapy (**Figure 4-6, Figure 4-7**). However, there are greater similarities between the lung inflammation in severe asthma and COPD. Some patients with COPD have features of asthma and may have a mixed inflammatory pattern with increased eosinophils. Finally, people with asthma who smoke develop pathological features similar to COPD[14].

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

There is now a good understanding of how the underlying disease process in COPD leads to the characteristic physiologic abnormalities and symptoms. For example, decreased FEV_1 primarily results from inflammation and narrowing of peripheral airways, while decreased gas transfer arises from the parenchymal destruction of emphysema.

Airflow Limitation and Air Trapping

The extent of inflammation, fibrosis, and luminal exudates in small airways is correlated with the reduction in FEV_1 and FEV_1/FVC ratio, and probably with the accelerated decline in FEV_1 characteristic of COPD[4]. This peripheral airway obstruction progressively traps air during expiration, resulting in hyperinflation. Although emphysema is more associated with gas exchange abnormalities than with reduced FEV_1, it does contribute to air trapping during expiration. This is especially so as alveolar attachments to small airways are destroyed when the disease becomes more severe. Hyperinflation reduces inspiratory capacity such that functional residual capacity increases, particularly during exercise (when this abnormality is known as dynamic hyperinflation), and this results in dyspnea and limitation of exercise capacity. It is now thought that hyperinflation develops early in the disease and is the main mechanism for exertional dyspnea[15]. Bronchodilators acting on peripheral airways reduce air trapping, thereby reducing lung volumes and improving symptoms and exercise capacity.

Gas Exchange Abnormalities

Gas exchange abnormalities result in hypoxemia and hypercapnia, and have several mechanisms in COPD. In general, gas transfer worsens as the disease progresses. The severity of emphysema correlates with arterial PO_2 and other markers of ventilation-perfusion (V_A/Q) imbalance. Peripheral airway obstruction also results in V_A/Q imbalance, and combines with ventilatory muscle impaired function in severe disease to reduce ventilation, leading to carbon dioxide retention. The abnormalities in alveolar ventilation and a reduced pulmonary vascular bed further worsen the V_A/Q abnormalities.

Mucus Hypersecretion

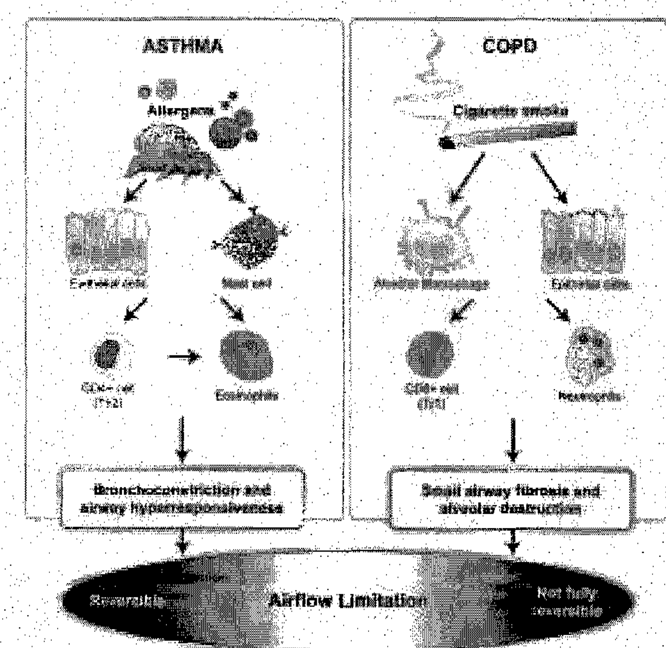
Mucus hypersecretion, resulting in a chronic productive cough, is a feature of chronic bronchitis and is not necessarily associated with airflow limitation. Conversely, not all patients with COPD have symptomatic mucus

Figure 4-6. Differences in Pulmonary Inflammation Between Asthma and COPD

	COPD	Asthma	Severe asthma
Cells	Neutrophils ++ Macrophages +++ CD8+ T cells (Tc1)	Eosinophils ++ Macrophages + CD4+ T cells (Th2)	Neutrophils + Macrophages CD4+ T cells (Th2), CD8+ T cells (Tc1)
Key mediators	IL-8 TNF-α, IL-1β, IL-6 NO +	Eotaxin IL-4, IL-5, IL-13 NO +++	IL-8 IL-5, IL-13 NO ++
Oxidative stress	+++	+	+++
Site of disease	Peripheral airways Lung parenchyma Pulmonary vessels	Proximal airways	Proximal airways Peripheral airways
Consequences	Squamous metaplasia Mucous metaplasia Small airway fibrosis Parenchymal destruction Pulmonary vascular remodeling	Fragile epithelium Mucous metaplasia ↑ Basement membrane Bronchoconstriction	
Response to therapy	Small b/d response Poor response to steroids	Large b/d response Good response to steroids	Smaller b/d response Reduced response to steroids

NO = nitric oxide, b/d = bronchodilator

Figure 4-7. Inflammatory Cascade in COPD and Asthma



hypersecretion. When present, it is due to mucous metaplasia with increased numbers of goblet cells and enlarged submucosal glands in response to chronic airway irritation by cigarette smoke and other noxious agents. Several mediators and proteases stimulate mucus hypersecretion and many of them exert their effects through the activation of epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR)[16].

Pulmonary Hypertension

Mild to moderate pulmonary hypertension may develop late in the course of COPD and is due to hypoxic vasoconstriction of small pulmonary arteries, eventually resulting in structural changes that include intimal hyperplasia and later smooth muscle hypertrophy/hyperplasia[17]. There is an inflammatory response in vessels similar to that seen in the airways and evidence for endothelial cell dysfunction. The loss of the pulmonary capillary bed in emphysema may also contribute to increased pressure in the pulmonary circulation. Progressive pulmonary hypertension may lead to right ventricular hypertrophy and eventually to right-side cardiac failure (cor pulmonale).

Systemic features

It is increasingly recognized that COPD involves several systemic features, particularly in patients with severe disease, and that these have a major impact on survival and comorbid diseases[18,19] (**Figure 4-8**). Cachexia is commonly seen in patients with severe COPD. There may be a loss of skeletal muscle mass and weakness as a result of increased apoptosis and/or muscle disuse. Patients with COPD also have increased likeliness of having osteoporosis, depression and chronic anemia[20]. Increased concentrations of inflammatory mediators, including TNF-α, IL-6, and oxygen-derived free radicals, may mediate some of these systemic effects. There is an increase in the risk of cardiovascular diseases, which is correlated with an increase in C-reactive protein (CRP)[21].

Figure 4-8. Systemic Features of COPD

- Cachexia: loss of fat free mass
- Skeletal muscle wasting: apoptosis, disuse atrophy
- Osteoporosis
- Depression
- Normochromic normocytic anemia
- Increased risk of cardiovascular disease: associated with ↑ CRP

EXACERBATIONS

Exacerbations represent a further amplification of the inflammatory response in the airways of COPD patients, and may be triggered by infection with bacteria or viruses or by environmental pollutants. There is a relative lack of information about the inflammatory mechanisms involved in exacerbations of COPD. In mild and moderate exacerbations there is an increase in neutrophils and in some studies also eosinophils in sputum and the airway wall[22]. This is associated with increased concentrations of certain mediators, including TNF-α, LTB_4 and IL-8, and an increase in biomarkers of oxidative stress. There is even less information about severe exacerbations, although one study showed a marked increase in neutrophils in the airway wall and increased expression of chemokines[23]. During an exacerbation there is increased hyperinflation and air trapping, with reduced expiratory flow, thus accounting for the increased dyspnea[24]. There is also worsening of V_A/Q abnormalities resulting in severe hypoxemia.

REFERENCES

1. Barnes PJ, Shapiro SD, Pauwels RA. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: molecular and cellular mechanisms. *Eur Respir J* 2003;22(4):672-88.
2. Hogg JC. Pathophysiology of airflow limitation in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Lancet* 2004;364(9435):709-21.
3. Saetta M, Turato G, Maestrelli P, Mapp CE, Fabbri LM. Cellular and structural bases of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2001;163(6):1304-9.
4. Hogg JC, Chu F, Utokaparch S, Woods R, Elliott WM, Buzatu L, *et al.* The nature of small-airway obstruction in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *N Engl J Med* 2004;350(26):2645-53.
5. Cosio MG, Majo J. Inflammation of the airways and lung parenchyma in COPD: role of T cells. *Chest* 2002;121 (5 Suppl):160S-5S.
6. Wright JL, Levy RD, Churg A. Pulmonary hypertension in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: current theories of pathogenesis and their implications for treatment. *Thorax* 2005;60(7):605-9.
7. Birring SS, Brightling CE, Bradding P, Entwisle JJ, Vara DD, Grigg J, *et al.* Clinical, radiologic, and induced sputum features of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease in nonsmokers: a descriptive study. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2002;166(8):1078-83.
8. Stockley RA. Neutrophils and the pathogenesis of COPD. *Chest* 2002;121(5 Suppl):151S-5S.

9. Barnes PJ. Macrophages as orchestrators of COPD. *J COPD* 2004;1:59-70.

10. Barnes PJ. Mediators of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Pharmacol Rev* 2004;56(4):515-48.

11. Rahman I. Oxidative stress in pathogenesis of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: cellular and molecular mechanisms. *Cell Biochem Biophys* 2005;43(1):167-88.

12. MacNee W. Oxidative stress and lung inflammation in airways disease. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2001;429(1-3):195-207.

13. Ito K, Ito M, Elliott WM, Cosio B, Caramori G, Kon OM, *et al.* Decreased histone deacetylase activity in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *N Engl J Med* 2005;352(19):1967-76.

14. Thomson NC, Chaudhuri R, Livingston E. Asthma and cigarette smoking. *Eur Respir J* 2004;24(5):822-33.

15. O'Donnell DE, Revill SM, Webb KA. Dynamic hyperinflation and exercise intolerance in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2001;164(5):770-7.

16. Burgel PR, Nadel JA. Roles of epidermal growth factor receptor activation in epithelial cell repair and mucin production in airway epithelium. *Thorax* 2004;59(11):992-6.

17. Barbera JA, Peinado VI, Santos S. Pulmonary hypertension in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Eur Respir J* 2003;21(5):892-905.

18. Wouters EF, Creutzberg EC, Schols AM. Systemic effects in COPD. *Chest* 2002;121(5 Suppl):127S-30S.

19. Agusti AG, Noguera A, Sauleda J, Sala E, Pons J, Busquets X. Systemic effects of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Eur Respir J* 2003;21(2):347-60.

20. Similowski T, Agusti AG, MacNee W, Schonhofer B. The potential impact of anaemia of chronic disease in COPD. *Eur Respir J* 2006;27(2):390-6.

21. Gan WQ, Man SF, Senthilselvan A, Sin DD. Association between chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and systemic inflammation: a systematic review and a meta-analysis. *Thorax* 2004;59(7):574-80.

22. Wedzicha JA. Exacerbations: etiology and pathophysiologic mechanisms. *Chest* 2002;121(5 Suppl):136S-41S.

23. Drost EM, Skwarski KM, Sauleda J, Soler N, Roca J, Agusti AG. Oxidative stress and airway inflammation in severe exacerbations of COPD. *Thorax* 2005;60(4):293-300.

24. Parker CM, Voduc N, Aaron SD, Webb KA, O'Donnell DE. Physiological changes during symptom recovery from moderate exacerbations of COPD. *Eur Respir J* 2005;26(3):420-8.

CHAPTER

5

MANAGEMENT OF COPD

CHAPTER 5: MANAGEMENT OF COPD

INTRODUCTION

An effective COPD management plan includes four components: (1) Assess and Monitor Disease; (2) Reduce Risk Factors; (3) Manage Stable COPD; and (4) Manage Exacerbations. Management of Mild to Moderate COPD (*Stages I and II*) involves the avoidance of risk factors to prevent disease progression and pharmacotherapy as needed to control symptoms. Severe (*Stage III*) and Very Severe (*Stage IV*) COPD often require the integration of several different disciplines, a variety of treatment approaches, and a commitment of the clinician to the continued support of the patient as the illness progresses. In addition to patient education, health advice, and pharmacotherapy, COPD patients may require specific counseling about smoking cessation, instruction in physical exercise, nutritional advice, and continued nursing support. Not all approaches are needed for every patient, and assessing the potential benefit of each approach at each stage of the illness is a crucial aspect of effective disease management.

While disease prevention is the ultimate goal, once COPD has been diagnosed, effective management should be aimed at the following goals:

- Relieve symptoms
- Prevent disease progression
- Improve exercise tolerance
- Improve health status
- Prevent and treat complications
- Prevent and treat exacerbations
- Reduce mortality

These goals should be reached with minimal side effects from treatment, a particular challenge in COPD patients because they commonly have comorbidities. The extent to which these goals can be realized varies with each individual, and some treatments will produce benefits in more than one area. In selecting a treatment plan, the benefits and risks to the individual, and the costs, direct and indirect, to the individual, his or her family, and the community must be considered.

Patients should be identified as early in the course of the disease as possible, and certainly before the end stage of the illness when disability is substantial. Access to spirometry is key to the diagnosis of COPD and should be available to health care workers who care for COPD patients. However, the benefits of community-based spirometric screening, of either the general population or smokers, are still unclear.

Educating patients, physicians, and the public to recognize that cough, sputum production, and especially breathlessness are not trivial symptoms is an essential aspect of the public health care of this disease.

Reduction of therapy once symptom control has been achieved is not normally possible in COPD. Further deterioration of lung function usually requires the progressive introduction of more treatments, both pharmacologic and non-pharmacologic, to attempt to limit the impact of these changes. Exacerbations of signs and symptoms, a hallmark of COPD, impair patients' quality of life and decrease their health status. Appropriate treatment and measures to prevent further exacerbations should be implemented as quickly as possible.

Important differences exist between countries in the approach to chronic illnesses such as COPD and in the acceptability and affordability of particular forms of therapy. Ethnic differences in drug metabolism, especially for oral medications, may result in different patient preferences in different communities. Little is known about these important issues in relationship to COPD.

COMPONENT 1: ASSESS AND MONITOR DISEASE

KEY POINTS:

- A clinical diagnosis of COPD should be considered in any patient who has dyspnea, chronic cough or sputum production, and/or a history of exposure to risk factors for the disease. The diagnosis should be confirmed by spirometry.
- For the diagnosis and assessment of COPD, spirometry is the gold standard as it is the most reproducible, standardized, and objective way of measuring airflow limitation. The presence of a postbronchodilator $FEV_1/FVC < 0.70$ and $FEV_1 <$ 80% predicted confirms the presence of airflow limitation that is not fully reversible.
- Health care workers involved in the diagnosis and management of COPD patients should have access to spirometry.
- Assessment of COPD severity is based on the patient's level of symptoms, the severity of the spirometric abnormality, and the presence of complications.
- Measurement of arterial blood gas tensions should be considered in all patients with $FEV_1 < 50\%$ predicted or clinical signs suggestive of respiratory failure or right heart failure.
- COPD is usually a progressive disease and lung function can be expected to worsen over time, even with the best available care. Symptoms and objective measures of airflow limitation should be monitored to determine when to modify therapy and to identify any complications that may develop.
- Comorbidities are common in COPD and should be actively identified. Comorbidities often complicate the management of COPD, and vice versa.

INITIAL DIAGNOSIS

A clinical diagnosis of COPD should be considered in any patient who has dyspnea, chronic cough or sputum production, and/or a history of exposure to risk factors for the disease (**Figure 5.1-1**). The diagnosis should be confirmed by spirometry. The presence of a postbronchodilator $FEV_1/FVC < 0.70$ and $FEV_1 < 80\%$ predicted confirms the presence of airflow limitation that is not fully reversible.

Figure 5.1-1. Key Indicators for Considering a Diagnosis of COPD

Consider COPD, and perform spirometry, if any of these indicators are present in an individual over age 40. These indicators are not diagnostic themselves, but the presence of multiple key indicators increases the probability of a diagnosis of COPD. Spirometry is needed to establish a diagnosis of COPD.

Dyspnea that is:	Progressive (worsens over time) Usually worse with exercise Persistent (present every day) Described by the patient as an "increased effort to breathe," "heaviness," "air hunger," or "gasping."
Chronic Cough	May be intermittent and may be unproductive.
Chronic sputum production:	Any pattern of chronic sputum production may indicate COPD.
History of exposure to risk factors, *especially:*	Tobacco smoke. Occupational dusts and chemicals Smoke from home cooking and heating fuels.

Assessment of Symptoms

Although exceptions occur, the general patterns of symptom development in COPD is well established. The main symptoms of patients in *Stage I: Mild COPD* are chronic cough and sputum production. These symptoms can be present for many years before the development of airflow limitation and are often ignored or discounted by patients and attributed to aging or lack of conditioning. As airflow limitation worsens in *Stage II: Moderate COPD*, patients often experience dyspnea, which may interfere with their daily activities[1]. Typically, this is the stage at which they seek medical attention and may be diagnosed with COPD. However, some patients do not experience cough, sputum production, or dyspnea in *Stage I: Mild COPD* or *Stage II: Moderate COPD*, and do not come to medical attention until their airflow limitation becomes more severe or their lung function is worsened acutely by a respiratory tract infection. As airflow limitation worsens and the patient enters *Stage III: Severe COPD*, the symptoms of cough and sputum production typically continue, dyspnea worsens, and additional symptoms heralding complications (such as respiratory failure, right heart failure, weight loss, and arterial hypoxemia) may develop. It is important to note that, since COPD may be diagnosed at any stage, any of the symptoms described below may be present in a patient presenting for the first time.

Dyspnea. Dyspnea, the hallmark symptom of COPD, is the reason most patients seek medical attention and is a major cause of disability and anxiety associated with the disease. Typical COPD patients describe their dyspnea as a sense of increased effort to breathe, heaviness, air hunger, or gasping[2]. However, the terms used to describe dyspnea vary both by individual and by culture[3]. It is often possible to distinguish the breathlessness of COPD from that due to other causes by analysis of the terms used, although there is considerable overlap with descriptors of bronchial asthma. A simple way to quantify the impact of breathlessness on a patient's health status is the British Medical Research Council (MRC) questionnaire (**Figure 5.1-2**). This questionnaire relates well to other measures of health status[4] and predicts future mortality risk[5].

Figure 5.1-2: Modified Medical Research Council Questionnaire for Assessing the Severity of Breathlessness[4]

PLEASE TICK IN THE BOX THAT APPLIES TO YOU (ONE BOX ONLY)	
I only get breathless with strenuous exercise.	☐
I get short of breath when hurrying on the level or walking up a slight hill.	☐
I walk slower than people of the same age on the level because of breathlessness, or I have to stop for breath when walking on my own pace on the level.	☐
I stop for breath after walking about 100 meters or after a few minutes on the level.	☐
I am too breathless to leave the house or I am breathless when dressing or undressing.	☐

Breathlessness in COPD is characteristically persistent and progressive. Even on "good days" COPD patients experience dyspnea at lower levels of exercise than unaffected people of the same age. Initially, breathlessness is only noted on unusual effort (e.g., walking or running up a flight of stairs) and may be avoided entirely by appropriate behavioral change (e.g., using an elevator). As lung function deteriorates, breathlessness becomes more intrusive, and patients may notice that they are unable to walk at the same speed as other people of the same age or carry out activities that require use of the accessory respiratory muscles (e.g., carrying grocery bags)[6]. Eventually, breathlessness is present during everyday activities (e.g., dressing, washing) or at rest, leaving the patient confined to the home.

Cough. Chronic cough, often the first symptom of COPD to develop[7], is often discounted by the patient as an expected consequence of smoking and/or environmental exposures. Initially, the cough may be intermittent, but later is present every day, often throughout the day. The chronic cough in COPD may be unproductive[8]. In some cases, significant airflow limitation may develop without the presence of a cough. **Figure 5.1-3** lists some of the other causes of chronic cough in individuals with a normal chest X-ray.

Figure 5.1-3. Causes of Chronic Cough with a Normal Chest X-ray

Intrathoracic
- Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
- Bronchial asthma
- Central bronchial carcinoma
- Endobronchial tuberculosis
- Bronchiectasis
- Left heart failure
- Interstitial lung disease
- Cystic fibrosis

Extrathoracic
- Postnasal drip
- Gastroesophageal reflux
- Drug therapy (e.g., ACE inhibitors)

Sputum production. COPD patients commonly raise small quantities of tenacious sputum after coughing bouts. Regular production of sputum for 3 or more months in 2 consecutive years (in the absence of any other conditions that may explain it) is the epidemiological definition of chronic bronchitis[9], but this is a somewhat arbitrary definition that does not reflect the range of sputum production in COPD patients. Sputum production is often difficult to evaluate because patients may swallow sputum rather than expectorate it, a habit subject to significant cultural and gender variation. Patients producing large volumes of sputum may have underlying bronchiectasis. The presence of purulent sputum reflects an increase in inflammatory mediators[10], and its development may identify the onset of an exacerbation[11].

Wheezing and chest tightness. Wheezing and chest tightness are nonspecific symptoms that may vary between days, and over the course of a single day. These symptoms may be present in *Stage I: Mild COPD*, but are more characteristic of asthma or *Stage III: Severe COPD* and *Stage IV: Very Severe COPD*. Audible wheeze may arise at a laryngeal level and need not be accompanied by auscultatory abnormalities. Alternatively, widespread inspiratory or expiratory wheezes can be present on listening to the chest. Chest tightness often follows exertion, is poorly localized, is muscular in character, and may arise from isometric contraction of the intercostal muscles. An absence of wheezing or chest tightness does not exclude a diagnosis of COPD, nor does their presence confirm a diagnosis of asthma.

Additional features in severe disease. Weight loss and anorexia are common problems in advanced COPD[12]. They are prognostically important[13] and can also be a sign of other diseases (e.g., tuberculosis, bronchial tumors), and therefore should always be investigated. Cough syncope occurs due to rapid increases in intrathoracic pressure during attacks of coughing. Coughing spells may also cause rib fractures, which are sometimes asymptomatic. Ankle swelling may be the only symptomatic pointer to the development of cor pulmonale. Finally, psychiatric morbidity, especially symptoms of depression and/or anxiety, is common in advanced COPD[14] and merits specific enquiry in the clinical history.

Medical History

A detailed medical history of a new patient known or thought to have COPD should assess:

- *Patient's exposure to risk factors,* such as smoking and occupational or environmental exposures
- *Past medical history*, including asthma, allergy, sinusitis, or nasal polyps; respiratory infections in childhood; other respiratory diseases
- *Family history of COPD or other chronic respiratory disease*
- *Pattern of symptom development:* COPD typically develops in adult life and most patients are conscious of increased breathlessness, more frequent "winter colds," and some social restriction for a number of years before seeking medical help.
- *History of exacerbations or previous hospitalizations for respiratory disorder:* Patients may be aware of periodic worsening of symptoms even if these episodes have not been identified as exacerbations of COPD.
- *Presence of comorbidities,* such as heart disease, malignancies, osteoporosis, and muscloskeletal disorders, which may also contribute to restriction of activity[15].
- *Appropriateness of current medical treatments:* For example, beta-blockers commonly prescribed for heart disease are usually contraindicated in COPD.
- *Impact of disease on patient's life*, including limitation of activity, missed work and economic impact, effect on family routines, feelings of depression or anxiety
- *Social and family support available to the patient*
- *Possibilities for reducing risk factors, especially smoking cessation*

Physical Examination

Though an important part of patient care, a physical examination is rarely diagnostic in COPD. Physical signs of airflow limitation are usually not present until significant impairment of lung function has occurred[16,17], and their detection has a relatively low sensitivity and specificity. A number of physical signs may be present in COPD, but their absence does not exclude the diagnosis.

Inspection.

- Central cyanosis, or bluish discoloration of the mucosal membranes, may be present but is difficult to detect in artificial light and in many racial groups.
- Common chest wall abnormalities, which reflect the pulmonary hyperinflation seen in COPD, include relatively horizontal ribs, "barrel-shaped" chest, and protruding abdomen.
- Flattening of the hemi-diaphragms may be associated with paradoxical in-drawing of the lower rib cage on inspiration, and widening of the xiphosternal angle.
- Resting respiratory rate is often increased to more than 20 breaths per minute and breathing can be relatively shallow[17].
- Patients commonly show pursed-lip breathing, which may serve to slow expiratory flow and permit more efficient lung emptying[18].
- COPD patients often have resting muscle activation while lying supine. Use of the scalene and sterno-cleidomastoid muscles is a further indicator of respiratory distress.
- Ankle or lower leg edema can be a sign of right heart failure.

Palpation and percussion.

- These are often unhelpful in COPD.
- Detection of the heart apex beat may be difficult due to pulmonary hyperinflation.
- Hyperinflation also leads to downward displacement of the liver and an increase in the ability to palpate this organ without it being enlarged.

Auscultation.

- Patients with COPD often have reduced breath sounds, but this finding is not sufficiently characteristic to make the diagnosis[19].

- The presence of wheezing during quiet breathing is a useful pointer to airflow limitation. However, wheezing heard only after forced expiration has not been validated as a diagnostic test for COPD.
- Inspiratory crackles occur in some COPD patients but are of little help diagnostically.
- Heart sounds are best heard over the xiphoid area.

Measurement of Airflow Limitation (Spirometry)[1]

Spirometry should be undertaken in all patients who may have COPD. It is needed to make a confident diagnosis of COPD and to exclude other diagnoses that may present with similar symptoms. Although spirometry does not fully capture the impact of COPD on a patient's health, it remains the gold standard for diagnosing the disease and monitoring its progression. It is the best standardized, most reproducible, and most objective measurement of airflow limitation available. Good quality spirometric measurement is possible and all health care workers who care for COPD patients should have access to spirometry. **Figure 5.1-4** summarizes some of the factors needed to achieve accurate test results.

Spirometry should measure the volume of air forcibly exhaled from the point of maximal inspiration (forced vital capacity, FVC) and the volume of air exhaled during the first second of this maneuver (forced expiratory volume in one second, FEV_1), and the ratio of these two measurements (FEV_1/FVC) should be calculated. Spirometry measurements are evaluated by comparison with reference values[20] based on age, height, sex, and race (use appropriate reference values, e.g., see reference 20).

Figure 5.1-5 shows a normal spirogram and a spirogram typical of patients with mild to moderate COPD. Patients with COPD typically show a decrease in both FEV_1 and FVC. The degree of spirometric abnormality generally reflects the severity of COPD (**Figure 1-2**). The presence of airflow limitation is defined by a postbronchodilator FEV_1/FVC < 0.70. This approach to is a pragmatic one in view of the fact that universally applicable reference values for FEV_1 and FVC are not available. Spirometry should be performed after the administration of an adequate dose of a short-acting inhaled bronchodilator (e.g., 400 μg salbutamol) in order to minimize variability. Where possible, values should be compared to age-related normal values to avoid over-diagnosis of COPD in the elderly[21]. Using the fixed ratio (FEV_1/FVC) is particularly problematic in older adults since the ratio declines with age leading to the potential for labeling healthy older adults as having COPD. Post- bronchodilator reference values in this population are urgently needed to avoid potential overdiagnosis.

Peak expiratory flow is sometimes used as a measure of airflow limitation, but in COPD may underestimate the degree of airways obstruction[22]. Data from the US National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey suggest that peak expiratory flow has good sensitivity, identifying over 90% of COPD cases that can be diagnosed with spirometry, but because its specificity is weaker it cannot be relied on as the only diagnostic test[23].

Figure 5.1-4. Considerations in Performing Spirometry

Preparation

- Spirometers need calibration on a regular basis.
- Spirometers should produce hard copy to permit detection of technical errors or have an automatic prompt to identify an unsatisfactory test and the reason for it.
- The supervisor of the test needs training in its effective performance.
- Maximal patient effort in performing the test is required to avoid errors in diagnosis and management.

Performance

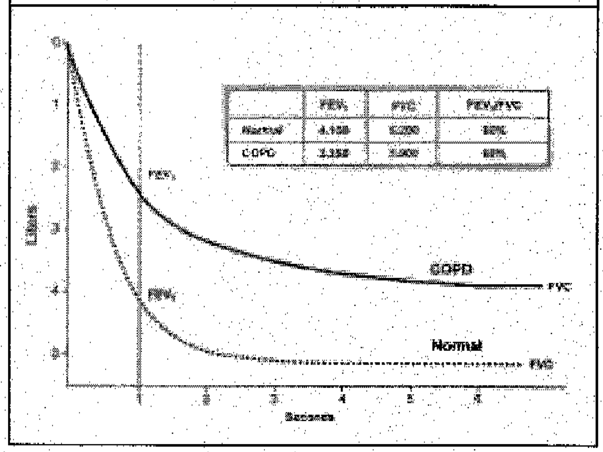
- pirometry should be performed using techniques that meet published standards[24].
- The expiratory volume/time traces should be smooth and free from irregularities.
- The recording should go on long enough for a volume plateau to be reached, which may take more than 15 seconds in severe disease.
- Both FVC and FEV_1 should be the largest value obtained from any of 3 technically satisfactory curves and the FVC and FEV_1 values in these three curves should vary by no more than 5% or 100 ml, whichever is greater.
- The FEV_1/FVC ratio should be taken from the technically acceptable curve with the largest sum of FVC and FEV_1.

Evaluation

- Spirometry measurements are evaluated by comparison of the results with appropriate reference values based on age, height, sex, and race (e.g., see reference 20).
- The presence of a postbronchodilator FEV_1 < 80% predicted together with an FEV_1/FVC < 0.70 confirms the presence of airflow limitation that is not fully reversible.

[1]Spirometry for Diagnosis of COPD: Insert for GOLD Pocket Guide available at http://www.goldcopd.org.

Figure 5.1-5. Normal Spirogram and Spirogram Typical of Patients with Mild to Moderate COPD*



**Postbronchodilator FEV_1 is recommended for the diagnosis and assessment of severity of COPD.*

The role of screening spirometry in the general population or in a population at risk for COPD is controversial. Both FEV_1 and FVC predict all-cause mortality independent of tobacco smoking, and abnormal lung function identifies a subgroup of smokers at increased risk for lung cancer. This has been the basis of an argument that screening spirometry should be employed as a global health assessment tool[25]. However, there are no data to indicate that screening spirometry is effective in directing management decisions or in improving COPD outcomes in patients who are identified before the development of significant symptoms[26].

Assessment of COPD Severity

Assessment of COPD severity is based on the patient's level of symptoms, the severity of the spirometric abnormality (**Figure 1-2**), and the presence of complications such as respiratory failure, right heart failure, weight loss, and arterial hypoxemia.

Although the presence of airflow limitation is key to the assessment of COPD severity, it may be valuable from a public health perspective to identify individuals at risk for the disease before significant airflow limitation develops (**Figure 1-3**). A majority of people with early COPD identified in large studies complained of at least one respiratory symptom, such as cough, sputum production, wheezing, or breathlessness[27,28]. These symptoms may be present at a time of relatively minor or even no spirometric abnormality. While not all individuals with such symptoms will go on to develop COPD[29], the presence of these symptoms should help define a high-risk population that should be targeted for preventive intervention. Much depends on the success of convincing such people, as well as health care workers, that even minor respiratory symptoms are not normal and may be markers of future ill health.

When evaluating symptomatic patients presenting to a physician, the severity of the patient's symptoms and the degree to which they affect his or her daily life, not just the severity of airflow obstruction, are the major determinants of health status[30]. The severity of a patient's breathlessness is important and can be usefully gauged by the MRC scale (**Figure 5.1-2**). Other forms of symptom severity scoring have yet to be validated in different populations and commonly rely on individual clinical judgment, although a clinical COPD questionnaire has been validated in family practice[31].

Objectively measured exercise impairment, assessed by a reduction in self-paced walking distance[32] or during incremental exercise testing in a laboratory[33], is a powerful indicator of health status impairment and predictor of prognosis[30]. The ratio of inspiratory capacity to total lung capacity determined plethysmographically has also been found to be prognostically useful[34]. Similarly, weight loss and reduction in the arterial oxygen tension identify patients at increased risk for mortality[35,36].

A relatively simple approach to identifying disease severity using a combination of most of the above variables has been proposed. The BODE method gives a composite score (Body mass index, Obstruction, Dyspnea and Exercise) that is a better predictor of subsequent survival than any component singly[37], and its properties as a measurement tool are under investigation.

Additional Investigations

For patients diagnosed with *Stage II: Moderate COPD* and beyond, the following additional investigations may be considered:

Bronchodilator reversibility testing. Despite earlier hopes, neither bronchodilator nor oral glucocorticosteroid reversibility testing predicts disease progression, whether judged by decline in FEV_1, deterioration of health status, or frequency of exacerbations[38,39] in patients with a clinical diagnosis of COPD and abnormal spirometry[39]. Small changes in FEV_1 (e.g., < 400 ml) after administration of a bronchodilator do not reliably predict the patient's response to treatment (e.g., change in exercise capacity[40]). Minor variations in initial airway caliber can lead to different classification of reversibility status depending on the day of testing[39], and the lower the pre-bronchodilator FEV_1, the greater the chance of a patient being classified as reversible even when the 200 ml volume criterion is included.

In some cases (e.g., a patient with an atypical history such as asthma in childhood and regular night waking with cough or wheeze) a clinician may wish to perform a bronchodilator and/or glucocorticosteroid reversibility test and a possible protocol is suggested in **Figure 5.1-6.**

Figure 5.1-6. Bronchodilator Reversibility Testing in COPD

Preparation

- Tests should be performed when patients are clinically stable and free from respiratory infection.
- Patients should not have taken inhaled short-acting bronchodilators in the previous six hours, long-acting bronchodilator n the previous 12 hours, or sustained-release theophylline in the previous 24 hours.

Spirometry

- FEV_1 should be measured before a bronchodilator is given.
- The bronchodilator should be given by metered dose inhaler through a spacer device or by nebulizer to be certain it has been inhaled.
- The bronchodilator dose should be selected to be high on the dose/response curve.
- Possible dosage protocols are 400 μg β_2-agonist, up to 160 μg anticholinergic, or the two combined[20]. FEV_1 should be measured again 10-15 minutes after a short-acting bronchodilator is given; 30-45 minutes after the combination.

Results

- An increase in FEV_1 that is both greater than 200 ml and 12% above the pre-bronchodilator FEV_1 is considered significant[20]. It is usually helpful to report the absolute change as well as the % change from baseline to set the improvement in a clinical context.

Chest X-ray. An abnormal chest X-ray is seldom diagnostic in COPD unless obvious bullous disease is present, but it is valuable in excluding alternative diagnoses and establishing the presence of significant comorbidities such as cardiac failure. Radiological changes associated with COPD include signs of hyperinflation (flattened diaphragm on the lateral chest film, and an increase in the volume of the retrosternal air space), hyperlucency of the lungs, and rapid tapering of the vascular markings. Computed tomography (CT) of the chest is not routinely recommended. However, when there is doubt about the diagnosis of COPD, high resolution CT (HRCT) scanning might help in the differential diagnosis. In addition, if a surgical procedure such as lung volume reduction is contemplated, a chest CT scan is necessary since the distribution of emphysema is one of the most important determinants of surgical suitability[41].

Arterial blood gas measurement. In advanced COPD, measurement of arterial blood gases while the patient is breathing air is important. This test should be performed in stable patients with $FEV_1 < 50\%$ predicted or with clinical signs suggestive of respiratory failure or right heart failure. Several considerations are important to ensure accurate test results. The inspired oxygen concentration (FiO_2 – normally 21% at sea level) should be noted, a particularly important point if patient is using an O_2-driven nebulizer. Changes in arterial blood gas tensions take time to occur, especially in severe disease. Thus, 20-30 minutes should pass before rechecking the gas tensions when the FiO_2 has been changed, e.g., during an assessment for domiciliary oxygen therapy. Adequate pressure must be applied at the arterial puncture site for at least one minute, as failure to do so can lead to painful bruising.

Alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency screening. In patients of Caucasian descent who develop COPD at a young age (< 45 years) or who have a strong family history of the disease, it may be valuable to identify coexisting alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency. This could lead to family screening or appropriate counseling. A serum concentration of alpha-1 antitrypsin below 15-20% of the normal value is highly suggestive of homozygous alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency.

Differential Diagnosis

In some patients with chronic asthma, a clear distinction from COPD is not possible using current imaging and physiological testing techniques, and it is assumed that asthma and COPD coexist in these patients. In these cases, current management is similar to that of asthma. Other potential diagnoses are usually easier to distinguish from COPD (**Figure 5.1-7**).

Figure 5.1-7. Differential Diagnosis of COPD

Diagnosis	Suggestive Features
COPD	Onset in mid-life. Symptoms slowly progressive. Long history of tobacco smoking. Dyspnea during exercise. Largely irreversible airflow limitation.
Asthma	Onset early in life (often childhood). Symptoms vary from day to day. Symptoms at night/early morning. Allergy, rhinitis, and/or eczema also present. Family history of asthma. Largely reversible airflow limitation.
Congestive Heart Failure	Fine basilar crackles on auscultation. Chest X-ray shows dilated heart, pulmonary edema. Pulmonary function tests indicate volume restriction, not airflow limitation.
Bronchiectasis	Large volumes of purulent sputum. Commonly associated with bacterial infection. Coarse crackles/clubbing on auscultation. Chest X-ray/CT shows bronchial dilation, bronchial wall thickening.
Tuberculosis	Onset all ages Chest X-ray shows lung infiltrate. Microbiological confirmation. High local prevalence of tuberculosis.
Obliterative Bronchiolitis	Onset in younger age, nonsmokers. May have history of rheumatoid arthritis or fume exposure. CT on expiration shows hypodense areas.
Diffuse Panbronchiolitis	Most patients are male and nonsmokers. Almost all have chronic sinusitis. Chest X-ray and HRCT show diffuse small centrilobular nodular opacities and hyperinflation.

These features tend to be characteristic of the respective diseases, but do not occur in every case. For example, a person who has never smoked may develop COPD (especially in the developing world where other risk factors may be more important than cigarette smoking); asthma may develop in adult and even elderly patients.

ONGOING MONITORING AND ASSESSMENT

Visits to health care facilities will increase in frequency as COPD progresses. The type of health care workers seen, and the frequency of visits, will depend on the health care system. Ongoing monitoring and assessment in COPD ensures that the goals of treatment are being met and should include evaluation of: (1) exposure to risk factors, especially tobacco smoke; (2) disease progression and development of complications; (3) pharmacotherapy and other medical treatment; (4) exacerbation history; (5) comorbidities.

Suggested questions for follow-up visits are listed in **Figure 5.1-8**. The best way to detect changes in symptoms and overall health status is to ask the patient the same questions at each visit.

Figure 5.1-8. Suggested Questions for Follow-Up Visits*

Monitor exposure to risk factors:
- Has your exposure to risk factors changed since your last visit?
- Since your last visit, have you quit smoking, or are you still smoking?
- If you are still smoking, how many cigarettes/how much tobacco per day?
- Would you like to quit smoking?
- Has there been any change in your working environment?

Monitor disease progression and development of complications:
- How much can you do before you get short of breath? (Use an everyday example, such as walking up flights of stairs, up a hill, or on flat ground.)
- Has your breathlessness worsened, improved, or stayed the same since your last visit?
- Have you had to reduce your activities because of your breathing or any other symptom?
- Have any of your symptoms worsened since your last visit?
- Have you experienced any new symptoms since your last visit?
- Has your sleep been disrupted by breathlessness or other chest symptoms?
- Since your last visit, have you missed any work/had to see a doctor because of your symptoms?

Monitor pharmacotherapy and other medical treatment:
- What medicines are you taking?
- How often do you take each medicine?
- How much do you take each time?
- Have you missed or stopped taking any regular doses of your medicine for any reason?
- Have you had trouble filling your prescriptions (e.g., for financial reasons, not on formulary)?
- Please show me how you use your inhaler.
- Have you tried any other medicines or remedies?
- Has your treatment been effective in controlling your symptoms?
- Has your treatment caused you any problems?

Monitor exacerbation history:
- Since your last visit, have you had any episodes/times when your symptoms were a lot worse than usual?
- If so, how long did the episode(s) last? What do you think caused the symptoms to get worse? What did you do to control the symptoms?

**These questions are examples and do not represent a standardized assessment instrument. The validity and reliability of these questions have not been assessed.*

Monitor Disease Progression and Development of Complications

COPD is usually a progressive disease. Lung function can be expected to worsen over time, even with the best available care. Symptoms and objective measures of airflow limitation should be monitored to determine when to modify therapy and to identify any complications that may develop. As at the initial assessment, follow-up visits should include a physical examination and discussion of symptoms, particularly any new or worsening symptoms.

Pulmonary function. A patient's decline in lung function is best tracked by periodic spirometry measurements although useful information about lung function decline is unlikely from spirometry measurements performed more than once a year. Spirometry should be performed if there is a substantial increase in symptoms or a complication.

Other pulmonary function tests, such as flow-volume loops, diffusing capacity (D_{LCO}) measurements, inspiratory capacity, and measurement of lung volumes are not needed in a routine assessment but can provide information about the overall impact of the disease and can be valuable in resolving diagnostic uncertainties and assessing patients for surgery.

Arterial blood gas measurement. The development of respiratory failure is indicated by a $PaO_2 < 8.0$ kPa (60 mm Hg) with or without $PaCO_2 > 6.7$ kPa (50 mm Hg) in arterial blood gas measurements made while breathing air at sea level. Screening patients by pulse oximetry and assessing arterial blood gases in those with an oxygen saturation (SaO_2) < 92% is a useful way of selecting patients for arterial blood gas measurement[42]. However, pulse oximetry gives no information about CO_2 tensions.

Clinical signs of respiratory failure or right heart failure include central cyanosis, ankle swelling, and an increase in the jugular venous pressure. Clinical signs of hypercapnia are extremely nonspecific outside of exacerbations.

Assessment of pulmonary hemodynamics. Mild to moderate pulmonary hypertension (mean pulmonary artery pressure ≥ 30 mm Hg) is only likely to be important in patients who have developed respiratory failure. Measurement of pulmonary arterial pressure is not recommended in clinical practice as it does not add practical information beyond that obtained from a knowledge of PaO_2.

Diagnosis of right heart failure or cor pulmonale. Elevation of the jugular venous pressure and the presence of pitting ankle edema are often the most useful findings suggestive of cor pulmonale in clinical practice. However, the jugular venous pressure is often difficult to assess in patients with COPD, due to large swings in intrathoracic pressure. Firm diagnosis of cor pulmonale can be made through a number of investigations, including radiography, electrocardiography, echocardiography, radionucleotide scintigraphy, and magnetic resonance imaging. However, all of these measures involve inherent inaccuracies of diagnosis.

CT and ventilation-perfusion scanning. Despite the benefits of being able to delineate pathological anatomy, routine CT and ventilation-perfusion scanning are currently confined to the assessment of COPD patients for surgery. HRCT is currently under investigation as a way of visualizing airway and parenchymal pathology more precisely.

Hematocrit. Polycythemia can develop in the presence of arterial hypoxemia, especially in continuing smokers[43], and can be identified by hematocrit > 55%. Anemia is more prevalent than previously thought, affecting almost a quarter of COPD patients in one hospital series[44]. A low hematocrit indicates a poor prognosis in COPD patients receiving long-term oxygen treatment[45].

Respiratory muscle function. Respiratory muscle function is usually measured by recording the maximum inspiratory and expiratory mouth pressures. More complex measurements are confined to research laboratories. Measurement of inspiratory muscle force is useful in assessing patients when dyspnea or hypercapnia is not readily explained by lung function testing or when peripheral muscle weakness is suspected. This measurement may improve in COPD patients when other measurements of lung mechanics do not (e.g., after pulmonary rehabilitation)[46,47].

Sleep studies. Sleep studies may be indicated when hypoxemia or right heart failure develops in the presence of relatively mild airflow limitation or when the patient has symptoms suggesting the presence of sleep apnea.

Exercise testing. Several types of tests are available to measure exercise capacity, e.g., treadmill and cycle ergometry in the laboratory – or six-minute and shuttle walking tests , but these are primarily used in conjunction with pulmonary rehabilitation programs.

Monitor Pharmacotherapy and Other Medical Treatment

In order to adjust therapy appropriately as the disease progresses, each follow-up visit should include a discussion of the current therapeutic regimen. Dosages of various medications, adherence to the regimen, inhaler technique, effectiveness of the current regime at controlling symptoms, and side effects of treatment should be monitored.

Monitor Exacerbation History

During periodic assessments, health care workers should question the patient and evaluate any records of exacerbations, both self-treated and those treated by other health care providers. Frequency, severity, and likely causes of exacerbations should be evaluated. Increased sputum volume, acutely worsening dyspnea, and the presence of purulent sputum should be noted. Specific inquiry into unscheduled visits to providers, telephone calls for assistance, and use of urgent or emergency care facilities may be helpful. Severity can be estimated by the increased need for bronchodilator medication or glucocorticosteroids and by the need for antibiotic treatment. Hospitalizations should be documented, including the facility, duration of stay, and any use of critical care or intubation. The clinician then can request summaries of all care received to facilitate continuity of care.

Monitor Comorbidities

Comorbidities are common in COPD. Some may be an indirect result of COPD, arising independently but more likely to occur when COPD is present, e.g., ischemic heart disease, bronchial carcinoma, osteoporosis. Other comorbid conditions may coexist with COPD because they become prevalent as part of the aging process, e.g., arthritis, diabetes, reflux esophagitis. All comorbid conditions become harder to manage when COPD is present, either because COPD adds to the total level of disability or because COPD therapy adversely affects the comorbid disorder. All comorbid conditions amplify the disability associated with COPD and can potentially complicate its management. Until more integrated guidance about disease management for specific comorbid problems becomes available, the focus should be on identification and management of these individual problems in line with local treatment guidance.

COMPONENT 2: REDUCE RISK FACTORS

KEY POINTS:

- Reduction of total personal exposure to tobacco smoke, occupational dusts and chemicals, and indoor and outdoor air pollutants are important goals to prevent the onset and progression of COPD.
- Smoking cessation is the single most effective—and cost effective—intervention in most people to reduce the risk of developing COPD and stop its progression (**Evidence A**).
- Comprehensive tobacco control policies and programs with clear, consistent, and repeated nonsmoking messages should be delivered through every feasible channel.
- Efforts to reduce smoking through public health initiatives should also focus on passive smoking to minimize risks for nonsmokers.
- Many occupationally induced respiratory disorders can be reduced or controlled through a variety of strategies aimed at reducing the burden of inhaled particles and gases.
- Reducing the risk from indoor and outdoor air pollution is feasible and requires a combination of public policy and protective steps taken by individual patients.

INTRODUCTION

Identification, reduction, and control of risk factors are important steps toward prevention and treatment of any disease. In the case of COPD, these factors include tobacco smoke, occupational exposures, and indoor and outdoor air pollution and irritants. Since cigarette smoking is the most commonly encountered risk factor for COPD worldwide, tobacco control (smoking prevention) programs should be implemented and smoking cessation programs should be readily available and encouraged for all individuals who smoke. Reduction of total personal exposure to occupational dusts, fumes, and gases and to indoor and outdoor air pollutants is also an important goal to prevent the onset and progression of COPD.

TOBACCO SMOKE

Smoking Prevention

Comprehensive tobacco control policies and programs with clear, consistent, and repeated nonsmoking messages should be delivered through every feasible channel, including health care providers, community activities, schools, and radio, television, and print media. National and local campaigns should be undertaken to reduce exposure to tobacco smoke in public forums. Such bans are proving to be workable and to result in measurable gains in respiratory health[48]. Legislation to establish smoke-free schools, public facilities, and work environments should be developed and implemented by government officials and public health workers, and encouraged by the public. Smoking prevention programs should target all ages, including young children, adolescents, young adults, and pregnant women. Interventions to prevent smoking uptake and maximize cessation should be implemented at every level of the health care system. Physicians and public health officials should encourage smoke-free homes.

An important step toward a collective international response to tobacco-caused death and disease was taken in 1996 by the World Health Organization with the implementation of an International Framework Convention on Tobacco Control (**Figure 5.2-1**).

Figure 5.2-1. World Health Organization: International Framework Convention on Tobacco Control

In May, 1996, to address the global tobacco pandemic, the Forty-ninth World Health Assembly requested the Director-General of the World Health Organization (WHO) to initiate the development of an international framework convention for tobacco control. Included as part of this framework convention is a strategy to encourage Member States to move progressively towards the adoption of comprehensive tobacco control policies and to deal with aspects of tobacco control that transcend national boundaries.

Information about the work of the WHO tobacco control program can be found at http://www.who.int/tobacco/resources/publications/fctc/en/index.html

Environmental tobacco smoke exposure is also an important cause of respiratory symptoms and increased risk for COPD, especially in partners and children of smokers[49]. Long-term indoor exposure, combined with crowded living conditions in poorly ventilated homes, adds to the total burden of particulate exposure and increases the risk of developing COPD[50]. Efforts to reduce smoking through public health initiatives should also focus on passive smoking to minimize risks for nonsmokers. Partners and parents should not smoke in the immediate vicinity of nonsmokers or children, nor in enclosed spaces such as cars and poorly ventilated rooms that expose others to increased risk.

The first exposure to cigarette smoke may begin in utero when the fetus is exposed to blood-borne metabolites from the mother[51]. Education to reduce *in utero* risks for unborn children is also of great importance to prevent the effects of maternal smoking in reducing lung growth and causing airways disease in early and later life[52,53]. Neonates and infants may also be exposed passively to tobacco smoke in the home if a family member smokes. Children less than 2 years old who are passively exposed to cigarette smoke have an increased prevalence of respiratory infections, and are at a greater risk of developing chronic respiratory symptoms later in life[53,54].

Smoking Cessation

Smoking cessation is the single most effective—and cost effective—way to reduce exposure to COPD risk factors. Quitting smoking can prevent or delay the development of airflow limitation, or reduce its progression[55], and can have a substantial effect on subsequent mortality[56]. All smokers—including those who may be at risk for COPD as well as those who already have the disease—should be offered the most intensive smoking cessation intervention feasible.

Smoking cessation interventions are effective in both sexes, in all racial and ethnic groups, and in pregnant women. Age influences quit rates, with young people less likely to quit, but nevertheless smoking cessation programs can be effective in all age groups. International data on the economic impact of smoking cessation are strikingly consistent: *investing resources in smoking cessation programs is cost effective in terms of medical and societal costs per life-year gained.* Effective interventions include nicotine replacement with transdermal patches, gums, and nasal sprays; counseling from physicians and other health professionals (with or without nicotine replacement therapy); self-help and group programs; and community-based stop-smoking challenges.

A review of data from a number of countries estimated the median societal cost of various smoking cessation interventions at $990 to $13,000 (US) per life-year gained[57]. Smoking cessation programs are a particularly good value for the UK National Health Service, with costs from £212 to £873 (US $320 to $1,400) per life-year gained[58].

The role of health care providers in smoking cessation. A successful smoking cessation strategy requires a multi-faceted approach, including public policy, information dissemination programs, and health education through the media and schools[59]. However, health care providers, including physicians, nurses, dentists, psychologists, pharmacists, and others, are key to the delivery of smoking cessation messages and interventions. Involving as many of these individuals as possible will help. Health care workers should encourage all patients who smoke to quit, even those patients who come to the health care provider for unrelated reasons and do not have symptoms of COPD, evidence of airflow limitation, or other smoking-related disease. Guidelines for smoking cessation entitled *Treating Tobacco Use and Dependence: A Clinical Practice Guideline* were published by the US Public Health Service[60]. The major conclusions are summarized in **Figure 5.2-2.**

Figure 5.2-2. US Public Health Service Report: Treating Tobacco Use and Dependence: A Clinical Practice Guideline—Major Findings and Recommendations[60]

1. Tobacco dependence is a chronic condition that warrants repeated treatment until long-term or permanent abstinence is achieved.
2. Effective treatments for tobacco dependence exist and all tobacco users should be offered these treatments.
3. Clinicians and health care delivery systems must institutionalize the consistent identification, documentation, and treatment of every tobacco user at every visit.
4. Brief smoking cessation counseling is effective and every tobacco user should be offered such advice at every contact with health care providers.
5. There is a strong dose-response relation between the intensity of tobacco dependence counseling and its effectiveness.
6. Three types of counseling were found to be especially effective: practical counseling, social support as part of treatment, and social support arranged outside of treatment.
7. Five first-line pharmacotherapies for tobacco dependence—bupropion SR, nicotine gum, nicotine inhaler, nicotine nasal spray, and nicotine patch—are effective and at least one of these medications should be prescribed in the absence of contraindications.
8. Tobacco dependence treatments are cost effective relative to other medical and disease prevention interventions.

The Public Health Service Guidelines recommend a five-step program for intervention (**Figure 5.2-3**), which provides a strategic framework helpful to health care providers interested in helping their patients stop smoking[60-63]. The guidelines emphasize that tobacco dependence is a chronic disease (**Figure 5.2-4**)[60] and urge clinicians to recognize that relapse is common and reflects the chronic nature of dependence and addiction, not failure on the part of the clinician or the patient.

Most individuals go through several stages before they stop smoking (**Figure 5.2-5**)[59]. It is often helpful for the clinician to assess a patient's readiness to quit in order to determine the most effective course of action at that time. The clinician should initiate treatment if the patient is ready to quit. For a patient not ready to make a quit attempt, the clinician should provide a brief intervention designed to promote the motivation to quit.

Figure 5.2-3. Brief Strategies to Help the Patient Willing to Quit[60-63]

1. ASK: Systematically identify all tobacco users at every visit.
Implement an office-wide system that ensures that, for EVERY patient at EVERY clinic visit, tobacco-use status is queried and documented.

2. ADVISE: Strongly urge all tobacco users to quit.
In a clear, strong, and personalized manner, urge every tobacco user to quit.

3. ASSESS: Determine willingness to make a quit attempt.
Ask every tobacco user if he or she is willing to make a quit attempt at this time (e.g., within the next 30 days).

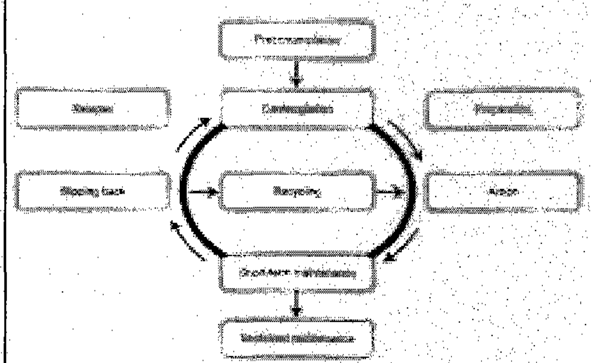
4. ASSIST: Aid the patient in quitting.
Help the patient with a quit plan; provide practical counseling; provide intra-treatment social support; help the patient obtain extra-treatment social support; recommend use of approved pharmacotherapy except in special circumstances; provide supplementary materials.

5. ARRANGE: Schedule follow-up contact.
Schedule follow-up contact, either in person or via telephone.

Figure 5.2-4. Tobacco Dependence as a Chronic Disease[10]

- For most people, tobacco dependence results in true drug dependence comparable to dependence caused by opiates, amphetamines, and cocaine.
- Tobacco dependence is almost always a chronic disorder that warrants long-term clinical intervention as do other addictive disorders. Failure to appreciate the chronic nature of tobacco dependence may impair the clinician's motivation to treat tobacco use consistently in a long-term fashion.
- Clinicians must understand that tobacco dependence is a chronic condition requiring sustained effort focused on simple counseling advice, support, and appropriate pharmacotherapy, and ongoing support for recent quitters to prevent relapse.
- Relapse is common, which is the nature of dependence and not the failure of the clinician or the patient.

Figure 5.2-5. Stages of Change Model



Counseling. Counseling delivered by physicians and other health professionals significantly increases quit rates over self-initiated strategies[64]. Even a brief (3-minute) period of counseling to urge a smoker to quit results in smoking cessation rates of 5-10%[65]. At the very least, this should be done for every smoker at every health care provider visit[65,66]. Education in how to offer optimal smoking cessation advice and support should be a mandatory element of curricula for health professionals.

There is a strong dose-response relationship between counseling intensity and cessation success[18,19]. Ways to intensify treatment include increasing the length of the treatment session, the number of treatment sessions, and the number of weeks over which the treatment is delivered. Sustained quit rates of 10.9% at 6 months have been achieved when clinician tutorials and feedback are linked to counseling sessions[67]. With more complex interventions (for example, controlled clinical trials that include skills training, problem solving, and psychosocial support), quit rates can reach 20-30%[68]. In a multicenter controlled clinical trial, a combination of physician advice, group support, skills training, and nicotine replacement therapy achieved a quit rate of 35% at 1 year and a sustained quit rate of 22% at 5 years[55].

Both individual and group counseling are effective formats for smoking cessation programs. Several particular items of counseling content seem to be especially effective, including problem solving, general skills training, and provision of intra-treatment support[59,60]. The common subjects covered in successful promblem solving/skills training programs include:

- Recognition of danger signals likely to be associated with the risk of relapse, such as being around other smokers, psychosocial stress, being under time pressure, getting into an argument, drinking alcohol, and negative moods
- Enhancement of skills needed to handle these situations, such as learning to anticipate and manage or avoid a particular stress
- Basic information about smoking and successful quitting, such as the nature and time course of withdrawal, the addictive nature of smoking, and the fact that any return to smoking, including even a single puff, increases the likelihood of a relapse

Systematic programs to sustain smoking cessation should be implemented in health care settings[17].

Pharmacotherapy. Numerous effective pharmacotherapies for smoking cessation now exist[59-61], and pharmacotherapy is recommended when counseling is not sufficient to help patients quit smoking. Special consideration should be given before using pharmacotherapy in selected populations: people with medical contraindications, light smokers (fewer than 10 cigarettes/day), and pregnant and adolescent smokers.

Nicotine replacement products. Numerous studies indicate that nicotine replacement therapy in any form (nicotine gum, inhaler, nasal spray, transdermal patch, sublingual tablet, or lozenge) reliably increases long-term smoking abstinence rates[60,69]. Nicotine replacement therapy is more effective when combined with counseling and behavior therapy[70], although nicotine patch or nicotine gum consistently increases smoking cessation rates regardless of the level of additional behavioral or psychosocial interventions. Medical contraindications to nicotine replacement therapy include unstable coronary artery disease, untreated peptic ulcer disease, and recent myocardial infarction or stroke[59]. Specific studies do not support the use of nicotine replacement therapy for longer than 8 weeks, although some patients may require extended use to prevent relapse and, in some studies, use of multiple nicotine replacement therapy modalities has been shown to be more effective than only one[60,71].

All forms of nicotine replacement therapy are significantly more effective than placebo. Every effort should be made to tailor the choice of replacement therapy to the individual's culture and lifestyle to improve adherence. The patch is generally favored over the gum because it requires less training for effective use and is associated with fewer compliance problems. No data are available to help clinicians tailor nicotine patch regimens to the intensity of cigarette smoking. In all cases it seems generally appropriate to start with the higher dose patch. For most patches, which come in three different doses, patients should use the highest dose for the first four weeks and drop to progressively lower doses over an eight-week period. Where only two doses are available, the higher dose should be used for the first four weeks and the lower dose for the second four weeks.

When using nicotine gum, the patient needs to be advised that absorption occurs through the buccal mucosa. For this reason, the patient should be advised to chew the gum for a while and then put the gum against the inside of the cheek to allow absorption to occur and prolong the release of nicotine. Continuous chewing produces secretions that are swallowed rather than absorbed through the buccal mucosa, results in little absorption, and can cause nausea. Acidic beverages, particularly coffee, juices, and soft drinks, interfere with the absorption of nicotine. Thus, the patient needs to be advised that eating or drinking anything except water should be avoided for 15 minutes before and during chewing. Although nicotine gum is an effective smoking cessation treatment, problems with compliance, ease of use, social acceptability, risk of developing temporomandibular joint symptoms, and unpleasant taste have been noted. In highly dependent smokers, the 4 mg gum is more effective than the 2 mg gum[72].

Other pharmacotherapy. The antidepressants bupropion[73] and nortriptyline have also been shown to increase long-term quit rates[59,69,74], but should always be used as one element in a supportive intervention program rather than on their own. Although more studies need to be conducted with these medications, a randomized controlled trial with counseling and support showed quit rates at one year of 30% with sustained-release bupropion alone and 35% with sustained-release bupropion plus nicotine patch[73]. The effectiveness of the antihypertensive drug clonidine is limited by side effects[69].

Varenicline, a nicotinic acetylcholine receptor partial agonist that aids smoking cessation by relieving nicotine withdrawal symptoms and reducing the rewarding properties of nicotine has been demonstrated to be safe and efficacious[75-77].

OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURES

In the United States, it has been estimated that up to 19% of COPD in smokers and up to 31% of COPD in nonsmokers may be attributable to occupational dust and fume exposure[78-81], and the burden may be higher in countries where there is higher exposure to inhaled particles, fumes and gases. Many occupations have been shown to be associated with increased risk of developing COPD, particularly those that involve exposure to fumes and mineral and biological dusts. Although it is not known how many individuals are at risk of developing respiratory disease from occupational exposures in either developing or developed countries, many occupationally induced respiratory disorders can be reduced or controlled through a variety of strategies aimed at reducing the burden of inhaled particles and gases[82-84].

- Implement, monitor and enforce strict, legally mandated control of airborne exposure in the workplace.
- Initiate intensive and continuing education of exposed workers, industrial managers, health care workers, primary care physicians, and legislators.
- Educate employers, workers, and policymakers on how cigarette smoking aggravates occupational lung diseases and why efforts to reduce smoking where a hazard exists are important.

The main emphasis should be on primary prevention, which is best achieved by the elimination or reduction of exposures to various substances in the workplace. Secondary prevention, achieved through surveillance and early case detection, is also of great importance. Both approaches are necessary to improve the present situation and to reduce the burden of lung disease. Although studies as yet have not been done to demonstrate reduced burden of disease, it is the logical consequence of effective strategies to reduce workplace exposure to respiratory irritants and toxic inhalants.

INDOOR AND OUTDOOR AIR POLLUTION

Individuals experience diverse indoor and outdoor environments throughout the day, each of which has its own unique set of air contaminants and particulates that cause adverse effects on lung function[60].

Although outdoor and indoor air pollution are generally considered separately, the concept of total personal exposure may be more relevant for COPD. Reducing the risk from indoor and outdoor air pollution is feasible and requires a combination of public policy and protective steps taken by individual patients. Reduction of exposure to smoke from biomass fuel, particularly among women and children, is a crucial goal to reduce the prevalence of COPD worldwide. Although efficient non-polluting cooking stoves have been developed, their adoption has been slow due to social customs and cost.

Regulation of Air Quality

At the national level, achieving a set level of air quality standards should be a high priority; this goal will normally require legislative action. Details on setting and maintaining air quality goals are beyond the scope of this document, but public policy to reduce vehicle and industrial emissions to safe levels is an urgent priority to reduce the development of COPD as well as symptoms, exacerbations, and hospital admissions in those with disease. Understanding health risks posed by local air pollution sources may be difficult and requires skills in community health, toxicology, and epidemiology. Local physicians may become involved through concerns about the health of their patients or as advocates for the community's environment.

Steps for Health Care Providers/Patients

The health care provider should consider COPD risk factors including smoking history, family history, exposure to indoor/outdoor pollution) and socioeconomic status for each individual patient. Some steps to consider:

Individuals at risk for COPD:

- Patients should be counseled concerning the nature and degree of their risk for COPD.
- If various solid fuels are used for cooking and heating, adequate ventilation should be encouraged.
- Respiratory protective equipment has been developed for use in the workplace in order to minimize exposure to toxic gases and particles. Under most circumstances, vigorous attempts should be made to reduce exposure through reducing workplace emissions and improving ventilation measures, rather than simply by using respiratory protection to reduce the risks of ambient air pollution.
- Ventilation and interventions to meet safe air quality standards in the workplace offer the greatest opportunity to reduce worker exposure to known atmospheric pollutants and reduce the risk of developing COPD, although to date there are no studies to quantify these benefits.

Patients who have been diagnosed with COPD:

- Persons with advanced COPD should monitor public announcements of air quality and be aware that staying indoors when air quality is poor may help reduce their symptoms.
- The use of medication should follow the usual clinical indications; therapeutic regimens should not be adjusted because of the occurrence of a pollution episode without evidence of worsening of symptoms or lung function.
- Those who are at high risk should avoid vigorous exercise outdoors during pollution episodes.
- Air cleaners have not been shown to have health benefits, whether directed at pollutants generated by indoor sources or at those brought in with outdoor air.

COMPONENT 3: MANAGE STABLE COPD

KEY POINTS:

- The overall approach to managing stable COPD should be individualized to address symptoms and improve quality of life.
- For patients with COPD, health education plays an important role in smoking cessation (**Evidence A**) and can also play a role in improving skills, ability to cope with illness and health status.
- None of the existing medications for COPD have been shown to modify the long-term decline in lung function that is the hallmark of this disease (**Evidence A**). Therefore, pharmacotherapy for COPD is used to decrease symptoms and/or complications.
- Bronchodilator medications are central to the symptomatic management of COPD (**Evidence A**). They are given on an as-needed basis or on a regular basis to prevent or reduce symptoms and exacerbations.
- The principal bronchodilator treatments are β_2-agonists, anticholinergics, and methylxanthines used singly or in combination (**Evidence A**).
- Regular treatment with long-acting bronchodilators is more effective and convenient than treatment with short-acting bronchodilators (**Evidence A**).
- The addition of regular treatment with inhaled glucocorticosteroids to bronchodilator treatment is appropriate for symptomatic COPD patients with an FEV_1 < 50% predicted (*Stage III: Severe COPD* and *Stage IV: Very Severe COPD*) and repeated exacerbations (**Evidence A**).
- Chronic treatment with systemic glucocorticosteroids should be avoided because of an unfavorable benefit-to-risk ratio (**Evidence A**).
- In COPD patients influenza vaccines can reduce serious illness (**Evidence A**). Pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine is recommended for COPD patients 65 years and older and for COPD patients younger than age 65 with an FEV_1 < 40% predicted (**Evidence B**).
- All COPD patients benefit from exercise training programs, improving with respect to both exercise tolerance and symptoms of dyspnea and fatigue (**Evidence A**).
- The long-term administration of oxygen (> 15 hours per day) to patients with chronic respiratory failure has been shown to increase survival (**Evidence A**).

INTRODUCTION

The overall approach to managing stable COPD should be characterized by an increase in treatment, depending on the severity of the disease and the clinical status of the patient. The step-down approach used in the chronic treatment of asthma is not applicable to COPD since COPD is usually stable and very often progressive. Management of COPD involves several objectives (*see Chapter 5, Introduction*) that should be met with minimal side effects from treatment. It is based on an individualized assessment of disease severity (**Figure 5.3-1**) and response to various therapies.

Figure 5.3-1. Factors Affecting the Severity of COPD
• Severity of symptoms
• Severity of airflow limitation
• Frequency and severity of exacerbations
• Presence of one or more complications
• Presence of respiratory failure
• Presence of comorbid conditions
• General health status
• Number of medications needed to manage the disease

The classification of severity of stable COPD incorporates an individualized assessment of disease severity and therapeutic response into the management strategy. The severity of airflow limitation (**Figure 1-2**) provides a general guide to the use of some treatments, but the selection of therapy is predominantly determined by the patient's symptoms and clinical presentation. Treatment also depends on the patient's educational level and willingness to apply the recommended management, on cultural and local conditions, and on the availability of medications.

EDUCATION

Although patient education is generally regarded as an essential component of care for any chronic disease, the role of education in COPD has been poorly studied. Assessment of the value of education in COPD may be difficult because of the relatively long time required to achieve improvements in objective measurements of lung function.

Studies that have been done indicate that patient education alone does not improve exercise performance or lung function[85-88] (**Evidence B**), but it can play a role in improving skills, ability to cope with illness, and health status[89]. These outcomes are not traditionally measured in clinical trials, but they may be most important in COPD where even pharmacologic interventions generally confer only a small benefit in terms of lung function.

Patient education regarding smoking cessation has the greatest capacity to influence the natural history of COPD. Evaluation of the smoking cessation component in a long-term, multicenter study indicates that if effective resources and time are dedicated to smoking cessation, 25% long-term quit rates can be maintained[55] (**Evidence A**). Education also improves patient response to exacerbations[90,91] (**Evidence B**). Prospective end-of-life discussions can lead to understanding of advance directives and effective therapeutic decisions at the end of life[92] (**Evidence B**).

Ideally, educational messages should be incorporated into all aspects of care for COPD and may take place in many settings: consultations with physicians or other health care workers, home-care or outreach programs, and comprehensive pulmonary rehabilitation programs.

Goals and Educational Strategies

It is vital for patients with COPD to understand the nature of their disease, risk factors for progression, and their role and the role of health care workers in achieving optimal management and health outcomes. Education should be tailored to the needs and environment of the individual patient, interactive, directed at improving quality of life, simple to follow, practical, and appropriate to the intellectual and social skills of the patient and the caregivers.

In managing COPD, open communication between patient and physician is essential. In addition to being empathic, attentive and communicative, health professionals should pay attention to patients' fears and apprehensions, focus on educational goals, tailor treatment regimens to each individual patient, anticipate the effect of functional decline, and optimize patients' practical skills.

Several specific education strategies have been shown to improve patient adherence to medication and management regimens. In COPD, adherence does not simply refer to whether patients take their medication appropriately. It also covers a range of nonpharmacologic treatments, e.g., maintaining an exercise program after pulmonary rehabilitation, undertaking and sustaining smoking cessation, and using devices such as nebulizers, spacers, and oxygen concentrators properly.

Components of an Education Program

The topics that seem most appropriate for an education program include: smoking cessation; basic information about COPD and pathophysiology of the disease; general approach to therapy and specific aspects of medical treatment; self-management skills; strategies to help minimize dyspnea; advice about when to seek help; self-management and decision-making during exacerbations; and advance directives and end-of-life issues (**Figure 5.3-2**). Education should be part of consultations with health care workers beginning at the time of first assessment for COPD and continuing with each follow-up visit. The intensity and content of these educational messages should vary depending on the severity of the patient's disease. In practice, a patient often poses a series of questions to the physician (**Figure 5.3-3**). It is important to answer these questions fully and clearly, as this may help make treatment more effective.

Figure 5.3-2. Topics for Patient Education

For all patients:
- Information and advice about reducing risk factors

Stage I: Mild COPD through Stage III: Severe COPD
Above topic, plus:
- Information about the nature of COPD
- Instruction on how to use inhalers and other treatments
- Recognition and treatment of exacerbations
- Strategies for minimizing dyspnea

Stage IV: Very Severe COPD
Above topics, plus:
- Information about complications
- Information about oxygen treatment
- Advance directives and end-of-life decisions

Figure 5.3-3. Examples of Patient Questions

- *What is COPD?*
- *What causes COPD?*
- *How will it affect me?*
- *Can it be treated?*
- *What will happen if my disease gets worse?*
- *What will happen if I need to be admitted to the hospital?*
- *How will I know when I need oxygen at home?*
- *What if I do not wish to be admitted to intensive care for ventilation?*

Answers to these questions can be developed from this document and will depend on local circumstances. In all cases, it is important that answers are clear and use terminology that the patient understands.

There are several different types of educational programs, ranging from simple distribution of printed materials, to teaching sessions designed to convey information about COPD, to workshops designed to train patients in specific skills (e.g., self-management). In general, case-management approaches to medical problems have been somewhat disappointing[93]. However, COPD patients recruited to a comprehensive COPD education program in Canada had significantly fewer exacerbations and hospitalizations and used fewer health care resources[94]. These encouraging results require replication in other health care systems and patient groups.

Although printed materials may be a useful adjunct to other educational messages, passive dissemination of printed materials alone does not improve skills or health outcomes. Education is most effective when it is interactive and conducted in small workshops[88] **(Evidence B)** designed to improve both knowledge and skills. Behavioral approaches such as cognitive therapy and behavior modification lead to more effective self-management skills and maintenance of exercise programs.

Cost Effectiveness of Education Programs for COPD Patients

The cost effectiveness of education programs for COPD patients is highly dependent on local factors that influence the cost of access to medical services and that will vary substantially between countries. In one cost-benefit analysis of education provided to hospital inpatients with COPD[95], an information package resulted in increased knowledge of COPD and reduced use of health services, including reductions of hospital readmissions and general practice consultations. The education package involved training patients to increase knowledge of COPD, medication usage, precautions for exacerbations, and peak flow monitoring technique. However, this study was undertaken in a heterogeneous group of patients—65% were smokers and 88% were judged to have an asthmatic component to their disease—and these findings may not hold true for a "pure" COPD population. In a study of mild to moderate COPD patients at an outpatient clinic, patient education involving one 4-hour group session followed by one to two individual sessions with a nurse and physiotherapist improved patient outcomes and reduced costs in a 12-month follow-up[96].

Although a healthy lifestyle is important, and should be encouraged, additional studies are needed to identify specific components of self-management programs that are effective[97].

PHARMACOLOGIC TREATMENT

Overview of the Medications

Pharmacologic therapy is used to prevent and control symptoms, reduce the frequency and severity of exacerbations, improve health status, and improve exercise tolerance. None of the existing medications for COPD have been shown to modify the long-term decline in lung function that is the hallmark of this disease[55,98-100] **(Evidence A)**. However, this should not preclude efforts to use medications to control symptoms. Since COPD is usually progressive, recommendations for the pharmacological treatment of COPD reflect the following general principles:

- Treatment tends to be cumulative with more medications being required as the disease state worsens.
- Regular treatment needs to be maintained at the same level for long periods of time unless significant side effects occur or the disease worsens.
- Individuals differ in their response to treatment and in the side effects they report during therapy. Careful monitoring is needed over an appropriate period to ensure that the specific aim of introducing a therapy has been met without an unacceptable cost to the patient. The effect of therapy in COPD may occur sooner after treatment with bronchodilators and inhaled glucocorticosteroids than previously thought[101], although at present, there is no effective way to predict whether or not treatment will reduce exacerbations.

The medications are presented in the order in which they would normally be introduced in patient care, based on the level of disease severity and clinical symptoms. However, each treatment regimen needs to be patient-specific as the relationship between the severity of symptoms and the severity of airflow limitation is influenced by other factors, such as the frequency and severity of exacerbations, the presence of one or more complications, the presence of respiratory failure, comorbidities (cardiovascular disease, sleep-related disorders, etc.), and general health status.

The classes of medications commonly used in treating COPD are shown in **Figure 5.3-4.** The choice within each class depends on the availability of medication and the patient's response.

Figure 5-3-4. Commonly Used Formulations of Drugs used in COPD

Drug	Inhaler (µg)	Solution for Nebulizer (mg/ml)	Oral	Vials for Injection (mg)	Duration of Action (hours)
β_2-agonists					
Short-acting					
Fenoterol	100-200 (MDI)	1	0.05% (Syrup)		4-6
Salbutamol (albuterol)	100, 200 (MDI & DPI)	5	5mg (Pill) Syrup 0.024%	0.1, 0.5	4-6
Terbutaline	400, 500 (DPI)	–	2.5, 5 (Pill)	0.2, 0.25	4-6
Long-acting					
Formoterol	4.5–12 (MDI & DPI)				12+
Salmeterol	25-50 (MDI & DPI)				12+
Anticholinergics					
Short-acting					
Ipratropium bromide	20, 40 (MDI)	0.25-0.5			6-8
Oxitropium bromide	100 (MDI)	1.5			7-9
Long-acting					
Tiotropium	18 (DPI)				24+
Combination short-acting β_2-agonists plus anticholinergic in one inhaler					
Fenoterol/Ipratropium	200/80 (MDI)	1.25/0.5			6-8
Salbutamol/Ipratropium	75/15 (MDI)	0.75/4.5			6-8
Methylxanthines					
Aminophylline			200-600 mg (Pill)	240 mg	Variable, up to 24
Theophylline (SR)			100-600 mg (Pill)		Variable, up to 24
Inhaled glucocorticosteroids					
Beclomethasone	50-400 (MDI & DPI)	0.2-0.4			
Budesonide	100, 200, 400 (DPI)	0.20, 0.25, 0.5			
Fluticasone	50-500 (MDI & DPI)				
Triamcinolone	100 (MDI)	40		40	
Combination long-acting β_2-agonists plus glucocorticosteroids in one inhaler					
Formoterol/Budesonide	4.5/160, 9/320 (DPI)				
Salmeterol/Fluticasone	50/100, 250, 500 (DPI) 25/50, 125, 250 (MDI)				
Systemic glucocorticosteroids					
Prednisone			5-60 mg (Pill)		
Methyl-prednisolone			4, 8, 16 mg (Pill)		

Bronchodilators

Medications that increase the FEV_1 or change other spirometric variables, usually by altering airway smooth muscle tone, are termed bronchodilators[102], since the improvements in expiratory flow reflect widening of the airways rather than changes in lung elastic recoil. Such drugs improve emptying of the lungs, tend to reduce dynamic hyperinflation at rest and during exercise[103], and improve exercise performance. The extent of these changes, especially in more advanced disease, is not easily predictable from the improvement in FEV_1[104,105]. Regular bronchodilation with drugs that act primarily on airway smooth muscle does not modify the decline of function in *Stage I: Mild COPD* or, by inference, the prognosis of the disease[6] (**Evidence B**).

Bronchodilator medications are central to the symptomatic management of COPD[106-109] (**Evidence A**) (**Figure 5.3-5**). They are given either on an as-needed basis for relief of persistent or worsening symptoms, or on a regular basis to prevent or reduce symptoms. The side effects of bronchodilator therapy are pharmacologically predictable and dose dependent. Adverse effects are less likely, and resolve more rapidly after treatment withdrawal, with inhaled than with oral treatment. However, COPD patients tend to be older than asthma patients and more likely to have comorbidities, so their risk of developing side effects is greater.

When treatment is given by the inhaled route, attention to effective drug delivery and training in inhaler technique is essential. The choice of inhaler device will depend on availability, cost, the prescribing physician, and the skills and ability of the patient. COPD patients may have more problems in effective coordination and find it harder to use a simple metered-dose inhaler (MDI) than do healthy volunteers or younger asthmatics. It is essential to ensure that inhaler technique is correct and to re-check this at each visit.

Alternative breath-activated or spacer devices are available for most formulations. Dry powder inhalers (DPIs) may be more convenient and possibly provide improved drug deposition, although this has not been established in COPD. In general, particle deposition will tend to be more central with the fixed airflow limitation and lower inspiratory flow rates in COPD[110,111]. Wet nebulizers are not recommended for regular treatment because they are more expensive and require appropriate maintenance[112].

Figure 5.3-5. Bronchodilators in Stable COPD

- Bronchodilator medications are central to symptom management in COPD.
- Inhaled therapy is preferred.
- The choice between β_2-agonist, anticholinergic, theophylline, or combination therapy depends on availability and individual response in terms of symptom relief and side effects.
- Bronchodilators are prescribed on an as-needed or on a regular basis to prevent or reduce symptoms.
- Long-acting inhaled bronchodilators are more effective and convenient.
- Combining bronchodilators may improve efficacy and decrease the risk of side effects compared to increasing the dose of a single bronchodilator.

Dose-response relationships using the FEV_1 as the outcome are relatively flat with all classes of bronchodilators[106-109]. Toxicity is also dose related. Increasing the dose of either a β_2-agonist or an anticholinergic by an order of magnitude, especially when given by a wet nebulizer, appears to provide subjective benefit in acute episodes[113] (**Evidence B**) but is not necessarily helpful in stable disease[114] (**Evidence C**).

All categories of bronchodilators have been shown to increase exercise capacity in COPD, without necessarily producing significant changes in FEV_1[115-118] (**Evidence A**). Regular treatment with long-acting bronchodilators is more effective and convenient than treatment with short-acting bronchodilators[119-122] (**Evidence A**).

Regular use of a long-acting β_2-agonist[120] or a short- or long-acting anticholinergic improves health status[119-121]. Treatment with a long-acting inhaled anti-cholinergic drug reduces the rate of COPD exacerbations[123] and improves the effectiveness of pulmonary rehabilitation[124]. Theophylline is effective in COPD, but due to its potential toxicity inhaled bronchodilators are preferred when available. All studies that have shown efficacy of theophylline in COPD were done with slow-release preparations.

β_2-agonists. The principal action of β_2-agonists is to relax airway smooth muscle by stimulating β_2-adrenergic receptors, which increases cyclic AMP and produces functional antagonism to bronchoconstriction. Oral therapy is slower in onset and has more side effects than inhaled treatment[125] (**Evidence A**).

Inhaled β_2-agonists have a relatively rapid onset of bronchodilator effect although this is probably slower in COPD than in asthma. The bronchodilator effects of short-acting β_2-agonists usually wear off within 4 to 6 hours[126,127] (**Evidence A**). For single-dose, as-needed use in COPD, there appears to be no advantage in using levalbuterol over conventional nebulized bronchodilators[128]. Long-acting inhaled β_2-agonists, such as salmeterol and formoterol, show a duration of effect of 12 hours or more with no loss of effectiveness overnight or with regular use in COPD patients[129-132] (**Evidence A**).

Adverse effects. Stimulation of β_2-adrenergic receptors can produce resting sinus tachycardia and has the potential to precipitate cardiac rhythm disturbances in very susceptible patients, although this appears to be a remarkably rare event with inhaled therapy. Exaggerated somatic tremor is troublesome in some older patients treated with higher doses of β_2-agonists, whatever the route of administration, and this limits the dose that can be tolerated. Although hypokalemia can occur, especially when treatment is combined with thiazide diuretics[133], and oxygen consumption can be increased under resting conditions[134], these metabolic effects show tachyphylaxis unlike the bronchodilator actions. Mild falls in PaO_2 occur after administration of both short-and long-acting β_2-agonists[135], but the clinical significance of these changes is doubtful. Despite the concerns raised some years ago, further detailed study has found no association between β_2-agonist use and an accelerated loss of lung function or increased mortality in COPD.

Anticholinergics. The most important effect of anticholinergic medications, such as ipratropium, oxitropium and tiotropium bromide, in COPD patients appears to be blockage of acetylcholine's effect on M3 receptors. Current short-acting drugs also block M2 receptors and modify transmission at the pre-ganglionic junction, although these effects appear less important in COPD[136]. The long-acting anticholinergic tiotropium has a pharmacokinetic selectivity for the M3 and M1 receptors[137]. The bronchodilating effect of short-acting inhaled anticholinergics lasts longer than that of short-acting β_2-agonists, with some bronchodilator effect generally apparent up to 8 hours after administration[126] (**Evidence A**). Tiotropium has a duration of action of more than 24 hours[119,138,139] (**Evidence A**).

Adverse effects. Anticholinergic drugs are poorly absorbed which limits the troublesome systemic effects seen with atropine. Extensive use of this class of inhaled agents in a wide range of doses and clinical settings has shown them to be very safe. The main side effect is dryness of the mouth. Twenty-one days of inhaled tiotropium, 18 μg/day as a dry powder, does not retard mucus clearance from the lungs[140]. Although occasional prostatic symptoms have been reported, there are no data to prove a true causal relationship. A bitter, metallic taste is reported by some patients using ipratropium. An unexpected small increase in cardiovascular events in COPD patients regularly treated with ipratropium bromide has been reported and requires further investigation[141].

Use of wet nebulizer solutions with a face mask has been reported to precipitate acute glaucoma, probably by a direct effect of the solution on the eye. Mucociliary clearance is unaffected by these drugs, and respiratory infection rates are not increased.

Methylxanthines. Controversy remains about the exact effects of xanthine derivatives. They may act as non-selective phosphodiesterase inhibitors, but have also been reported to have a range of non-bronchodilator actions, the significance of which is disputed[142-146]. Data on duration of action for conventional, or even slow-release, xanthine preparations are lacking in COPD. Changes in inspiratory muscle function have been reported in patients treated with theophylline[142], but whether this reflects changes in dynamic lung volumes or a primary effect on the muscle is not clear (**Evidence B**). All studies that have shown efficacy of theophylline in COPD were done with slow-release preparations. Theophylline is effective in COPD but, due to its potential toxicity, inhaled bronchodilators are preferred when available.

Adverse effects. Toxicity is dose related, a particular problem with the xanthine derivatives because their therapeutic ratio is small and most of the benefit occurs only when near-toxic doses are given[144,145] (**Evidence A**). Methylxanthines are nonspecific inhibitors of all phosphodiesterase enzyme subsets, which explains their wide range of toxic effects. Problems include the development of atrial and ventricular arrhythmias (which can prove fatal) and grand mal convulsions (which can occur irrespective of prior epileptic history). More common and less dramatic side effects include headaches, insomnia, nausea, and heartburn, and these may occur within the therapeutic range of serum theophylline. Unlike the other bronchodilator classes, xanthine derivatives may involve a risk of overdose (either intentional or accidental).

Theophylline, the most commonly used methylxanthine, is metabolized by cytochrome P450 mixed function oxidases. Clearance of the drug declines with age. Many other physiological variables and drugs modify theophylline metabolism; some of the potentially important interactions are listed in **Figure 5.3-6.**

Figure 5.3-6. Drugs and Physiological Variables that Affect Theophylline Metabolism in COPD

Increased
- Tobacco smoking
- Anticonvulsant drugs
- Rifampicin
- Alcohol

Decreased
- Old age
- Arterial hypoxemia (PaO_2 < 6.0 kPa, 45 mm Hg)
- Respiratory acidosis
- Congestive cardiac failure
- Liver cirrhosis
- Erythromycin
- Quinolone antibiotics
- Cimetidine (not ranitidine)
- Viral infections
- Herbal remedies (St. John's Wort)

Combination bronchodilator therapy. Combining bronchodilators with different mechanisms and durations of action may increase the degree of bronchodilation for equivalent or lesser side effects. For example, a combination of a short-acting β_2-agonist and an anticholinergic produces greater and more sustained improvements in FEV_1 than either drug alone and does not produce evidence of tachyphylaxis over 90 days of treatment[126,147,148] (**Evidence A**).

The combination of a β_2-agonist, an anticholinergic, and/or theophylline may produce additional improvements in lung function[128,146-151] and health status[126,152]. Increasing the number of drugs usually increases costs, and an equivalent benefit may occur by increasing the dose of one bronchodilator when side effects are not a limiting factor. Detailed assessments of this approach have not been carried out.

Glucocorticosteroids

The effects of oral and inhaled glucocorticosteroids in COPD are much less dramatic than in asthma, and their role in the management of stable COPD is limited to specific indications. The use of glucocorticosteroids for the treatment of acute exacerbations is described in *Component 4: Manage Exacerbations.*

Oral glucocorticosteroids: short-term. Many existing COPD guidelines recommend the use of a short course (two weeks) of oral glucocorticosteroids to identify COPD patients who might benefit from long-term treatment with oral or inhaled glucocorticosteroids. This recommendation is based on evidence[153] that short-term effects predict long-term effects of oral glucocorticosteroids on FEV_1, and evidence that asthma patients with airflow limitation might not respond acutely to an inhaled bronchodilator but do show significant bronchodilation after a short course of oral glucocorticosteroids.

There is mounting evidence, however, that a short course of oral glucocorticosteroids is a poor predictor of the long-term response to inhaled glucocorticosteroids in COPD[38,100]. For this reason, there appears to be insufficient evidence to recommend a therapeutic trial with oral glucocorticosteroids in patients with *Stage II: Moderate COPD, Stage III: Severe COPD,* or *Stage IV: Very Severe COPD* and poor response to an inhaled bronchodilator.

Oral glucocorticosteroids: long-term. Two retrospective studies[154,155] analyzed the effects of treatment with oral glucocorticosteroids on long-term FEV_1 changes in clinic populations of patients with moderate to very severe COPD. The retrospective nature of these studies, their lack of true control groups, and their imprecise definition of COPD are reasons for a cautious interpretation of the data and conclusions.

A side effect of long-term treatment with systemic glucocorticosteroids is steroid myopathy[156-158], which contributes to muscle weakness, decreased functionality, and respiratory failure in subjects with advanced COPD. In view of the well-known toxicity of long-term treatment with oral glucocorticosteroids, prospective studies on the long-term effects of these drugs in COPD are limited[159,160].

Therefore, based on the lack of evidence of benefit, and the large body of evidence on side effects, long-term treatment with oral glucocorticosteroids is not recommended in COPD (**Evidence A**).

Inhaled glucocorticosteroids. Regular treatment with inhaled glucocorticosteroids does not modify the long-term decline of FEV_1 in patients with COPD[98-100,161]. However, regular treatment with inhaled glucocorticosteroids is appropriate for symptomatic COPD patients with an $FEV_1 < 50\%$ predicted (*Stage III: Severe COPD* and *Stage IV: Very Severe COPD*) and repeated exacerbations (for example, 3 in the last 3 years)[162-165] (**Evidence A**). This treatment has been shown to reduce the frequency of exacerbations and thus improve health status[140] (**Evidence A**), and withdrawal from treatment with inhaled glucocorticosteroids can lead to exacerbations in some patients[166]. Re-analysis of pooled data from several longer studies of inhaled glucocorticosteroids in COPD suggests that this treatment reduces all-cause mortality[167], but this conclusion requires confirmation in prospective studies before leading to a change in current treatment recommendations. An inhaled glucocorticosteroid combined with a long-acting β_2-agonist is more effective than the individual components[162,164,165,168,169] (**Evidence A**).

The dose-response relationships and long-term safety of inhaled glucocorticosteroids in COPD are not known. Only moderate to high doses have been used in long-term clinical trials. Two studies showed an increased incidence of skin bruising in a small percentage of the COPD patients[98,100]. One long-term study showed no effect of budesonide on bone density and fracture rate[98,170], while another study showed that treatment with triamcinolone acetonide was associated with a decrease in bone density[161]. The efficacy and side effects of inhaled glucocorticosteroids in asthma are dependent on the dose and type of glucocorticosteroid[171]. This pattern can also be expected in COPD and needs documentation in this patient population. Treatment with inhaled glucocorticosteroids can be recommended for patients with more advanced COPD and repeated exacerbations.

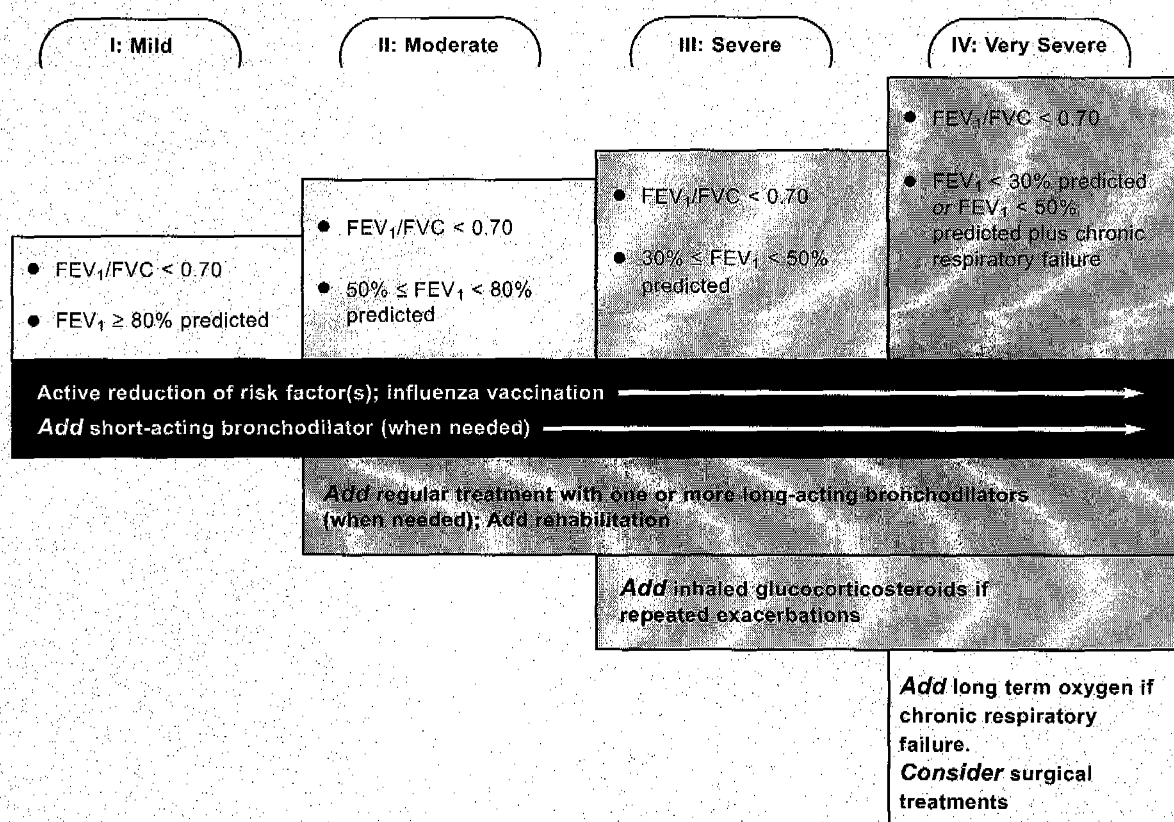
Pharmacologic Therapy by Disease Severity

Figure 5.3-7 provides a summary of recommended treatment at each stage of COPD. For patients with few or intermittent symptoms (*Stage I: Mild COPD*), use of a short-acting inhaled bronchodilator as needed to control dyspnea is sufficient. If inhaled bronchodilators are not available, regular treatment with slow-release theophylline should be considered.

In patients with *Stage II: Moderate COPD* to *Stage IV: Very Severe COPD*) whose dyspnea during daily activities is not relieved despite treatment with as-needed short-acting bronchodilators, adding regular treatment with a long-acting inhaled bronchodilator is recommended (**Evidence A**). Regular treatment with long-acting bronchodilators is more effective and convenient than treatment with short-acting bronchodilators (**Evidence A**). There is insufficient evidence to favor one long-acting bronchodilator over others. For patients on regular long-acting bronchodilator therapy who need additional symptom control, adding theophylline may produce additional benefits (**Evidence B**).

Patients with *Stage II: Moderate COPD* to *Stage IV: Very Severe COPD* who are on regular short- or long-acting bronchodilator therapy may also use a short-acting bronchodilator as needed.

Figure 5.3-7. Therapy at Each Stage of COPD*



Postbronchodilator FEV_1 is recommended for the diagnosis and assessment of severity of COPD.

Some patients may request regular treatment with high-dose nebulized bronchodilators, especially if they have experienced subjective benefit from this treatment during an acute exacerbation. Clear scientific evidence for this approach is lacking, but one suggested option is to examine the improvement in mean daily peak expiratory flow recording during two weeks of treatment in the home and continue with nebulizer therapy if a significant change occurs[112]. In general, nebulized therapy for a stable patient is not appropriate unless it has been shown to be better than conventional dose therapy.

In patients with a postbronchodilator $FEV_1 < 50\%$ predicted (*Stage III: Severe COPD* to *Stage IV: Very Severe COPD*) and a history of repeated exacerbations (for example, 3 in the last 3 years), regular treatment with inhaled glucocorticosteroids reduces the frequency of exacerbations and improves health status. In these patients, regular treatment with an inhaled glucocorticosteroid should be added to long-acting inhaled bronchodilators. Chronic treatment with oral glucocorticosteroids should be avoided.

Other Pharmacologic Treatments

Vaccines. Influenza vaccines can reduce serious illness[172] and death in COPD patients by about 50%[173,174] (**Evidence A**). Vaccines containing killed or live, inactivated viruses are recommended[175] as they are more effective in elderly patients with COPD[176]. The strains are adjusted each year for appropriate effectiveness and should be given once each year[177]. Pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine is recommended for COPD patients 65 years and older[178,179]. In addition, this vaccine has been shown to reduce the incidence of community-acquired pneumonia in COPD patients younger than age 65 with an $FEV_1 < 40\%$ predicted[180] (**Evidence B**).

Alpha-1 antitrypsin augmentation therapy. Young patients with severe hereditary alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency and established emphysema may be candidates for alpha-1 antitrypsin augmentation therapy. However, this therapy is very expensive, is not available in most countries, and is not recommended for patients with COPD that is unrelated to alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency (**Evidence C**).

Antibiotics. Prophylactic, continuous use of antibiotics has been shown to have no effect on the frequency of exacerbations in COPD[181-183] and a study that examined the efficacy of winter chemoprophylaxis over a period of 5 years, concluded that there was no benefit[184]. There is no current evidence that the use of antibiotics, other than for treating infectious exacerbations of COPD and other bacterial infections, is helpful[185,186] (**Evidence A**).

Mucolytic (mucokinetic, mucoregulator) agents (ambroxol, erdosteine, carbocysteine, iodinated glycerol). The regular use of mucolytics in COPD has been evaluated in a number of long-term studies with controversial results[187-189]. Although a few patients with viscous sputum may benefit from mucolytics[190,191], the overall benefits seem to be very small, and the widespread use of these agents cannot be recommended at present (**Evidence D**).

Antioxidant agents. Antioxidants, in particular N-acetylcysteine, have been reported in small studies to reduce the frequency of exacerbations, leading to speculation that these medications could have a role in the treatment of patients with recurrent exacerbations[192-195] (**Evidence B**). However, a large randomized controlled trial found no effect of N-acetylcysteine on the frequency of exacerbations, except in patients not treated with inhaled glucocorticosteroids[196].

Immunoregulators (immunostimulators, immunomodulators). Studies using an immunoregulator in COPD show a decrease in the severity and frequency of exacerbations[197,198]. However, additional studies to examine the long-term effects of this therapy are required before its regular use can be recommended[199].

Antitussives. Cough, although sometimes a troublesome symptom in COPD, has a significant protective role[200]. Thus the regular use of antitussives is not recommended in stable COPD (**Evidence D**).

Vasodilators. The belief that pulmonary hypertension in COPD is associated with a poorer prognosis has provoked many attempts to reduce right ventricular afterload, increase cardiac output, and improve oxygen delivery and tissue oxygenation. Many agents have been evaluated, including inhaled nitric oxide, but the results have been uniformly disappointing. In patients with COPD, in whom hypoxemia is caused primarily by ventilation-perfusion mismatching rather than by increased intrapulmonary shunt (as in noncardiogenic pulmonary edema), inhaled nitric oxide can worsen gas exchange because of altered hypoxic regulation of ventilation-perfusion balance[201,202]. Therefore, based on the available evidence, nitric oxide is contraindicated in stable COPD.

Narcotics (morphine). Oral and parenteral opioids are effective for treating dyspnea in COPD patients with advanced disease. There are insufficient data to conclude whether nebulized opioids are effective[203]. However, some clinical studies suggest that morphine used to control dyspnea may have serious adverse effects and its benefits may be limited to a few sensitive subjects[204-208].

Others. Nedocromil, leukotriene modifiers, and alternative healing methods (e.g., herbal medicine, acupunture, homeopathy) have not been adequately tested in COPD patients and thus cannot be recommended at this time.

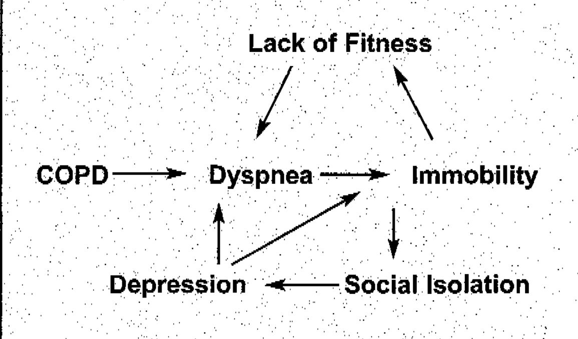
NON-PHARMACOLOGIC TREATMENT

Rehabilitation

The principal goals of pulmonary rehabilitation are to reduce symptoms, improve quality of life, and increase physical and emotional participation in everyday activities. To accomplish these goals, pulmonary rehabilitation covers a range of non-pulmonary problems that may not be adequately addressed by medical therapy for COPD. Such problems, which especially affect patients with *Stage II: Moderate COPD, Stage III: Severe COPD,* and *Stage IV: Very Severe COPD,* include exercise de-conditioning, relative social isolation, altered mood states (especially depression), muscle wasting, and weight loss. These problems have complex interrelationships and improvement in any one of these interlinked processes can interrupt the "vicious circle" in COPD so that positive gains occur in all aspects of the illness (**Figure 5.3-9**). A comprehensive statement on pulmonary rehabilitation has been prepared by the ATS/ERS[209].

Pulmonary rehabilitation has been carefully evaluated in a large number of clinical trials; the various benefits are summarized in **Figure 5.3-10**[89,210-220]. On average, rehabilitation increases peak workload by 18%, peak oxygen consumption by 11%, and endurance time time by 87% of baseline. This translates into a 49 m improvement in 6-minute walking distance[221]. Rehabilitation has been shown to be at least additive to other forms of therapy such as bronchodilator treatment[124].

Figure 5.3-9. The Cycle of Physical, Social, and Psychosocial Consequences of COPD



Patient selection and program design. Although more information is needed on criteria for patient selection for pulmonary rehabilitation programs, COPD patients at all stages of disease appear to benefit from exercise training programs, improving with respect to both exercise tolerance and symptoms of dyspnea and fatigue[222] (**Evidence A**). Data suggest that these benefits can be sustained even after a single pulmonary rehabilitation program[223-225].

Figure 5.3-10. Benefits of Pulmonary Rehabilitation in COPD

- Improves exercise capacity (**Evidence A**).
- Reduces the perceived intensity of breathlessness (**Evidence A**).
- Improves health-related quality of life (**Evidence A**).
- Reduces the number of hospitalizations and days in the hospital (**Evidence A**).
- Reduces anxiety and depression associated with COPD (**Evidence A**).
- Strength and endurance training of the upper limbs improves arm function (**Evidence B**).
- Benefits extend well beyond the immediate period of training (**Evidence B**).
- Improves survival (**Evidence B**).
- Respiratory muscle training is beneficial, especially when combined with general exercise training (**Evidence C**).
- Psychosocial intervention is helpful (**Evidence C**).

Benefit does wane after a rehabilitation program ends, but if exercise training is maintained at home the patient's health status remains above pre-rehabilitation levels (**Evidence B**). To date there is no consensus on whether repeated rehabilitation courses enable patients to sustain the benefits gained through the initial course.

Ideally, pulmonary rehabilitation should involve several types of health professionals. Significant benefits can also occur with more limited personnel, as long as dedicated professionals are aware of the needs of each patient. Benefits have been reported from rehabilitation programs conducted in inpatient, outpatient, and home settings[214,215,226]. Considerations of cost and availability most often determine the choice of setting. The educational and exercise training components of rehabilitation are usually conducted in groups, normally with 6 to 8 individuals per class (**Evidence D**).

The following points summarize current knowledge of considerations important in choosing patients:

<u>Functional status</u>: Benefits have been seen in patients with a wide range of disability, although those who are chair-bound appear unlikely to respond even to home visiting programs[227] (**Evidence A**).

Severity of dyspnea: Stratification by breathlessness intensity using the MRC questionnaire (**Figure 5.1-3**) may be helpful in selecting patients most likely to benefit from rehabilitation. Those with MRC grade 5 dyspnea may not benefit[227] (**Evidence B**).

Motivation: Selecting highly motivated participants is especially important in the case of outpatient programs[224].

Smoking status: There is no evidence that smokers will benefit less than nonsmokers, but many clinicians believe that inclusion of a smoker in a rehabilitation program should be conditional on their participation in a smoking cessation program. Some data indicate that continuing smokers are less likely to complete pulmonary rehabilitation programs than nonsmokers[224] (**Evidence B**).

Components of pulmonary rehabilitation programs. The components of pulmonary rehabilitation vary widely from program to program but a comprehensive pulmonary rehabilitation program includes exercise training, nutrition counseling, and education.

Exercise training. Exercise tolerance can be assessed by either bicycle ergometry or treadmill exercise with the measurement of a number of physiological variables, including maximum oxygen consumption, maximum heart rate, and maximum work performed. A less complex approach is to use a self-paced, timed walking test (e.g., 6-minute walking distance). These tests require at least one practice session before data can be interpreted. Shuttle walking tests offer a compromise: they provide more complete information than an entirely self-paced test, but are simpler to perform than a treadmill test[228].

Exercise training ranges in frequency from daily to weekly, in duration from 10 minutes to 45 minutes per session, and in intensity from 50% peak oxygen consumption (VO_2 max) to maximum tolerated[229]. The optimum length for an exercise program has not been investigated in randomized controlled trials but most studies involving fewer than 28 exercise sessions show inferior results compared to those with longer treatment periods[221]. In practice, the length depends on the resources available and usually ranges from 4 to 10 weeks, with longer programs resulting in larger effects than shorter programs[213].

Participants are often encouraged to achieve a pre-determined target heart rate[230], but this goal may have limitations in COPD. In many programs, especially those using simple corridor exercise training, the patient is encouraged to walk to a symptom-limited maximum, rest, and then continue walking until 20 minutes of exercise have been completed. Where possible, endurance exercise training to 60-80% of the symptom-limited maximum is preferred. Endurance training can be accomplished through continuous or interval exercise programs. The latter involve the patient doing the same total work but divided into briefer periods of high-intensity exercise, which is useful when performance is limited by other comorbidities[231,232]. Use of a simple wheeled walking aid seems to improve walking distance and reduces breathlessness in severely disabled COPD patients[233-235] (**Evidence C**). Other approaches to improving outcomes such as use of oxygen during exercise[236], exercising while breathing heliox gas mixtures[237], unloading the ventilatory muscles while exercising, or use of pursed lip breathing remain experimental at present. Specific strength training is possible but its benefits remain uncertain, as do the effects of supplementation with anabolic steroids and the use of neuromuscular electrical stimulation.

The minimum length of an effective rehabilitation program is 6 weeks; the longer the program continues, the more effective the results[238-240] (**Evidence B**). However, as yet, no effective program has been developed to maintain the effects over time[241]. Many physicians advise patients unable to participate in a structured program to exercise on their own (e.g., walking 20 minutes daily). The benefits of this general advice have not been tested, but it is reasonable to offer such advice to patients if a formal program is not available.

Some programs also include upper limb exercises, usually involving an upper limb ergometer or resistive training with weights. There are no randomized clinical trial data to support the routine inclusion of these exercises, but they may be helpful in patients with comorbidities that restrict other forms of exercise and those with evidence of respiratory muscle weakness[242,243]. The addition of upper limb exercises or other strength training to aerobic training is effective in improving strength, but does not improve quality of life or exercise tolerance[244].

Nutrition counseling. Nutritional state is an important determinant of symptoms, disability, and prognosis in COPD; both overweight and underweight can be a problem. Specific nutritional recommendations for patients with COPD are based on expert opinion and some small randomized clinical trials[209]. Approximately 25% of patients with *Stage II: Moderate COPD* to *Stage IV: Very Severe COPD* show a reduction in both their body mass index and fat free mass[12,245,246]. A reduction in body mass index is an independent risk factor for mortality in COPD patients[13,247,248] (**Evidence A**).

Health care workers should identify and correct the reasons for reduced calorie intake in COPD patients. Patients who become breathless while eating should be advised to take small, frequent meals. Poor dentition should be corrected and comorbidities (pulmonary sepsis, lung tumors, etc.) should be managed appropriately. Improving the nutritional state of COPD patients who are losing weight can lead to improved respiratory muscle strength[249-251]. However, controversy remains as to whether this additional effort is cost effective[249,250].

Present evidence suggests that nutritional supplementation alone may not be a sufficient strategy. Increased calorie intake is best accompanied by exercise regimes that have a nonspecific anabolic action, and there is some evidence this also helps even in those patients without severe nutritional depletion[252]. Specific nutritional supplements (e.g., creatine) may improve body composition, but further studies in large numbers of subjects are required before the routine use of these supplements can be recommended[253]. Anabolic steroids in COPD patients with weight loss increase body weight and lean body mass but have little or no effect on exercise capacity[254,255].

Education. Most pulmonary rehabilitation programs include an educational component, but the specific contributions of education to the improvements seen after pulmonary rehabilitation remain unclear.

Assessment and follow-up. Baseline and outcome assessments of each participant in a pulmonary rehabilitation program should be made to quantify individual gains and target areas for improvement. Assessments should include:

- Detailed history and physical examination
- Measurement of spirometry before and after a bronchodilator drug
- Assessment of exercise capacity
- Measurement of health status and impact of breathlessness
- Assessment of inspiratory and expiratory muscle strength and lower limb strength (e.g., quadriceps) in patients who suffer from muscle wasting

The first two assessments are important for establishing entry suitability and baseline status but are not used in outcome assessment. The last three assessments are baseline and outcome measures. Several detailed questionnaires for assessing health status are available, including some that are specifically designed for patients with respiratory disease (e.g., Chronic Respiratory Disease Questionnaire[152], St. George Respiratory Questionnaire[256]), and there is increasing evidence that these questionnaires may be useful in a clinical setting. Health status can also be assessed by generic questionnaires, such as the Medical Outcomes Study Short Form (SF36)[257], to enable comparison of quality of life in different diseases. The Hospital Anxiety and Depression Scale (HADS) has been used to improve identification and treatment of anxious and depressed patients[258].

Economic cost of rehabilitation programs. A Canadian study showing statistically significant improvements in dyspnea, fatigue, emotional health, and mastery found that the incremental cost of pulmonary rehabilitation was $11,597 (CDN) per person[259]. A study from the United Kingdom provided evidence that an intensive (6-week, 18-visit) multidisciplinary rehabilitation program was effective in decreasing use of health services[225] (**Evidence B**). Although there was no difference in the number of hospital admissions between patients with disabling COPD in a control group and those who participated in the rehabilitation program, the number of days the rehabilitation group spent in the hospital was significantly lower. The rehabilitation group had more primary-care consultations at the general practitioner's premises than did the control group, but fewer primary-care home visits. Compared with the control group, the rehabilitation group also showed greater improvements in walking ability and in general and disease-specific health status.

Oxygen Therapy

Oxygen therapy, one of the principal nonpharmacologic treatments for patients with *Stage IV: Very Severe COPD*[190,260], can be administered in three ways: long-term continuous therapy, during exercise, and to relieve acute dyspnea. The primary goal of oxygen therapy is to increase the baseline PaO_2 to at least 8.0 kPa (60 mm Hg) at sea level and rest, and/or produce an SaO_2 at least 90%, which will preserve vital organ function by ensuring adequate delivery of oxygen.

The long-term administration of oxygen (> 15 hours per day) to patients with chronic respiratory failure has been shown to increase survival[261,262]. It can also have a beneficial impact on hemodynamics, hematologic characteristics, exercise capacity, lung mechanics, and mental state[263]. Continuous oxygen therapy decreased resting pulmonary artery pressure in one study[261] but not in another study[262]. Prospective studies have shown that the primary hemodynamic effect of oxygen therapy is preventing the progression of pulmonary hypertension[264,265]. Long-term oxygen therapy improves general alertness, motor speed, and hand grip, although the data are less clear about changes in quality of life and emotional state. The possibility of walking while using some oxygen devices may help to improve physical conditioning and have a beneficial influence on the psychological state of patients[266].

Long-term oxygen therapy is generally introduced in *Stage IV: Very Severe COPD* for patients who have:

- PaO_2 at or below 7.3 kPa (55 mm Hg) or SaO_2 at or below 88%, with or without hypercapnia (**Evidence B**); *or*
- PaO_2 between 7.3 kPa (55 mm Hg) and 8.0 kPa (60 mm Hg), or SaO2 of 88%, if there is evidence of pulmonary hypertension, peripheral edema suggesting congestive cardiac failure, or polycythemia (hematocrit > 55%) (**Evidence D**).

A decision about the use of long-term oxygen should be based on the waking PaO_2 values. The prescription should always include the source of supplemental oxygen (gas or liquid), method of delivery, duration of use, and flow rate at rest, during exercise, and during sleep. A detailed review of the uses of oxygen in COPD, together with possible assessment algorithms and information about methods of delivery, is available from http://www.thoracic.org/.

Oxygen is usually delivered by a facemask, with appropriate inspiratory flow rates varying between 24% and 35%. The facemask permits accurate titration of oxygen, which is particularly valuable in patients who are prone to CO_2 retention. However, facemasks are easily dislodged and restrict eating and conversation, so many patients prefer oxygen delivered by nasal cannulae. Oxygen delivery by this route requires additional blood gas monitoring to ensure that it is satisfactory, and may require individual titration. Other, more specialized methods of oxygen delivery (e.g., transtracheally) are available but should only be used in specialized centers familiar with the indications and complications of these delivery methods.

Long-term oxygen is usually provided from a fixed oxygen concentrator with plastic piping allowing the patient to use oxygen in their living area and bedroom. Treatment should be for at least 15 hours per day and preferably longer. In addition, a supply of oxygen should be provided that will allow the patient to leave the house for an appropriate period of time and to exercise without their oxygen saturation falling below 90%.

A number of physiological studies have shown that delivering oxygen during exercise can increase the duration of endurance exercise and/or reduce the intensity of end-exercise breathlessness[267,268] (**Evidence A**). This reflects a reduction in the rate at which dynamic hyperinflation occurs, which may be secondary to the documented reduction in ventilatory demand and chemoreceptor activation while breathing oxygen during exercise[269,270]. These changes occur whether or not patients are hypoxemic at rest and can translate into improved health status if the treatment is used as an outpatient[271]. However, good data about the use of ambulatory oxygen in representative patient populations are presently lacking, although a small randomized trial has suggested that compliance is not high[272]. Patients need encouragement to understand how and when to use ambulatory oxygen and overcome any anxieties or concerns about using this more conspicuous treatment.

Oxygen therapy reduces the oxygen cost of breathing and minute ventilation, a mechanism that although still disputed helps to minimize the sensation of dyspnea. This has led to the use of short burst therapy to control severe dyspnea such as occurs after climbing stairs. However, there is no benefit from using short burst oxygen for symptomatic relief before or after exercise[273,274] (**Evidence B**).

Cost considerations. Supplemental home oxygen is usually the most costly component of outpatient therapy for adults with COPD who require this therapy[275]. Studies of the cost effectiveness of alternative outpatient oxygen delivery methods in the US and Europe suggest that oxygen concentrator devices may be more cost effective than cylinder delivery systems[276,277].

Oxygen use in air travel. Although air travel is safe for most patients with chronic respiratory failure who are on long-term oxygen therapy, patients should be instructed to increase the flow by 1-2 L/min during the flight[278]. Ideally, patients who fly should be able to maintain an in-flight PaO_2 of at least 6.7 kPa (50 mm Hg). Studies indicate that this can be achieved in those with moderate to severe hypoxemia at sea level by supplementary oxygen at 3 L/min by nasal cannulae or 31% by Venturi facemask[279]. Those with a resting PaO_2 at sea level of > 9.3 kPa (70 mm Hg) are likely to be safe to fly without supplementary oxygen[278,280], although it is important to emphasize that a resting PaO_2 > 9.3 kPa (70 mm Hg) at sea level does not exclude the development of severe hypoxemia when travelling by air (**Evidence C**). Careful consideration should be given to any comorbidity that may impair oxygen delivery to tissues (e.g., cardiac impairment, anemia). Also, walking along the aisle may profoundly aggravate hypoxemia[281].

Ventilatory Support

Noninvasive ventilation (using either negative or positive pressure devices) is now widely used to treat acute exacerbations of COPD (*see Component 4*). Negative pressure ventilation is not indicated for the chronic management of *Stage IV: Very Severe COPD* patients, with or without CO_2 retention. It has been demonstrated to have no effect on shortness of breath, exercise tolerance, arterial blood gases, respiratory muscle strength, or quality of life in a large randomized trial in COPD patients with chronic respiratory failure[282].

Although preliminary studies suggested that combining noninvasive intermittent positive pressure ventilation (NIPPV) with long-term oxygen therapy could improve some outcome variables, current data do not support the routine use of this combination[283]. However, compared with long-term oxygen therapy alone, the addition of NIPPV can lessen carbon dioxide retention and improve shortness of breath in some patients[284]. Thus, although at present long-term NIPPV cannot be recommended for the routine treatment of patients with chronic respiratory failure due to COPD, the combination of NIPPV with long-term oxygen therapy may be of some use in a selected subset of patients, particularly in those with pronounced daytime hypercapnia[285].

Surgical Treatments

Bullectomy. Bullectomy is an older surgical procedure for bullous emphysema. Removal of a large bulla that does not contribute to gas exchange decompresses the adjacent lung parenchyma. Bullectomy can be performed thoracoscopically. In carefully selected patients, this procedure is effective in reducing dyspnea and improving lung function[286] (**Evidence C**).

Bullae may be removed to alleviate local symptoms such as hemoptysis, infection, or chest pain, and to allow re-expansion of a compressed lung region. This is the usual indication in patients with COPD. In considering the possible benefit of surgery it is crucial to estimate the effect of the bulla on the lung and the function of the nonbullous lung. A thoracic CT scan, arterial blood gas measurement, and comprehensive respiratory function tests are essential before making a decision regarding suitability for resection of a bulla. Normal or minimally reduced diffusing capacity, absence of significant hypoxemia, and evidence of regional reduction in perfusion with good perfusion in the remaining lung are indications a patient will likely benefit from surgery[287]. However, pulmonary hypertension, hypercapnia, and severe emphysema are not absolute contraindications for bullectomy. Some investigators have recommended that the bulla must occupy 50% or more of the hemithorax and produce definite displacement of the adjacent lung before surgery is performed[288].

Lung volume reduction surgery (LVRS). LVRS is a surgical procedure in which parts of the lung are resected to reduce hyperinflation[289], making respiratory muscles more effective pressure generators by improving their mechanical efficiency (as measured by length/tension relationship, curvature of the diaphragm, and area of apposition)[290,291]. In addition, LVRS increases the elastic recoil pressure of the lung and thus improves expiratory flow rates[292].

A large multicenter study of 1,200 patients comparing LVRS with medical treatment has shown that after 4.3 years, patients with upper-lobe emphysema and low exercise capacity who received the surgery had a greater survival rate than similar patients who received medical therapy (54% vs. 39.7%)[293]. In addition, the surgery patients experienced greater improvements in their maximal work capacity and their health-related quality of life. The advantage of surgery over medical therapy was less significant among patients who had other emphysema distribution or high exercise capacity prior to treatment.

Hospital costs associated with LVRS in 52 consecutive patients[294] ranged from US$11,712 to $121,829. Hospital charges in 23 consecutive patients admitted for LVRS at a single institution[295] ranged from US$20,032 to $75,561 with a median charge of $26,669. A small number of individuals incurred extraordinary costs because of complications. Advanced age was a significant factor leading to higher expected total hospital costs.

Although the results of the large multicenter study showed some very positive results of surgery in a select group of patients[41,293], LVRS is an expensive palliative surgical procedure and can be recommended only in carefully selected patients.

Lung transplantation. In appropriately selected patients with very advanced COPD, lung transplantation has been shown to improve quality of life and functional capacity[296-299] (**Evidence C**), although the Joint United Network for Organ Sharing in 1998 found that lung transplantation does not confer a survival benefit in patients with end-stage emphysema after two years[298]. Criteria for referral for lung transplantation include $FEV_1 < 35\%$ predicted, $PaO_2 < 7.3$-8.0 kPa (55-60 mm Hg), $PaCO_2 > 6.7$ kPa (50 mm Hg), and secondary pulmonary hypertension[300,301].

Lung transplantation is limited by the shortage of donor organs, which has led some centers to adopt the single-lung technique. The common complications seen in COPD patients after lung transplantation, apart from operative mortality, are acute rejection and bronchiolitis obliterans, CMV, other opportunistic fungal (*Candida, Aspergillus, Cryptococcus, Carinii*) or bacterial (*Pseudomonas, Staphylococcus* species) infections, lymphoproliferative disease, and lymphomas[297].

Another limitation of lung transplantation is its cost. In the United States, hospitalization costs associated with lung transplantation have ranged from US$110,000 to well over $200,000. Costs remain elevated for months to years after surgery due to the high cost of complications and the immunosuppressive regimens[302-305] that must be initiated during or immediately after surgery.

Special Considerations

Surgery in COPD. Postoperative pulmonary complications are as important and common as postoperative cardiac complications and, consequently, are a key component of the increased risk posed by surgery in COPD patients. The principal potential factors contributing to the risk include smoking, poor general health status, age, obesity, and COPD severity. A comprehensive definition of post-operative pulmonary complications should include only major pulmonary respiratory complications, namely lung infections, atelectasis and/or increased airflow obstruction, all potentially resulting in acute respiratory failure and aggravation of underlying COPD[306-311].

The incidence of increased risk of postoperative pulmonary complications in COPD patients may vary according to the definition of postoperative pulmonary complications and the severity of COPD, with relative ranges of the order of 2.7 to 4.7[306]. The surgical site is the most important predictor, and risk increases as the incision approaches the diaphragm. Upper abdominal and thoracic surgery represents the greatest risk, the latter being uncommon after interventions outside the thorax or abdomen. Most reports conclude that epidural or spinal anesthesia have a lower risk than general anesthesia, although the results are not totally uniform.

Individual patient risk factors are identified by careful history, physical examination, chest radiography, and pulmonary function tests. Although the value of pulmonary function tests remains contentious, there is consensus that all COPD candidates for lung resection should undergo a complete battery, including forced spirometry with bronchodilator response, static lung volumes, diffusing capacity, and arterial blood gases at rest. One theoretical rationale behind the assessment of pulmonary function measurement is the identification of COPD patients in whom the risk is so elevated that surgery should be contraindicated.

Several studies in high-risk COPD patients suggest that there is a threshold beyond which the risk of surgery is prohibitive. The risk of postoperative respiratory failure appears to be in patients undergoing pneumonectomy with a preoperative $FEV_1 < 2$ L or 50% predicted and/or a DLCO < 50% predicted[310]. COPD patients at high risk due to poor lung function should undergo further lung function assessment, for example, tests of regional distribution of perfusion and exercise capacity[311]. To prevent postoperative pulmonary complications, stable COPD patients clinically symptomatic and/or with limited exercise capacity should be treated, before surgery, intensely with all the measures already well established for stable COPD patients who are not about to have surgery. Surgery should be postponed if an exacerbation is present.

Surgery in patients with COPD needs to be differentiated from that aimed to improve lung function and symptoms of COPD. This includes bullectomy, lung volume reduction surgery, and lung transplantation[311].

COMPONENT 4: MANAGE EXACERBATIONS

KEY POINTS:

- An exacerbation of COPD is defined as an event in the natural course of the disease characterized by a change in the patient's baseline dyspnea, cough, and/or sputum that is beyond normal day-to-day variations, is acute in onset, and may warrant a change in regular medication in a patient with underlying COPD.

- The most common causes of an exacerbation are infection of the tracheobronchial tree and air pollution, but the cause of about one-third of severe exacerbations cannot be identified (**Evidence B**).

- Inhaled bronchodilators (particularly inhaled β_2-agonists with or without anticholinergics) and oral glucocorticosteroids are effective treatments for exacerbations of COPD (**Evidence A**).

- Patients experiencing COPD exacerbations with clinical signs of airway infection (e.g., increased sputum purulence) may benefit from antibiotic treatment (**Evidence B**).

- Noninvasive mechanical ventilation in exacerbations improves respiratory acidosis, increases pH, decreases the need for endotracheal intubation, and reduces $PaCO_2$, respiratory rate, severity of breathlessness, the length of hospital stay, and mortality (**Evidence A**).

- Medications and education to help prevent future exacerbations should be considered as part of follow-up, as exacerbations affect the quality of life and prognosis of patients with COPD.

INTRODUCTION

COPD is often associated with exacerbations of symptoms[312-316]. An exacerbation of COPD is defined as *an event in the natural course of the disease characterized by a change in the patient's baseline dyspnea, cough, and/or sputum that is beyond normal day-to-day variations, is acute in onset, and may warrant a change in regular medication in a patient with underlying COPD*[317,318]. Exacerbations are categorized in terms of either clinical presentation (number of symptoms[314]) and/or health-care resources utilization[317]. The impact of exacerbations is significant and a patient's symptoms and lung function may both take several weeks to recover to the baseline values[319].

Exacerbations affect the quality of life and prognosis of patients with COPD. Hospital mortality of patients admitted for a hypercarbic COPD exacerbation is approximately 10%, and the long-term outcome is poor[320]. Mortality reaches 40% at 1 year in those needing mechanical support, and all-cause mortality is even higher (up to 49%) 3 years after hospitalization for a COPD exacerbation[316,320-325]. In addition, exacerbations of COPD have serious negative impacts on patients' quality of life[140], lung function[326,327], and socioeconomic costs[325]. Thus, prevention, early detection, and prompt treatment of exacerbations may impact their clinical progression by ameliorating the effects on quality of life and minimizing the risk of hospitalization[328].

The most common causes of an exacerbation are infection of the tracheobronchial tree and air pollution[329], but the cause of about one-third of severe exacerbations cannot be identified. The role of bacterial infections is controversial, but recent investigations with newer research techniques have begun to provide important information. Bronchoscopic studies have shown that at least 50% of patients have bacteria in high concentrations in their lower airways during exacerbations[330-332]. However, a significant proportion of these patients also have bacteria colonizing their lower airways in the stable phase of the disease.

There is some indication that the bacterial burden increases during exacerbations[330], and that acquisition of strains of the bacteria that are new to the patient is associated with exacerbations[332]. Development of specific immune responses to the infecting bacterial strains, and the association of neutrophilic inflammation with bacterial exacerbations, also support the bacterial causation of a proportion of exacerbations[333-336].

DIAGNOSIS AND ASSESSMENT OF SEVERITY

Medical History

Increased breathlessness, the main symptom of an exacerbation, is often accompanied by wheezing and chest tightness, increased cough and sputum, change of the color and/or tenacity of sputum, and fever.

Exacerbations may also be accompanied by a number of nonspecific complaints, such as tachycardia and tachypnea, malaise, insomnia, sleepiness, fatigue, depression, and confusion. A decrease in exercise tolerance, fever, and/ or new radiological anomalies suggestive of pulmonary disease may herald a COPD exacerbation. An increase in sputum volume and purulence points to a bacterial cause, as does prior history of chronic sputum production[314,338].

Assessment of Severity

Assessment of the severity of an exacerbation is based on the patient's medical history before the exacerbation, preexisting comorbidities, symptoms, physical examination, arterial blood gas measurements, and other laboratory tests (**Figure 5.4-1**). Specific information is required on the frequency and severity of attacks of breathlessness and cough, sputum volume and color, and limitation of daily activities. When available, prior arterial blood gas measurements are extremely useful for comparison with those made during the acute episode, as an acute change in these tests is more important than their absolute values. Thus, where possible, physicians should instruct their patients to bring the summary of their last evaluation when they come to the hospital with an exacerbation. In patients with *Stage IV: Very Severe COPD*, the most important sign of a severe exacerbation is a change in the mental status of the patient and this signals a need for immediate evaluation in the hospital.

Figure 5.4-1. Assessment of COPD Exacerbations: Medical History and Signs of Severity

Medical History	Signs of Severity
• Severity of FEV_1	• Use of accessory respiratory muscles
• Duration of worsening or new symptoms	• Paradoxical chest wall movements
• Number of previous episodes (exacerbations/ hospitalizations)	• Worsening or new onset central cyanosis
	• Development of peripheral edema
• Comordibities	• Hemodynamic instability
• Present treatment regimen	• Signs of right heart failure
	• Reduced alertness

Spirometry and PEF. Even simple spirometric tests can be difficult for a sick patient to perform properly. These measurements are not accurate during an acute exacerbation; therefore their routine use is not recommended.

Pulse oximetry and arterial blood gas measurement. Pulse oximetry can be used to evaluate a patient's oxygen saturation and need for supplemental oxygen therapy. For patients that require hospitalization, measurement of arterial blood gases is important to assess the severity of an exacerbation. A PaO_2 < 8.0 kPa (60 mm Hg) and/or SaO_2 < 90% with or without $PaCO_2$ > 6.7 kPa (50 mmHg) when breathing room air indicate respiratory failure. In addition, moderate-to-severe acidosis (pH < 7.36) plus hypercapnia ($PaCO_2$ > 6-8 kPa, 45-60 mm Hg) in a patient with respiratory failure is an indication for mechanical ventilation[311,337].

Chest X-ray and ECG. Chest radiographs (posterior/ anterior plus lateral) are useful in identifying alternative diagnoses that can mimic the symptoms of an exacerbation. Although the history and physical signs can be confusing, especially when pulmonary hyperinflation masks coexisting cardiac signs, most problems are resolved by the chest X-ray and ECG. An ECG aids in the diagnosis of right heart hypertrophy, arrhythmias, and ischemic episodes. Pulmonary embolism can be very difficult to distinguish from an exacerbation, especially in advanced COPD, because right ventricular hypertrophy and large pulmonary arteries lead to confusing ECG and radiographic results. A low systolic blood pressure and an inability to increase the PaO_2 above 8.0 kPa (60 mm Hg) despite high-flow oxygen also suggest pulmonary embolism. If there are strong indications that pulmonary embolism has occurred, it is best to treat for this along with the exacerbation.

Other laboratory tests. The whole blood count may identify polycythemia (hematocrit > 55%) or bleeding. White blood cell counts are usually not very informative. The presence of purulent sputum during an exacerbation of symptoms is sufficient indication for starting empirical antibiotic treatment[33]. *Streptococcus pneumoniae, Hemophilus influenzae*, and *Moraxella catarrhalis* are the most common bacterial pathogens involved in COPD exacerbations. If an infectious exacerbation does not respond to the initial antibiotic treatment, a sputum culture and an antibiogram should be performed. Bio- chemical test abnormalities can be associated with an exacerbation and include electrolyte disturbance(s) (e.g., hyponatremia, hypokalemia), poor glucose control, metabolic acid-base disorder. These abnormalities can also be due to associated co-morbid conditions (see below "Differential Diagnoses").

Differential Diagnoses

Ten to 30% of patients with apparent exacerbations of COPD that do not respond to treatment[319,338]. In such cases the patient should be re-evaluated for other medical conditions that can aggravate symptoms or mimic COPD exacerbations[190]. These conditions include pneumonia, congestive heart failure, pneumothorax, pleural effusion, pulmonary embolism, and cardiac arrhythmia. Noncompliance with the prescribed medication regimen can also cause increased symptoms that may be confused with a true exacerbation. Elevated serum levels of brain-type natriuretic peptide, in conjunction with other clinical information, identifies patients with acute dyspnea secondary to congestive heart failure and enables them to be distinguished from patients with COPD exacerbations[339,340].

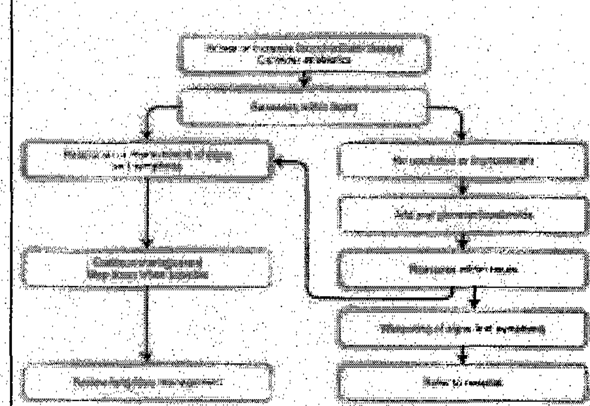
HOME MANAGEMENT

There is increasing interest in home care for end-stage COPD patients, although economic studies of home-care services have yielded mixed results. Four randomized clinical trials have shown that nurse-administered home care (also known as "hospital-at-home" care) represents an effective and practical alternative to hospitalization in selected patients with exacerbations of COPD without acidotic respiratory failure. However, the exact criteria for this approach as opposed to hospital treatment remain uncertain and will vary by health care setting[341-344].

The algorithm reported in **Figure 5.4-2** may assist in the management of an exacerbation at home; a stepwise therapeutic approach is recommended[190,311,345].

Figure 5.4-2. Algorithm for the Management of an Exacerbation of COPD at Home (adapted from ref[346])

The exact criteria for home vs. hospital treatment remain uncertain and will vary by health care setting. If it is determined that care can be initiated at home, this algorithm provides a stepwise therapeutic approach.



Bronchodilator Therapy

Home management of COPD exacerbations involves increasing the dose and/or frequency of existing short-acting bronchodilator therapy, preferably with a β_2-agonist (**Evidence A**). There is not sufficient evidence, however, to indicate a difference in efficacy between the different classes of short-acting bronchodilators[347], or to indicate additional benefit of combinations of short-acting bronchodilators[348]. However, if not already used, an anticholinergic can be added until the symptoms improve. There is no difference in the clinical response between bronchodilator therapy delivered by MDI with a spacer and by hand held nebulizer.

Glucocorticosteroids

Systemic glucocorticosteroids are beneficial in the management of exacerbations of COPD. They shorten recovery time, improve lung function (FEV_1) and hypoxemia (PaO_2)[349-352] (**Evidence A**), and may reduce the risk of early relapse, treatment failure, and length of hospital stay[353]. They should be considered in addition to bronchodilators if the patient's baseline FEV_1 is < 50% predicted. A dose of 30-40 mg prednisolone per day for 7-10 days is recommended[346,349,350]. One large study indicates that nebulized budesonide may be an alternative (although more expensive) to oral glucocorticosteroids in the treatment of non-acidotic exacerbations[351]. Randomized clinical trials in the outpatient office set-up are not available.

Antibiotics

The use of antibiotics in the management of COPD exacerbations is discussed below in the hospital management section.

HOSPITAL MANAGEMENT

The risk of dying from an exacerbation of COPD is closely related to the development of respiratory acidosis, the presence of significant comorbidities, and the need for ventilatory support[320]. Patients lacking these features are not at high risk of dying, but those with severe underlying COPD often require hospitalization in any case. Attempts at managing such patients entirely in the community have met with only limited success[354], but returning them to their homes with increased social support and a supervised medical care package after initial emergency room assessment has been much more successful[355]. Savings on inpatient expenditures[356] offset the additional costs of maintaining a community-based COPD nursing team. However, detailed cost-benefit analyses of these approaches are awaited.

A range of criteria to consider for hospital assessment/ admission for exacerbations of COPD are shown in **Figure 5.4-3**. Some patients need immediate admission to an intensive care unit (ICU) (**Figure 5.4-4**). Admission of patients with severe COPD exacerbations to intermediate or special respiratory care units may be appropriate if personnel, skills, and equipment exist to identify and manage acute respiratory failure successfully.

Figure 5.4-3. Indications for Hospital Assessment or Admission for Exacerbations of COPD*

- Marked increase in intensity of symptoms, such as sudden development of resting dyspnea
- Severe underlying COPD
- Onset of new physical signs (e.g., cyanosis, peripheral edema)
- Failure of exacerbation to respond to initial medical management
- Significant comorbidities
- Frequent exacerbations
- Newly occurring arrhythmias
- Diagnostic uncertainty
- Older age
- Insufficient home support

**Local resources need to be considered.*

Figure 5.4-4. Indications for ICU Admission of Patients with Exacerbations of COPD*

- Severe dyspnea that responds inadequately to initial emergency therapy
- Changes in mental status (confusion, lethargy, coma)
- Persistent or worsening hypoxemia (PaO_2 < 5.3 kPa, 40 mmHg), and/or severe/worsening hypercapnia ($PaCO_2$ > 8.0 kPa, 60 mmHg), and/or severe/worsening respiratory acidosis (pH < 7.25) despite supplemental oxygen and noninvasive ventilation
- Need for invasive mechanical ventilation
- Hemodynamic instability—need for vasopressors

**Local resources need to be considered.*

Emergency Department or Hospital

The first actions when a patient reaches the emergency department are to provide supplemental oxygen therapy and to determine whether the exacerbation is life threatening (**Figure 5.4-4**). If so, the patient should be admitted to the ICU immediately. Otherwise, the patient may be managed in the emergency department or hospital as detailed in **Figure 5.4-5.**

Figure 5.4-5. Management of Severe but Not Life-Threatening Exacerbations of COPD in the Emergency Department or the Hospital[348]*

- Assess severity of symptoms, blood gases, chest X-ray
- Administer controlled oxygen therapy and repeat arterial blood gas measurement after 30-60 minutes

- Bronchodilators:
  - Increase doses and/or frequency
  - Combine β_2-agonists and anticholinergics
  - Use spacers or air-driven nebulizers
  - Consider adding intravenous mehylxanthines, if needed

- Add oral or intravenous glucocorticosteroids
- Consider antibiotics (oral or occasionally intravenous) when signs of bacterial infection
- Consider noninvasive mechanical ventilation
- At all times:
  - Monitor fluid balance and nutrition
  - Consider subcutaneous heparin
  - Identify and treat associated conditions (e.g., heart failure, arrhythmias)
  - Closely monitor condition of the patient

**Local resources need to be considered.*

Controlled oxygen therapy. Oxygen therapy is the cornerstone of hospital treatment of COPD exacerbations. Supplemental oxygen should be titrated to improve the patient's hypoxemia. Adequate levels of oxygenation (PaO_2 > 8.0 kPa, 60 mm Hg, or SaO_2 > 90%) are easy to achieve in uncomplicated exacerbations, but CO_2 retention can occur insidiously with little change in symptoms. Once oxygen is started, arterial rrr blood gases should be checked 30-60 minutes later to ensure satisfactory oxygenation without CO_2 retention or acidosis. Venturi masks (high-flow devices) offer more accurate delivery of controlled oxygen than do nasal prongs but are less likely to be tolerated by the patient[311].

Bronchodilator therapy. Short-acting inhaled β_2-agonists are usually the preferred bronchodilators for treatment of exacerbations of COPD[190,311,357] (**Evidence A**). If a prompt response to these drugs does not occur, the addition of an anticholinergic is recommended, even though evidence concerning the effectiveness of this combination is controversial. Despite its widespread clinical use, the role of methylxanthines in the treatment of exacerbations of COPD remains controversial. Methylxanthines (theophylline or aminohylline) is currently considered second-line intravenous therapy, used when there is inadequate or insufficient response to short-acting bronchodilators[358-362] (**Evidence B**). Possible beneficial effects in terms of lung function and clinical endpoints are modest and inconsistent, whereas adverse effects are significantly increased[363,364]. There are no clinical studies that have evaluated the use of inhaled long-acting bronchodilators (either β_2-agonists or anticholinergics) with or without inhaled glucocorticosteroids during an acute exacerbation.

Glucocorticosteroids. Oral or intravenous glucocorticosteroids are recommended as an addition to other therapies in the hospital management of exacerbations of COPD[350,351] (**Evidence A**). The exact dose that should be recommended is not known, but high doses are associated with a significant risk of side effects. Thirty to 40 mg of oral prednisolone daily for 7-10 days is effective and safe (**Evidence C**). Prolonged treatment does not result in greater efficacy and increases the risk of side effects (e.g., hyperglycemia, muscle atrophy).

Antibiotics. Randomized placebo-controlled studies of antibiotic treatment in exacerbations of COPD have demonstrated a small beneficial effect of antibiotics on lung function[365], and a randomized controlled trial has provided evidence for a significant beneficial effect of antibiotics in COPD patients who presented with an increase in all three of the following cardinal symptoms: dyspnea, sputum volume, and sputum purulence[314]. There was also some benefit in those patients with an increase in only two of these cardinal symptoms.

A study on non-hospitalized patients with exacerbations of COPD showed a relationship between the purulence of the sputum and the presence of bacteria[11], suggesting that these patients should be treated with antibiotics if they also have at least one of the other two cardinal symptoms (dyspnea or sputum volume). However, these criteria for antibiotic treatment of exacerbations of COPD have not been validated in other studies. A study in COPD patients with exacerbations requiring mechanical ventilation (invasive or noninvasive) indicated that not giving antibiotics was associated with increased mortality and a greater incidence of secondary nosocomial pneumonia[366]. Based on the current available evidence[311,62], antibiotics should be given to:

- Patients with exacerbations of COPD with the following three cardinal symptoms: increased dyspnea, increased sputum volume, and increased sputum purulence (**Evidence B**).

- Patients with exacerbations of COPD with two of the cardinal symptoms, if increased purulence of sputum is one of the two symptoms (**Evidence C**).

- Patients with a severe exacerbation of COPD that requires mechanical ventilation (invasive or noninvasive) (**Evidence B**).

The infectious agents in COPD exacerbations can be viral or bacterial[177,367]. The predominant bacteria recovered from the lower airways of patients with COPD exacerbations are *H. influenzae, S. pneumoniae, and M. catarrhalis*[177,330,331,368]. So-called atypical pathogens, such as *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* and *Chlamydia pneumoniae*[368,369], have been identified in patients with COPD exacerbations, but because of diagnostic limitations the true prevalence of these organisms is not known.

Studies in patients with severe underlying COPD who require mechanical ventilation[370,371] have shown that other microorganisms, such as enteric gram-negative bacilli and *P. aeruginosa*, may be more frequent. Other studies have shown that the severity of the COPD is an important determinant of the type of microorganism[372,373]. In patients with mild COPD exacerbations , *S. pneumoniae* is predominant. As FEV_1 declines and patients have more frequent exacerbations and/or comorbid diseases , *H. influenzae* and *M. catarrhalis* become more frequent, and *P. aeruginosa* may appear in patients with severe airway limitation (**Figure 5-4-6**)[177,311]. The risk factors for *P. aeruginosa* infection are recent hospitalization, frequent administration of antibiotics (4 courses in the last year), severe COPD exacerbations, and isolation of *P. aeruginosa* during a previous exacerbation or colonization during a stable period[372,373].

Figure 5.4-7[177,311,332] provides recommended antibiotic treatment for exacerbations of COPD, although it must be emphasized that most of the published studies related to the use of antibiotics were done in chronic bronchitis patients. The route of administration (oral or intravenous) depends on the ability of the patient to eat and the pharmacokinetics of the antibiotic. The oral route is preferred; if the IV route must be used, switching to the oral route is recommended when clinical stabilization permits. Based on studies of the length of use of antibiotics for chronic bronchitis[374-376], antibiotic treatment in patients with COPD exacerbations could be given for 3 to 7 days (**Evidence D**).

Figure 5.4-6: Stratification of patients with COPD exacerbated for antibiotic treatment and potential microorganisms involved in each group[177,311]

Group	Definition[a]	Microorganisms
Group A	Mild exacerbation: No risk factors for poor outcome	*H. influenzae* *S. pneumoniae* *M. catarrhalis* *Chlamydia pneumoniae* Viruses
Group B	Moderate exacerbation with risk factor(s) for poor outcome	Group A plus, presence of resistant organisms (β-lactamase producing, penicillin-resistant *S. pneumoniae*), Enterobacteriaceae (*K.pneumoniae, E. coli, Proteus, Enterobacter*, etc)
Group C	Severe exacerbation with risk factors for *P. aeruginosa* infection	Group B plus: *P. aeruginosa*

a. Risk factors for poor outcome in patients with COPD exacerbation: presence of comorbid diseases, severe COPD, frequent exacerbations (>3 /yr), and antimicrobial use within last 3 months)[177,311,372].

Respiratory Stimulants. Respiratory stimulants are not recommended for acute respiratory failure[357]. Doxapram, a nonspecific but relatively safe respiratory stimulant available in some countries as an intravenous formulation, should be used only when noninvasive intermittent ventilation is not available or not recommended[377].

Ventilatory support. The primary objectives of mechanical ventilatory support in patients with COPD exacerbations are to decrease mortality and morbidity and to relieve symptoms. Ventilatory support includes both noninvasive intermittent ventilation using either negative or positive pressure devices, and invasive (conventional) mechanical ventilation by oro-tracheal tube or tracheostomy.

Noninvasive mechanical ventilation. Noninvasive intermittent ventilation (NIV) has been studied in several randomized controlled trials in acute respiratory failure, consistently providing positive results with success rates of 80-85%[285,378-380]. These studies provide evidence that NIV improves respiratory acidosis (increases pH, and decreases $PaCO_2$), decreases respiratory rate, severity of breathlessness, and length of hospital stay (**Evidence A**). More importantly, mortality—or its surrogate, intubation rate—is reduced by this intervention[380-383]. However, NIV is not appropriate for all patients, as summarized in **Figure 5.4-8**[285].

5.4-7: Antibiotic treatment in exacerbations of COPD[a,b (ref. 177,311,332)]

	Oral Treatment *(No particular order)*	Alternative Oral Treatment *(No particular order)*	Parenteral Treatment *(No particular order)*
Group A	***Patients with only one cardinal symptom[c] should not receive antibiotics*** If indication then: • β-lactam (Penicillin, Ampicillin/ Amoxicillin[d]) • Tetracycline • Trimethoprim/ Sulfamethoxazole	• β-lactam/ β-lactamase inhibitor (Co-amoxiclav) • Macrolides (Azithromycin, Clarithromycin, Roxithromycin[e]) • Cephalosporins - 2nd or 3rd generation • Ketolides (Telithromycin)	
Group B	• β-lactam/ β-lactamase inhibitor (Co-amoxiclav)	• Fluoroquinolones[e] (Gemifloxacin, Levofloxacin, Moxifloxacin)	• β-lactam/ β-lactamase inhibitor (Co-amoxiclav, ampicillin/ sulbactam) • Cephalosporins - 2nd or 3rd generation • Fluoroquinolones[e] (Levofloxacin, Moxifloxacin)
Group C	In patients at risk for *pseudomonas* infections: • Fluoroquinolones[e] (Ciprofloxacin, Levofloxacin - high dose[f])		• Fluoroquinolones[e] (Ciprofloxacin, Levofloxacin - high dose[f]) or • β-lactam with *P.aeruginosa* activity

a. All patients with symptoms of a COPD exacerbation should be treated with additional bronchodilators ± glucocorticosteroids.
b. Classes of antibiotics are provided (with specific agents in parentheses). In countries with high incidence of *S. pneumoniae* resistant to penicillin, high dosages of Amoxicillin or Co-amoxiclav are recommended. (See Figure 5-4-6 for definition of Groups A, B, and C.)
c. Cardinal symptoms are increased dyspnea, sputum volume, and sputum purulence.
d. This antibiotic is not appropriate in areas where there is increased prevalence of β-lactamase producing *H. influenzae* and *M. catarrhalis* and/or of *S. pneumoniae* resistant to penicillin.
e. Not available in all areas of the world.
f. Dose 750 mg effective against *P. aeruginosa*

Figure 5.4-8. Indications and Relative Contraindications for NIV[311,378,384,385]

Selection criteria
- Moderate to severe dyspnea with use of accessory muscles and paradoxical abdominal motion
- Moderate to severe acidosis (pH ≤ 7.35) and/ or hypercapnia ($PaCO_2$ > 6.0 kPa, 45 mm Hg)[386]
- Respiratory frequency > 25 breaths per minute

Exclusion criteria (any may be present)
- Respiratory arrest
- Cardiovascular instability (hypotension, arrhythmias, myocardial infarction)
- Change in mental status; uncooperative patient
- High aspiration risk
- Viscous or copious secretions
- Recent facial or gastroesophageal surgery
- Craniofacial trauma
- Fixed nasopharyngeal abnormalities
- Burns
- Extreme obesity.

Invasive mechanical ventilation. During exacerbations of COPD the events occurring within the lungs include bronchoconstriction, airway inflammation, increased mucus secretion, and loss of elastic recoil, all of which prevent the respiratory system from reaching its passive functional residual capacity at the end of expiration, enhancing dynamic hyperinflation and increasing the work of breathing[387,388]. The indications for initiating invasive mechanical ventilation during exacerbations of COPD are shown in **Figure 5.4-9**, including failure of an initial trial of NIV[389]. As experience is being gained with the generalized clinical use of NIV in COPD, several of the indications for invasive mechanical ventilation are being successfully treated with NIV. **Figure 5.4-10** details some other factors that determine the use of invasive ventilation.

The use of invasive ventilation in end-stage COPD patients is influenced by the likely reversibility of the precipitating event, the patient's wishes, and the availability of intensive care facilities. When possible, a clear statement of the patient's own treatment wishes—an advance directive or "living will"—makes these difficult decisions much easier to resolve. Major hazards include the risk of ventilator-acquired pneumonia (especially when multi-resistant organisms are prevalent), barotrauma, and failure to wean to spontaneous ventilation.

Contrary to some opinions, acute mortality among COPD patients with respiratory failure is lower than mortality among patients ventilated for non-COPD causes[324]. A study of a large number of COPD patients with acute respiratory failure reported in-hospital mortality of 17-49%[316]. Further deaths were reported over the next 12 months, particularly among those patients who had poor lung function before ventilation (FEV_1 < 30% predicted), had a non-respiratory comorbidity, or were housebound. Patients who did not have a previously diagnosed comorbid condition, had respiratory failure due to a potentially reversible cause (such as an infection), or were relatively mobile and not using long-term oxygen did surprisingly well with ventilatory support.

Figure 5.4-9. Indications for Invasive Mechanical Ventilation

- Unable to tolerate NIV or NIV failure (for exclusion criteria, see **Figure 5.4-8**)
- Severe dyspnea with use of accessory muscles and paradoxical abdominal motion.
- Respiratory frequency > 35 breaths per minute
- Life-threatening hypoxemia
- Severe acidosis (pH < 7.25) and/or hypercapnia ($PaCO_2$ > 8.0 kPa, 60 mm Hg)
- Respiratory arrest
- Somnolence, impaired mental status
- Cardiovascular complications (hypotension, shock)
- Other complications (metabolic abnormalities, sepsis, pneumonia, pulmonary embolism, barotrauma, massive pleural effusion)

Figure 5.4-10. Factors Determining the Decision to Initiate Invasive Mechanical Ventilation

- Cultural attitudes toward chronic disability
- Expectations of therapy
- Financial resources (especially the provision of ICU facilities)
- Perceived likelihood of recovery
- Customary medical practice
- Wishes, if known, of the patient

Weaning or discontinuation from mechanical ventilation can be particularly difficult and hazardous in patients with COPD. The most influential determinant of mechanical ventilatory dependency in these patients is the balance between the respiratory load and the capacity of the respiratory muscles to cope with this load[390]. By contrast, pulmonary gas exchange by itself is not a major difficulty in patients with COPD[391-393]. Weaning patients from the ventilator can be a very difficult and prolonged process and the best method (pressure support or a T-piece trial) remains a matter of debate[394-396]. In COPD patients that failed extubation, noninvasive ventilation facilitates weaning and prevents reintubation, but does not reduce mortality[89,92]. A report that included COPD and non-COPD patients showed that noninvasive mechanical ventilation in patients that failed extubation was not effective in averting the need for reintubation and did not reduce mortality[397].

Other measures. Further treatments that can be used in the hospital include: fluid administration (accurate monitoring of fluid balance is essential); nutrition (supplementary when needed); deep venous thrombosis prophylaxis (mechanical devices, heparins, etc.) in immobilized, polycythemic, or dehydrated patients with or without a history of thromboembolic disease; and sputum clearance (by stimulating coughing and low-volume forced expirations as in home management). Manual or mechanical chest percussion and postural drainage may be beneficial in patients producing > 25 ml sputum per day or with lobar atelectasis. There are no data to support the routine use of inhaled N-acetylcysteine or any other measures to increase mucus clearance. Pulmonary rehabilitation by itself is not indicated in COPD exacerbations but may be useful in patients after they recover from the acute event.

Hospital Discharge and Follow-Up

Insufficient clinical data exist to establish the optimal duration of hospitalization in individual patients developing an exacerbation of COPD[312,398,399]. Consensus and limited data support the discharge criteria listed in **Figure 5.4-11**. **Figure 5.4-12** provides items to include in a follow-up assessment 4 to 6 weeks after discharge from the hospital. Thereafter, follow-up is the same as for stable COPD, including supervising smoking cessation, monitoring the effectiveness of each drug treatment, and monitoring changes in spirometric parameters[355]. Home visits by a community nurse may permit earlier discharge of patients hospitalized with an exacerbation of COPD, without increasing readmission rates[190,400-402].

In patients hypoxemic during a COPD exacerbation, arterial blood gases and/or pulse oximetry should be evaluated prior to hospital discharge and in the following 3 months. If the patient remains hypoxemic, long-term supplemental oxygen therapy may be required.

Opportunities for prevention of future exacerbations should be reviewed before discharge, with particular attention to smoking cessation, current vaccination (influenza, pneumococcal vaccines), knowledge of current therapy including inhaler technique[32,403,404], and how to recognize symptoms of exacerbations.

Figure 5.4-11. Discharge Criteria for Patients with Exacerbations of COPD

- Inhaled β_2-agonist therapy is required no more frequently than every 4 hrs.
- Patient, if previously ambulatory, is able to walk across room.
- Patient is able to eat and sleep without frequent awakening by dyspnea.
- Patient has been clinically stable for 12-24 hrs.
- Arterial blood gases have been stable for 12-24 hrs.
- Patient (or home caregiver) fully understands correct use of medications.
- Follow-up and home care arrangements have been completed (e.g., visiting nurse, oxygen delivery, meal provisions).
- Patient, family, and physician are confident patient can manage successfully at home.

Figure 5.4-12. Items to Assess at Follow-Up Visit 4-6 Weeks After Discharge from Hospital for Exacerbations of COPD

- Ability to cope in usual environment
- Measurement of FEV_1
- Reassessment of inhaler technique
- Understanding of recommended treatment regimen
- Need for long-term oxygen therapy and/or home nebulizer (for patients with *Stage IV: Very Severe COPD*)

Pharmacotherapy known to reduce the number of exacerbations and hospitalizations and delay the time of first/next hospitalization, such as long-acting inhaled bronchodilators, inhaled glucocorticosteroids, and combination inhalers, should be specifically considered. Early outpatient pulmonary rehabilitation after hospitalization for a COPD exacerbation is safe and results in clinically significant improvements in exercise capacity and health status at 3 months[405]. Social problems should be discussed and principal caregivers identified if the patient has a significant persisting disability.

REFERENCES

1. Mannino DM, Ford ES, Redd SC. Obstructive and restrictive lung disease and markers of inflammation: data from the Third National Health and Nutrition Examination. *Am J Med* 2003;114(9):758-62.
2. Simon PM, Schwartzstein RM, Weiss JW, Fencl V, Teghtsoonian M, Weinberger SE. Distinguishable types of dyspnea in patients with shortness of breath. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1990;142(5):1009-14.

3. Elliott MW, Adams L, Cockcroft A, MacRae KD, Murphy K, Guz A. The language of breathlessness. Use of verbal descriptors by patients with cardiopulmonary disease. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1991;144(4):826-32.

4. Bestall JC, Paul EA, Garrod R, Garnham R, Jones PW, Wedzicha JA. Usefulness of the Medical Research Council (MRC) dyspnoea scale as a measure of disability in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax* 1999;54(7):581-6.

5. Nishimura K, Izumi T, Tsukino M, Oga T. Dyspnea is a better predictor of 5-year survival than airway obstruction in patients with COPD. *Chest* 2002;121(5):1434-40.

6. Celli BR, Rassulo J, Make BJ. Dyssynchronous breathing during arm but not leg exercise in patients with chronic airflow obstruction. *N Engl J Med* 1986;314(23):1485-90.

7. Georgopoulas D, Anthonisen NR. Symptoms and signs of COPD. In: Cherniack NS, ed. *Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease*. Toronto: WB Saunders Co; 1991:357-63.

8. Burrows B, Niden AH, Barclay WR, Kasik JE. Chronic obstructive lung disease II. Relationships of clinical and physiological findings to the severity of aiways obstruction. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1965;91:665-78.

9. Definition and classification of chronic bronchitis for clinical and epidemiological purposes. A report to the Medical Research Council by their Committee on the Aetiology of Chronic Bronchitis. *Lancet* 1965;1(7389):775-9.

10. Hill AT, Bayley D, Stockley RA. The interrelationship of sputum inflammatory markers in patients with chronic bronchitis. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1999;160(3):893-8.

11. Stockley RA, O'Brien C, Pye A, Hill SL. Relationship of sputum color to nature and outpatient management of acute exacerbations of COPD. *Chest* 2000;117(6):1638-45.

12. Schols AM, Soeters PB, Dingemans AM, Mostert R, Frantzen PJ, Wouters EF. Prevalence and characteristics of nutritional depletion in patients with stable COPD eligible for pulmonary rehabilitation. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1993;147(5):1151-6.

13. Schols AM, Slangen J, Volovics L, Wouters EF. Weight loss is a reversible factor in the prognosis of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1998;157 (6 Pt 1):1791-7.

14. Calverley PMA. Neuropsychological deficits in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. [editorial]. *Monaldi Arch Chest Dis* 1996;51(1):5-6.

15. Holguin F, Folch E, Redd SC, Mannino DM. Comorbidity and mortality in COPD-related hospitalizations in the United States, 1979 to 2001. *Chest* 2005;128(4):2005-11.

16. Kesten S, Chapman KR. Physician perceptions and management of COPD. *Chest* 1993;104(1):254-8.

17. Loveridge B, West P, Kryger MH, Anthonisen NR. Alteration in breathing pattern with progression of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1986;134(5):930-4.

18. Bianchi R, Gigliotti F, Romagnoli I, Lanini B, Castellani C, Grazzini M, *et al.* Chest wall kinematics and breathlessness during pursed-lip breathing in patients with COPD. *Chest* 2004;125(2):459-65.

19. Badgett RG, Tanaka DJ, Hunt DK, Jelley MJ, Feinberg LE, Steiner JF, *et al.* Can moderate chronic obstructive pulmonary disease be diagnosed by historical and physical findings alone? *Am J Med* 1993;94(2):188-96.

20. Pellegrino R, Viegi G, Brusasco V, Crapo RO, Burgos F, Casaburi R, *et al.* Interpretative strategies for lung function tests. *Eur Respir J* 2005;26(5):948-68.

21. Hardie JA, Buist AS, Vollmer WM, Ellingsen I, Bakke PS, Morkve O. Risk of over-diagnosis of COPD in asymptomatic elderly never-smokers. *Eur Respir J* 2002;20(5):1117-22.

22. Kelly CA, Gibson GJ. Relation between FEV1 and peak expiratory flow in patients with chronic airflow obstruction. *Thorax* 1988;43(4):335-6.

23. Jackson H, Hubbard R. Detecting chronic obstructive pulmonary disease using peak flow rate: cross sectional survey. *BMJ* 2003;327(7416):653-4.

24. Miller MR, Hankinson J, Brusasco V, Burgos F, Casaburi R, Coates A, *et al.* Standardisation of spirometry. *Eur Respir J* 2005;26(2):319-38.

25. Ferguson GT, Enright PL, Buist AS, Higgins MW. Office spirometry for lung health assessment in adults: A consensus statement from the National Lung Health Education Program. *Chest* 2000;117(4):1146-61.

26. Wilt TJ, Niewoehner D, Kim C, Kane RL, Linabery A, Tacklind J, *et al.* Use of spirometry for case finding, diagnosis, and management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). *Evid Rep Technol Assess (Summ)* 2005(121):1-7.

27. Kanner RE, Connett JE, Williams DE, Buist AS. Effects of randomized assignment to a smoking cessation intervention and changes in smoking habits on respiratory symptoms in smokers with early chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: the Lung Health Study. *Am J Med* 1999;106(4):410-6.

28. Lofdahl CG, Postma DS, Laitinen LA, Ohlsson SV, Pauwels RA, Pride NB. The European Respiratory Society study on chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (EUROSCOP): recruitment methods and strategies. *Respir Med* 1998;92(3):467-72.

29. Peto R, Speizer FE, Cochrane AL, Moore F, Fletcher CM, Tinker CM, *et al.* The relevance in adults of air-flow obstruction, but not of mucus hypersecretion, to mortality from chronic lung disease. Results from 20 years of prospective observation. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1983;128(3):491-500.

30. Jones PW. Health status measurement in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax* 2001;56(11):880-7.

31. Van Der Molen T, Willemse BW, Schokker S, Ten Hacken NH, Postma DS, Juniper EF. Development, validity and responsiveness of the Clinical COPD Questionnaire. *Health Qual Life Outcomes* 2003;1(1):13.

32. Pinto-Plata VM, Cote C, Cabral H, Taylor J, Celli BR. The 6-min walk distance: change over time and value as a predictor of survival in severe COPD. *Eur Respir J* 2004;23(1):28-33.

33. Oga T, Nishimura K, Tsukino M, Sato S, Hajiro T. Analysis of the factors related to mortality in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: role of exercise capacity and health status. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2003;167(4):544-9.

34. Casanova C, Cote C, de Torres JP, Aguirre-Jaime A, Marin JM, Pinto-Plata V, *et al.* Inspiratory-to-total lung capacity ratio predicts mortality in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2005;171(6):591-7.

35. Long term domiciliary oxygen therapy in chronic hypoxic cor pulmonale complicating chronic bronchitis and emphysema. Report of the Medical Research Council Working Party. *Lancet* 1981;1(8222):681-6.

36. Schols AM, Broekhuizen R, Weling-Scheepers CA, Wouters EF. Body composition and mortality in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2005;82(1):53-9.

37. Celli BR, Cote CG, Marin JM, Casanova C, Montes de Oca M, Mendez RA, *et al.* The body-mass index, airflow obstruction, dyspnea, and exercise capacity index in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *N Engl J Med* 2004;350(10):1005-12.

38. Burge PS, Calverley PM, Jones PW, Spencer S, Anderson JA. Prednisolone response in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: results from the ISOLDE study. *Thorax* 2003;58(8):654-8.

39. Calverley PM, Burge PS, Spencer S, Anderson JA, Jones PW. Bronchodilator reversibility testing in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax* 2003;58(8):659-64.

40. O'Donnell DE, Lam M, Webb KA. Spirometric correlates of improvement in exercise performance after anticholinergic therapy in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1999;160(2):542-9.

41. Fishman A, Martinez F, Naunheim K, Piantadosi S, Wise R, Ries A, *et al.* A randomized trial comparing lung-volume-reduction surgery with medical therapy for severe emphysema. *N Engl J Med* 2003;348(21):2059-73.

42. Roberts CM, Bugler JR, Melchor R, Hetzel MR, Spiro SG. Value of pulse oximetry in screening for long-term oxygen therapy requirement. *Eur Respir J* 1993;6(4):559-62.

43. Calverley PMA, Leggett RJ, McElderry L, Flenley DC. Cigarette smoking and secondary polycythemia in hypoxic cor pulmonale. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1982;125(5):507-10.

44. John M, Lange A, Hoernig S, Witt C, Anker SD. Prevalence of anemia in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: Comparison to other chronic diseases. *Int J Cardiol* 2005.

45. Chambellan A, Chailleux E, Similowski T. Prognostic value of the hematocrit in patients with severe COPD receiving long-term oxygen therapy. *Chest* 2005;128(3):1201-8.

46. Dekhuijzen PN, Folgering HT, van Herwaarden CL. Target-flow inspiratory muscle training during pulmonary rehabilitation in patients with COPD. *Chest* 1991;99(1):128-33.

47. Heijdra YF, Dekhuijzen PN, van Herwaarden CL, Folgering HT. Nocturnal saturation improves by target-flow inspiratory muscle training in patients with COPD. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1996;153(1):260-5.

48. Menzies D, Nair A, Williamson PA, Schembri S, Al-Khairalla MZ, Barnes M, *et al.* Respiratory symptoms, pulmonary function, and markers of inflammation among bar workers before and after a legislative ban on smoking in public places. *JAMA* 2006;296(14):1742-8.

49. Jindal SK, Aggarwal AN, Chaudhry K, Chhabra SK, D'Souza GA, Gupta D, et al. A multicentric study on epidemiology of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and its relationship with tobacco smoking and environmental tobacco smoke exposure. Indian *J Chest Dis Allied* Sci 2006;48(1):23-9.

50. Eisner MD, Balmes J, Katz BP, Trupin L, Yelin E, Blanc P. Lifetime environmental tobacco smoke exposure and the risk of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Environ Health Perspect* 2005;4:7-15.

51. Tager IB, Ngo L, Hanrahan JP. Maternal smoking during pregnancy. Effects on lung function during the first 18 months of life. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1995;152:977-83.

52. Yu-Fen L, Gilliand FD, Berhane K, McConnell R, Gauderman WJ, Rappaport EB, *et al.* Effects of in utero and environmental tobacco smoke on lung function in boys and girls with or without asthma. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2000;162:2097-104.

53. The Health Consequences of Involuntary Exposure to Tobacco Smoke: A Report of the Surgeon General, Department of Health and Human Services. Washington, DC, US; 2006.

54. Colley JR, Holland WW, Corkhill RT. Influence of passive smoking and parental phlegm on pneumonia and bronchitis in early childhood. *Lancet* 1974;2(7888):1031-4.

55. Anthonisen NR, Connett JE, Kiley JP, Altose MD, Bailey WC, Buist AS, *et al.* Effects of smoking intervention and the use of an inhaled anticholinergic bronchodilator on the rate of decline of FEV_1. The Lung Health Study. *JAMA* 1994;272(19):1497-505.

56. Anthonisen NR, Skeans MA, Wise RA, Manfreda J, Kanner RE, Connett JE, *et al.* The effects of smoking cessation intervention on 14.5 year mortality: a randomized clinical trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2005;142(4):233-9.

57. Tengs TO, Adams ME, Pliskin JS, Safran DG, Siegel JE, Weinstein MC, *et al.* Five-hundred life-saving interventions and their cost-effectiveness. *Risk Anal* 1995;15(3):369-90.

58. Parrott S, Godfrey C, Raw M, West R, McNeill A. Guidance for commissioners on the cost effectiveness of smoking cessation interventions. Health Educational Authority. *Thorax* 1998;53 Suppl 5 Pt 2:S1-38.

59. Fiore MC, Bailey WC, Cohen SJ. Smoking cessation: information for specialists. Rockville, MD: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, Agency for Health Care Policy and Research and Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; 1996.

60. The tobacco use and dependence clinical practice guideline panel, staff, and consortium representatives. A clinical practice guideline for treating tobacco use and dependence. *JAMA* 2000;28:3244-54.

61. American Medical Association. Guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of nicotine dependence: how to help patients stop smoking. Washington DC: American Medical Association; 1994.

62. Glynn TJ, Manley MW. How to help your patients stop smoking. A Nattional Cancer Institute manual for physicians. Bethesda, MD: US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health, National Cancer Institute; 1990.

63. Glynn TJ, Manley MW, Pechacek TF. Physician-initiated smoking cessation program: the National Cancer Institute trials. *Prog Clin Biol Res* 1990;339:11-25.

64. Baillie AJ, Mattick RP, Hall W, Webster P. Meta-analytic review of the efficacy of smoking cessation interventions. *Drug and Alcohol Review* 1994;13:157-70.

65. Wilson DH, Wakefield MA, Steven ID, Rohrsheim RA, Esterman AJ, Graham NM. "Sick of Smoking": evaluation of a targeted minimal smoking cessation intervention in general practice. *Med J Aust* 1990;152(10):518-21.

66. Britton J, Knox A. Helping people to stop smoking: the new smoking cessation guidelines. *Thorax* 1999;54(1):1-2.

67. Katz DA, Muehlenbruch DR, Brown RL, Fiore MC, Baker TB. Effectiveness of implementing the agency for healthcare research and quality smoking cessation clinical practice guideline: a randomized, controlled trial. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2004;96(8):594-603.

68. Kottke TE, Battista RN, DeFriese GH, Brekke ML. Attributes of successful smoking cessation interventions in medical practice. A meta-analysis of 39 controlled trials. *JAMA* 1988;259(19):2883-9.

69. Lancaster T, Stead L, Silagy C, Sowden A. Effectiveness of interventions to help people stop smoking: findings from the Cochrane Library. *BMJ* 2000;321(7257):355-8.

70. Schwartz JL. Review and evaluation of smoking cessation methods: United States and Canada, 1978-1985. Bethesda, MD: National Institutes of Health; 1987.

71. Fiore MC, Smith SS, Jorenby DE, Baker TB. The effectiveness of the nicotine patch for smoking cessation. A meta- analysis. *JAMA* 1994;271(24):1940-7.

72. Sachs DP, Benowitz NL. Individualizing medical treatment for tobacco dependence. *Eur Respir J* 1996;9(4):629-31.

73. Tashkin D, Kanner R, Bailey W, Buist S, Anderson P, Nides M, *et al.* Smoking cessation in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomised trial. *Lancet* 2001;357(9268):1571-5.

74. Jorenby DE, Leischow SJ, Nides MA, Rennard SI, Johnston JA, Hughes AR, *et al.* A controlled trial of sustained-release bupropion, a nicotine patch, or both for smoking cessation. *N Engl J Med* 1999;340(9):685-91.

75. Jorenby DE, Hays JT, Rigotti NA, Axoulay S, Watsky EJ, Williams KE, *et al.* Efficacy of varenicline, an alpha$_4$beta$_2$ nicotinic acetylcholine receptor partial agonist, vs placebo or sustained-release bupropion for smoking cessation: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2006;296(1):56-63.

76. Nides M, Oncken C, Gonzales D, Rennard S, Watsky EJ, Anziano R, *et al.* Smoking cessation with varenicline, a selective alpha4beta2 nicotinic receptor partial agonist: results from a 7-week, randomized, placebo- and bupropion-controlled trial with 1-year follow-up. *Arch Intern Med* 2006;166(15):1561-8.

77. Tonstad S, Tonnesen P, Hajek P, Williams KE, Billing CB, Reeves KR, *et al.* Effect of maintenance therapy with varenicline on smoking cessation: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2006;296(1):64-71.

78. Celli BR, Halbert RJ, Nordyke RJ, Schan B. Airway obstruction in never smokers: results from the Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey. *Am J Med* 2005;118:1364-72.

79. Kunzli N, Kaiser R, Medina M, Studnicka M, Chanel O, Filliger P, *et al.* Public-health impact of outdoor and traffic-related air pollution: a European assessment. *Lancet* 2000;356:795-801.

80. Ackermann-Liebrich U, Leuenberger P, Schwartz J, Schindler C, Monn C, Bolognini G, *et al.* Lung function and long term exposure to air pollutants in Switzerland. Study on Air Pollution and Lung Diseases in Adults (SAPALDIA) Team. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1997;155(1):122-9.

81. Oroczo-Levi M, Garcia -Aymerich J, Villar J, Ramirez-Sarmiento A, Anto JM, Gea J. Wood smoke exposure and risk of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Eur Respir J* 2006;27:542-6.

82. Chapman RS, Xingzhou H, Blair AE, Lan Q. Improvement in household stoves and risk of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease in Xuanwei, China: retrospective cohort study. *Br Med J* 2005;331:1050.

83. Ghambarian MH, Feenstra TL, Zwanikken P, Kalinina AM. Can prevention be improved? Proposal for an integrated intervention strategy. *Preventive Medicine* 2004;39:337-43.

84. Nichter M. Introducing tobacco cessation in developing countries: an overview of Quit Tobacco International. *Tobacco Control* 2006;15(Supplement 1):12-7.

85. Reis AL. Response to bronchodilators. In: Clausen J, ed. Pulmonary function testing: guidelines and controversies. *New York: Academic Press*; 1982.

86. Janelli LM, Scherer YK, Schmieder LE. Can a pulmonary health teaching program alter patients' ability to cope with COPD? *Rehabil Nurs* 1991;16(4):199-202.

87. Ashikaga T, Vacek PM, Lewis SO. Evaluation of a community-based education program for individuals with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *J Rehabil* 1980;46(2):23-7.

88. Toshima MT, Kaplan RM, Ries AL. Experimental evaluation of rehabilitation in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: short-term effects on exercise endurance and health status. *Health Psychol* 1990;9(3):237-52.

89. Celli BR. Pulmonary rehabilitation in patients with COPD. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1995;152(3):861-4.

90. Stewart MA. Effective physician-patient communication and health outcomes: a review. *CMAJ* 1995;152(9):1423-33.

91. Clark NM, Nothwehr F, Gong M, Evans D, Maiman LA, Hurwitz ME, *et al.* Physician-patient partnership in managing chronic illness. *Acad Med* 1995;70(11):957-9.

92. Heffner JE, Fahy B, Hilling L, Barbieri C. Outcomes of advance directive education of pulmonary rehabilitation patients. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1997;155(3):1055-9.

93. Taylor SJ, Candy B, Bryar RM, Ramsay J, Vrijhoef HJ, Esmond G, *et al.* Effectiveness of innovations in nurse led chronic disease management for patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: systematic review of evidence. *BMJ* 2005;331(7515):485.

94. Bourbeau J, Julien M, Maltais F, Rouleau M, Beaupre A, Begin R, *et al.* Reduction of hospital utilization in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a disease-specific self-management intervention. *Arch Intern Med* 2003;163(5):585-91.

95. Tougaard L, Krone T, Sorknaes A, Ellegaard H. Economic benefits of teaching patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease about their illness. The PASTMA Group. *Lancet* 1992;339(8808):1517-20.

96. Gallefoss F. The effects of patient education in COPD in a 1-year follow-up randomised, controlled trial. *Patient Educ Couns* 2004;52(3):259-66.

97. Monninkhof E, van der Valk P, van der Palen J, van Herwaarden C, Zielhuis G. Effects of a comprehensive self-management programme in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Eur Respir J* 2003;22(5):815-20.

98. Pauwels RA, Lofdahl CG, Laitinen LA, Schouten JP, Postma DS, Pride NB, *et al.* Long-term treatment with inhaled budesonide in persons with mild chronic obstructive pulmonary disease who continue smoking. European Respiratory Society Study on Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease. *N Engl J Med* 1999;340(25):1948-53.

99. Vestbo J, Sorensen T, Lange P, Brix A, Torre P, Viskum K. Long-term effect of inhaled budesonide in mild and moderate chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 1999;353(9167):1819-23.

100. Burge PS, Calverley PM, Jones PW, Spencer S, Anderson JA, Maslen TK. Randomised, double blind, placebo controlled study of fluticasone propionate in patients with moderate to severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: the ISOLDE trial. *BMJ* 2000;320(7245):1297-303.

101. Vestbo J, Pauwels R, Anderson JA, Jones P, Calverley P. Early onset of effect of salmeterol and fluticasone propionate in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax* 2005;60(4):301-4.

102. Calverley PMA. Symptomatic bronchodilator treatment. In: Calverley PMA, Pride NB, eds. *Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease*. London: Chapman and Hall; 1995:419-45.

103. Belman MJ, Botnick WC, Shin JW. Inhaled bronchodilators reduce dynamic hyperinflation during exercise in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1996;153(3):967-75.

104. Berger R, Smith D. Effect of inhaled metaproterenol on exercise performance in patients with stable "fixed" airway obstruction. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1988;138(3):624-9.

105. Hay JG, Stone P, Carter J, Church S, Eyre-Brook A, Pearson MG, *et al.* Bronchodilator reversibility, exercise performance and breathlessness in stable chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Eur Respir J* 1992;5(6):659-64.

106. Vathenen AS, Britton JR, Ebden P, Cookson JB, Wharrad HJ, Tattersfield AE. High-dose inhaled albuterol in severe chronic airflow limitation. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1988;138(4):850-5.

107. Gross NJ, Petty TL, Friedman M, Skorodin MS, Silvers GW, Donohue JF. Dose response to ipratropium as a nebulized solution in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. A three-center study. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1989;139(5):1188-91.

108. Chrystyn H, Mulley BA, Peake MD. Dose response relation to oral theophylline in severe chronic obstructive airways disease. *BMJ* 1988;297(6662):1506-10.

109. Higgins BG, Powell RM, Cooper S, Tattersfield AE. Effect of salbutamol and ipratropium bromide on airway calibre and bronchial reactivity in asthma and chronic bronchitis. *Eur Respir J* 1991;4(4):415-20.

110. Ericsson CH, Svartengren K, Svartengren M, Mossberg B, Philipson K, Blomquist M, *et al.* Repeatability of airway deposition and tracheobronchial clearance rate over three days in chronic bronchitis. *Eur Respir J* 1995;8(11):1886-93.

111. Kim CS, Kang TC. Comparative measurement of lung deposition of inhaled fine particles in normal subjects and patients with obstructive airway disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1997;155(3):899-905.

112. Boe J, Dennis JH, O'Driscoll BR, Bauer TT, Carone M, Dautzenberg B, *et al.* European Respiratory Society Guidelines on the use of nebulizers. *Eur Respir J* 2001;18(1):228-42.

113. O'Driscoll BR, Kay EA, Taylor RJ, Weatherby H, Chetty MC, Bernstein A. A long-term prospective assessment of home nebulizer treatment. *Respir Med* 1992;86(4):317-25.

114. Jenkins SC, Heaton RW, Fulton TJ, Moxham J. Comparison of domiciliary nebulized salbutamol and salbutamol from a metered-dose inhaler in stable chronic airflow limitation. *Chest* 1987;91(6):804-7.

115. Ikeda A, Nishimura K, Koyama H, Izumi T. Bronchodilating effects of combined therapy with clinical dosages of ipratropium bromide and salbutamol for stable COPD: comparison with ipratropium bromide alone. *Chest* 1995;107(2):401-5.

116. Guyatt GH, Townsend M, Pugsley SO, Keller JL, Short HD, Taylor DW, *et al.* Bronchodilators in chronic air-flow limitation. Effects on airway function, exercise capacity, and quality of life. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1987;135(5):1069-74.

117. Man WD, Mustfa N, Nikoletou D, Kaul S, Hart N, Rafferty GF, *et al.* Effect of salmeterol on respiratory muscle activity during exercise in poorly reversible COPD. *Thorax* 2004;59(6):471-6.

118. O'Donnell DE, Fluge T, Gerken F, Hamilton A, Webb K, Aguilaniu B, *et al.* Effects of tiotropium on lung hyperinflation, dyspnoea and exercise tolerance in COPD. *Eur Respir J* 2004;23(6):832-40.

119. Vincken W, van Noord JA, Greefhorst AP, Bantje TA, Kesten S, Korducki L, *et al.* Improved health outcomes in patients with COPD during 1 yr's treatment with tiotropium. *Eur Respir J* 2002;19(2):209-16.

120. Mahler DA, Donohue JF, Barbee RA, Goldman MD, Gross NJ, Wisniewski ME, *et al.* Efficacy of salmeterol xinafoate in the treatment of COPD. *Chest* 1999;115(4):957-65.

121. Dahl R, Greefhorst LA, Nowak D, Nonikov V, Byrne AM, Thomson MH, *et al.* Inhaled formoterol dry powder versus ipratropium bromide in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2001;164(5):778-84.

122. Oostenbrink JB, Rutten-van Molken MP, Al MJ, Van Noord JA, Vincken W. One-year cost-effectiveness of tiotropium versus ipratropium to treat chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Eur Respir J* 2004;23(2):241-9.

123. Niewoehner DE, Rice K, Cote C, Paulson D, Cooper JA, Jr., Korducki L, *et al.* Prevention of exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease with tiotropium, a once-daily inhaled anticholinergic bronchodilator: a randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2005;143(5):317-26.

124. Casaburi R, Kukafka D, Cooper CB, Witek TJ, Jr., Kesten S. Improvement in exercise tolerance with the combination of tiotropium and pulmonary rehabilitation in patients with COPD. *Chest* 2005;127(3):809-17.

125. Shim CS, Williams MH, Jr. Bronchodilator response to oral aminophylline and terbutaline versus aerosol albuterol in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Med* 1983;75(4):697-701.

126. COMBIVENT Inhalation Aerosol Study Group. In chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, a combination of ipratropium and albuterol is more effective than either agent alone. An 85-day multicenter trial. *Chest* 1994;105(5):1411-9.

127. van Schayck CP, Folgering H, Harbers H, Maas KL, van Weel C. Effects of allergy and age on responses to salbutamol and ipratropium bromide in moderate asthma and chronic bronchitis. *Thorax* 1991;46(5):355-9.

128. Datta D, Vitale A, Lahiri B, ZuWallack R. An evaluation of nebulized levalbuterol in stable COPD. *Chest* 2003;124(3):844-9.

129. Ulrik CS. Efficacy of inhaled salmeterol in the management of smokers with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a single centre randomised, double blind, placebo controlled, crossover study. *Thorax* 1995;50(7):750-4.

130. Boyd G, Morice AH, Pounsford JC, Siebert M, Peslis N, Crawford C. An evaluation of salmeterol in the treatment of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) [published erratum appears in *Eur Respir J* 1997 Jul;10(7):1696]. *Eur Respir J* 1997;10(4):815-21.

131. Cazzola M, Matera MG, Santangelo G, Vinciguerra A, Rossi F, D'Amato G. Salmeterol and formoterol in partially reversible severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a dose-response study. *Respir Med* 1995;89(5):357-62.

132. Rossi A, Kristufek P, Levine BE, Thomson MH, Till D, Kottakis J, *et al.* Comparison of the efficacy, tolerability, and safety of formoterol dry powder and oral, slow-release theophylline in the treatment of COPD. *Chest* 2002;121(4):1058-69.

133. Lipworth BJ, McDevitt DG, Struthers AD. Hypokalemic and ECG sequelae of combined beta-agonist/diuretic therapy. Protection by conventional doses of spironolactone but not triamterene. *Chest* 1990;98(4):811-5.

134. Uren NG, Davies SW, Jordan SL, Lipkin DP. Inhaled bronchodilators increase maximum oxygen consumption in chronic left ventricular failure. *Eur Heart J* 1993;14(6):744-50.

135. Khoukaz G, Gross NJ. Effects of salmeterol on arterial blood gases in patients with stable chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Comparison with albuterol and ipratropium. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1999;160(3):1028-30.

136. Barnes PJ. Bronchodilators: basic pharmacology. In: Calverley PMA, Pride NB, eds. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *London: Chapman and Hall*; 1995:391-417.

137. Disse B, Speck GA, Rominger KL, Witek TJ, Jr., Hammer R. Tiotropium (Spiriva): mechanistical considerations and clinical profile in obstructive lung disease. *Life Sci* 1999;64(6-7):457-64.

138. van Noord JA, Bantje TA, Eland ME, Korducki L, Cornelissen PJ. A randomised controlled comparison of tiotropium nd ipratropium in the treatment of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. The Dutch Tiotropium Study Group. *Thorax* 2000;55(4):289-94.

139. Casaburi R, Mahler DA, Jones PW, Wanner A, San PG, ZuWallack RL, *et al.* A long-term evaluation of once-daily inhaled tiotropium in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Eur Respir J* 2002;19(2):217-24.

140. Spencer S, Calverley PM, Burge PS, Jones PW. Impact of preventing exacerbations on deterioration of health status in COPD. *Eur Respir J* 2004;23(5):698-702.

141. Anthonisen NR, Connett JE, Enright PL, Manfreda J. Hospitalizations and mortality in the Lung Health Study. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2002;166(3):333-9.

142. Aubier M. Pharmacotherapy of respiratory muscles. *Clin Chest Med* 1988;9(2):311-24.

143. Moxham J. Aminophylline and the respiratory muscles: an alternative view. *Clin Chest Med* 1988;9(2):325-36.

144. Murciano D, Auclair MH, Pariente R, Aubier M. A randomized, controlled trial of theophylline in patients with severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *N Engl J Med* 1989;320(23):1521-5.

145. McKay SE, Howie CA, Thomson AH, Whiting B, Addis GJ. Value of theophylline treatment in patients handicapped by chronic obstructive lung disease. *Thorax* 1993;48(3):227-32.

146. Taylor DR, Buick B, Kinney C, Lowry RC, McDevitt DG. The efficacy of orally administered theophylline, inhaled salbutamol, and a combination of the two as chronic therapy in the management of chronic bronchitis with reversible air-flow obstruction. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1985;131(5):747-51.

147. The COMBIVENT Inhalation Solution Study Group. Routine nebulized ipratropium and albuterol together are better than either alone in COPD. *Chest* 1997;112(6):1514-21.

148. Gross N, Tashkin D, Miller R, Oren J, Coleman W, Linberg S. Inhalation by nebulization of albuterol-ipratropium combination (Dey combination) is superior to either agent alone in the treatment of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Dey Combination Solution Study Group. *Respiration* 1998;65(5):354-62.

149. van Noord JA, de Munck DR, Bantje TA, Hop WC, Akveld ML, Bommer AM. Long-term treatment of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease with salmeterol and the additive effect of ipratropium. *Eur Respir J* 2000;15(5):878-85.

150. ZuWallack RL, Mahler DA, Reilly D, Church N, Emmett A, Rickard K, *et al.* Salmeterol plus theophylline combination therapy in the treatment of COPD. *Chest* 2001;119(6):1661-70.

151. Bellia V, Foresi A, Bianco S, Grassi V, Olivieri D, Bensi G, *et al.* Efficacy and safety of oxitropium bromide, theophylline and their combination in COPD patients: a double-blind, randomized, multicentre study (BREATH Trial). *Respir Med* 2002;96(11):881-9.

152. Guyatt GH, Berman LB, Townsend M, Pugsley SO, Chambers LW. A measure of quality of life for clinical trials in chronic lung disease. *Thorax* 1987;42(10):773-8.

153. Callahan CM, Dittus RS, Katz BP. Oral corticosteroid therapy for patients with stable chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. A meta-analysis. *Ann Intern Med* 1991;114(3):216-23.

154. Postma DS, Peters I, Steenhuis EJ, Sluiter HJ. Moderately severe chronic airflow obstruction. Can corticosteroids slow down obstruction? *Eur Respir J* 1988;1(1):22-6.

155. Postma DS, Steenhuis EJ, van der Weele LT, Sluiter HJ. Severe chronic airflow obstruction: can corticosteroids slow down progression? *Eur J Respir Dis* 1985;67(1):56-64.

156. Decramer M, de Bock V, Dom R. Functional and histologic picture of steroid-induced myopathy in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1996;153 (6 Pt 1):1958-64.

157. Decramer M, Lacquet LM, Fagard R, Rogiers P. Corticosteroids contribute to muscle weakness in chronic airflow obstruction. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1994;150(1):11-6.

158. Decramer M, Stas KJ. Corticosteroid-induced myopathy involving respiratory muscles in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease or asthma. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1992;146(3):800-2.

159. Renkema TE, Schouten JP, Koeter GH, Postma DS. Effects of long-term treatment with corticosteroids in COPD. *Chest* 1996;109(5):1156-62.

160. Rice KL, Rubins JB, Lebahn F, Parenti CM, Duane PG, Kuskowski M, *et al.* Withdrawal of chronic systemic corticosteroids in patients with COPD: a randomized trial. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2000;162(1):174-8.

161. The Lung Health Study Research Group. Effect of inhaled triamcinolone on the decline in pulmonary function in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: Lung Health Study II. *N Engl J Med* 2000;343:1902-9.

162. Mahler DA, Wire P, Horstman D, Chang CN, Yates J, Fischer T, *et al.* Effectiveness of fluticasone propionate and salmeterol combination delivered via the Diskus device in the treatment of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2002;166(8):1084-91.

163. Jones PW, Willits LR, Burge PS, Calverley PM. Disease severity and the effect of fluticasone propionate on chronic obstructive pulmonary disease exacerbations. *Eur Respir J* 2003;21(1):68-73.

164. Calverley P, Pauwels R, Vestbo J, Jones P, Pride N, Gulsvik A, *et al.* Combined salmeterol and fluticasone in the treatment of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2003;361(9356):449-56.

165. Szafranski W, Cukier A, Ramirez A, Menga G, Sansores R, Nahabedian S, *et al.* Efficacy and safety of budesonide/formoterol in the management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Eur Respir J* 2003;21(1):74-81.

166. van der Valk P, Monninkhof E, van der Palen J, Zielhuis G, van Herwaarden C. Effect of discontinuation of inhaled corticosteroids in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: the COPE study. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2002;166(10):1358-63.

167. Sin DD, Wu L, Anderson JA, Anthonisen NR, Buist AS, Burge PS, *et al.* Inhaled corticosteroids and mortality in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax* 2005;60(12):992-7.

168. Hanania NA, Darken P, Horstman D, Reisner C, Lee B, Davis S, *et al.* The efficacy and safety of fluticasone propionate (250 microg)/salmeterol (50 microg) combined in the Diskus inhaler for the treatment of COPD. *Chest* 2003;124(3):834-43.

169. Calverley PM, Boonsawat W, Cseke Z, Zhong N, Peterson S, Olsson H. Maintenance therapy with budesonide and formoterol in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Eur Respir J* 2003;22(6):912-9.

170. Johnell O, Pauwels R, Lofdahl CG, Laitinen LA, Postma DS, Pride NB, *et al.* Bone mineral density in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease treated with budesonide Turbuhaler. *Eur Respir J* 2002;19(6):1058-63.

171. Workshop Report: Global Strategy for Diagnosis, Management and Prevention of COPD - Updated 2005. *Available from http://wwwgoldcopdorg* 2005.

172. Wongsurakiat P, Maranetra KN, Wasi C, Kositanont U, Dejsomritrutai W, Charoenratanakul S. Acute respiratory illness in patients with COPD and the effectiveness of influenza vaccination: a randomized controlled study. *Chest* 2004;125(6):2011-20.

173. Nichol KL, Margolis KL, Wuorenma J, Von Sternberg T. The efficacy and cost effectiveness of vaccination against influenza among elderly persons living in the community. *N Engl J Med* 1994;331(12):778-84.

174. Wongsurakiat P, Lertakyamanee J, Maranetra KN, Jongriratanakul S, Sangkaew S. Economic evaluation of influenza vaccination in Thai chronic obstructive pulmonary disease patients. *J Med Assoc Thai* 2003;86(6):497-508.

175. Edwards KM, Dupont WD, Westrich MK, Plummer WD, Jr., Palmer PS, Wright PF. A randomized controlled trial of cold-adapted and inactivated vaccines for the prevention of influenza A disease. *J Infect Dis* 1994;169(1):68-76.

176. Hak E, van Essen GA, Buskens E, Stalman W, de Melker RA. Is immunising all patients with chronic lung disease in the community against influenza cost effective? Evidence from a general practice based clinical prospective cohort study in Utrecht, The Netherlands. *J Epidemiol Community Health* 1998;52(2):120-5.

177. Woodhead M, Blasi F, Ewig S, Huchon G, Ieven M, Ortqvist A, *et al.* Guidelines for the management of adult lower respiratory tract infections. *Eur Respir J* 2005;26(6):1138-80.

178. Jackson LA, Neuzil KM, Yu O, Benson P, Barlow WE, Adams AL, *et al.* Effectiveness of pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine in older adults. *N Engl J Med* 2003;348(18):1747-55.

179. Prevention of Pneumococcal Disease: Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR 1997;46 (RR-08):1-24 http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/00047135.htm.

180. Alfageme I, Vazquez R, Reyes N, Munoz J, Fernandez A, Hernandez M, *et al.* Clinical efficiacy of anti-pneumococcal vaccination in patients with COPD. *Thorax* 2006;61:189-95.

181. Francis RS, May JR, Spicer CC. Chemotherapy of bronchitis: influence of penicillin and tetracylcline administered daily, or intermittently for exacerbations. *BMJ* 1961;2:979-85.

182. Francis RS, Spicer CC. Chemotherapy in chronic bronchitis: influence of daily penicillin and teracycline on exacerbations and their cost. A report to the research committee of the British Tuberculosis Assoication by their Chronic Bronchitis subcommittee. *BMJ* 1960;1:297-303.

183. Fletcher CM, Ball JD, Carstairs LW, Couch AHC, Crofton JM, Edge JR, *et al.* Value of chemoprophylaxis and chemotherapy in early chronic bronchitis. A report to the Medical Research Council by their Working Party on trials of chemotherpay in early chronic bronchitis. *BMJ* 1966;1(5499)(5499):1317-22.

184. Johnston RN, McNeill RS, Smith DH, Dempster MB, Nairn JR, Purvis MS, *et al.* Five-year winter chemoprophylaxis for chronic bronchitis. *Br Med J* 1969;4(678):265-9.

185. Isada CM, Stoller JK. Chronic bronchitis: the role of antibiotics. In: Niederman MS, Sarosi GA, Glassroth J, eds. *Respiratory infections: a scientific basis for management.* London: WB Saunders; 1994:621-33.

186. Siafakas NM, Bouros D. Management of acute exacerbation of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. In: Postma DS, Siafakas NM, eds. *Management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.* Sheffield: ERS Monograph; 1998:264-77.

187. Allegra L, Cordaro CI, Grassi C. Prevention of acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive bronchitis with carbocysteine lysine salt monohydrate: a multicenter, double- blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Respiration* 1996;63(3):174-80.

188. Guyatt GH, Townsend M, Kazim F, Newhouse MT. A controlled trial of ambroxol in chronic bronchitis. *Chest* 1987;92(4):618-20.

189. Petty TL. The National Mucolytic Study. Results of a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study of iodinated glycerol in chronic obstructive bronchitis. *Chest* 1990;97(1):75-83.

190. Siafakas NM, Vermeire P, Pride NB, Paoletti P, Gibson J, Howard P, *et al.* Optimal assessment and management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). The European Respiratory Society Task Force. *Eur Respir J* 1995;8(8):1398-420.

191. American Thoracic Society. Standards for the diagnosis and care of patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) and asthma. Adopted by the ATS Board of Directors, November 1986. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1987;136(1):225-44.

192. Hansen NC, Skriver A, Brorsen-Riis L, Balslov S, Evald T, Maltbaek N, *et al.* Orally administered N-acetylcysteine may improve general well-being in patients with mild chronic bronchitis. *Respir Med* 1994;88(7):531-5.

193. British Thoracic Society Research Committee. Oral N-acetylcysteine and exacerbation rates in patients with chronic bronchitis and severe airways obstruction. *Thorax* 1985;40(11):832-5.

194. Boman G, Backer U, Larsson S, Melander B, Wahlander L. Oral acetylcysteine reduces exacerbation rate in chronic bronchitis: report of a trial organized by the Swedish Society for Pulmonary Diseases. *Eur J Respir Dis* 1983;64(6):405-15.

195. Rasmussen JB, Glennow C. Reduction in days of illness after long-term treatment with N- acetylcysteine controlled-release tablets in patients with chronic bronchitis. *Eur Respir J* 1988;1(4):351-5.

196. Decramer M, Rutten-van Molken M, Dekhuijzen PN, Troosters T, van Herwaarden C, Pellegrino R, *et al.* Effects of N-acetylcysteine on outcomes in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (Bronchitis Randomized on NAC Cost-Utility Study, BRONCUS): a randomised placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2005;365(9470):1552-60.

197. Collet JP, Shapiro P, Ernst P, Renzi T, Ducruet T, Robinson A. Effects of an immunostimulating agent on acute exacerbations and hospitalizations in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. The PARI-IS Study Steering Committee and Research Group. Prevention of Acute Respiratory Infection by an Immunostimulant. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1997;156(6):1719-24.

198. Li J, Zheng JP, Yuan JP, Zeng GQ, Zhong NS, Lin CY. Protective effect of a bacterial extract against acute exacerbation in patients with chronic bronchitis accompanied by chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Chin Med J (Engl)* 2004;117(6):828-34.

199. Anthonisen NR. OM-8BV for COPD. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1997;156(6):1713-4.

200. Irwin RS, Boulet LP, Cloutier MM, Fuller R, Gold PM, Hoffstein V, *et al.* Managing cough as a defense mechanism and as a symptom. A consensus panel report of the American College of Chest Physicians. *Chest* 1998;114(2 Suppl Managing):133S-81S.

201. Barbera JA, Roger N, Roca J, Rovira I, Higenbottam TW, Rodriguez-Roisin R. Worsening of pulmonary gas exchange with nitric oxide inhalation in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Lancet* 1996;347(8999):436-40.

202. Jones AT, Evans TW. NO: COPD and beyond. *Thorax* 1997;52 Suppl 3:S16-21.

203. Jennings AL, Davies AN, Higgins JP, Gibbs JS, Broadley KE. A systematic review of the use of opioids in the management of dyspnoea. *Thorax* 2002;57(11):939-44.

204. Eiser N, Denman WT, West C, Luce P. Oral diamorphine: lack of effect on dyspnoea and exercise tolerance in the "pink puffer" syndrome. *Eur Respir J* 1991;4(8):926-31.

205. Young IH, Daviskas E, Keena VA. Effect of low dose nebulised morphine on exercise endurance in patients with chronic lung disease. *Thorax* 1989;44(5):387-90.

206. Woodcock AA, Gross ER, Gellert A, Shah S, Johnson M, Geddes DM. Effects of dihydrocodeine, alcohol, and caffeine on breathlessness and exercise tolerance in patients with chronic obstructive lung disease and normal blood gases. *N Engl J Med* 1981;305(27):1611-6.

207. Rice KL, Kronenberg RS, Hedemark LL, Niewoehner DE. Effects of chronic administration of codeine and promethazine on breathlessness and exercise tolerance in patients with chronic airflow obstruction. *Br J Dis Chest* 1987;81(3):287-92.

208. Poole PJ, Veale AG, Black PN. The effect of sustained-release morphine on breathlessness and quality of life in severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1998;157(6 Pt 1):1877-80.

209. Nici L, Donner C, Wouters E, ZuWallack R, Ambrosino N, Bourbeau J, *et al.* American Thoracic Society/European Respiratory Society statement on pulmonary rehabilitation. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2006;173(12):1390-413.

210. American Thoracic Society. Pulmonary rehabilitation-1999. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1999;159(5 Pt 1):1666-82.

211. Fishman AP. Pulmonary rehabilitation research. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1994;149(3 Pt 1):825-33.

212. Pulmonary rehabilitation: joint ACCP/AACVPR evidence-based guidelines. ACCP/AACVPR Pulmonary Rehabilitation Guidelines Panel. American College of Chest Physicians. American Association of Cardiovascular and Pulmonary Rehabilitation. *Chest* 1997;112(5):1363-96.

213. Lacasse Y, Wong E, Guyatt GH, King D, Cook DJ, Goldstein RS. Meta-analysis of respiratory rehabilitation in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Lancet* 1996;348(9035):1115-9.

214. Goldstein RS, Gort EH, Stubbing D, Avendano MA, Guyatt GH. Randomised controlled trial of respiratory rehabilitation. *Lancet* 1994;344(8934):1394-7.

215. Wijkstra PJ, Van Altena R, Kraan J, Otten V, Postma DS, Koeter GH. Quality of life in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease improves after rehabilitation at home. *Eur Respir J* 1994;7(2):269-73.

216. Wijkstra PJ, Ten Vergert EM, van Altena R, Otten V, Kraan J, Postma DS, *et al.* Long term benefits of rehabilitation at home on quality of life and exercise tolerance in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax* 1995;50(8):824-8.

217. O'Donnell DE, McGuire M, Samis L, Webb KA. The impact of exercise reconditioning on breathlessness in severe chronic airflow limitation. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1995;152 (6 Pt 1):2005-13.

218. Lake FR, Henderson K, Briffa T, Openshaw J, Musk AW. Upper-limb and lower-limb exercise training in patients with chronic airflow obstruction. *Chest* 1990;97(5):1077-82.

219. Ries AL, Ellis B, Hawkins RW. Upper extremity exercise training in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Chest* 1988;93(4):688-92.

220. Martinez FJ, Vogel PD, Dupont DN, Stanopoulos I, Gray A, Beamis JF. Supported arm exercise vs unsupported arm exercise in the rehabilitation of patients with severe chronic airflow obstruction. *Chest* 1993;103(5):1397-402.

221. Troosters T, Casaburi R, Gosselink R, Decramer M. Pulmonary rehabilitation in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2005;172(1):19-38.

222. Berry MJ, Rejeski WJ, Adair NE, Zaccaro D. Exercise rehabilitation and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease stage. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1999;160(4):1248-53.

223. Foglio K, Bianchi L, Bruletti G, Battista L, Pagani M, Ambrosino N. Long-term effectiveness of pulmonary rehabilitation in patients with chronic airway obstruction. *Eur Respir J* 1999;13(1):125-32.

224. Young P, Dewse M, Fergusson W, Kolbe J. Improvements in outcomes for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) attributable to a hospital-based respiratory rehabilitation programme. *Aust N Z J Med* 1999;29(1):59-65.

225. Griffiths TL, Burr ML, Campbell IA, Lewis-Jenkins V, Mullins J, Shiels K, *et al.* Results at 1 year of outpatient multidisciplinary pulmonary rehabilitation: a randomised controlled trial [published erratum appears in Lancet 2000;355:1280]. *Lancet* 2000;355(9201):362-8.

226. McGavin CR, Gupta SP, Lloyd EL, McHardy GJ. Physical rehabilitation for the chronic bronchitic: results of a controlled trial of exercises in the home. *Thorax* 1977;32(3):307-11.

227. Wedzicha JA, Bestall JC, Garrod R, Garnham R, Paul EA, Jones PW. Randomized controlled trial of pulmonary rehabilitation in severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease patients, stratified with the MRC dyspnoea scale. *Eur Respir J* 1998;12(2):363-9.

228. Singh SJ, Morgan MD, Scott S, Walters D, Hardman AE. Development of a shuttle walking test of disability in patients with chronic airways obstruction. *Thorax* 1992;47(12):1019-24.

229. Mahler DA. Pulmonary rehabilitation. *Chest* 1998;113 (4 Suppl):263S-8S.

230. American College of Sports Medicine position stand. The recommended quantity and quality of exercise for developing and maintaining cardiorespiratory and muscular fitness in healthy adults. *Med Sci Sports Exerc* 1990;22(2):265-74.

231. Vogiatzis I, Nanas S, Roussos C. Interval training as an alternative modality to continuous exercise in patients with COPD. *Eur Respir J* 2002;20(1):12-9.

232. Vogiatzis I, Nanas S, Kastanakis E, Georgiadou O, Papazahou O, Roussos C. Dynamic hyperinflation and tolerance to interval exercise in patients with advanced COPD. *Eur Respir J* 2004;24(3):385-90.

233. Yohannes AM, Connolly MJ. Early mobilization with walking aids following hospital admission with acute exacerbation of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Clin Rehabil* 2003;17(5):465-71.

234. Roomi J, Yohannes AM, Connolly MJ. The effect of walking aids on exercise capacity and oxygenation in elderly patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Age Ageing* 1998;27(6):703-6.

235. Honeyman P, Barr P, Stubbing DG. Effect of a walking aid on disability, oxygenation, and breathlessness in patients with chronic airflow limitation. *J Cardiopulm Rehabil* 1996;16(1):63-7.

236. Emtner M, Porszasz J, Burns M, Somfay A, Casaburi R. Benefits of supplemental oxygen in exercise training in nonhypoxemic chronic obstructive pulmonary disease patients. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2003;168(9):1034-42.

237. Palange P, Valli G, Onorati P, Antonucci R, Paoletti P, Rosato A, *et al.* Effect of heliox on lung dynamic hyperinflation, dyspnea, and exercise endurance capacity in COPD patients. *J Appl Physiol* 2004;97(5):1637-42.

238. Behnke M, Taube C, Kirsten D, Lehnigk B, Jorres RA, Magnussen H. Home-based exercise is capable of preserving hospital-based improvements in severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Respir Med* 2000;94(12):1184-91.

239. Finnerty JP, Keeping I, Bullough I, Jones J. The effectiveness of outpatient pulmonary rehabilitation in chronic lung disease: a randomized controlled trial. *Chest* 2001;119(6):1705-10.

240. Green RH, Singh SJ, Williams J, Morgan MD. A randomised controlled trial of four weeks versus seven weeks of pulmonary rehabilitation in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax* 2001;56(2):143-5.

241. Ries AL, Kaplan RM, Myers R, Prewitt LM. Maintenance after pulmonary rehabilitation in chronic lung disease: a randomized trial. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2003;167(6):880-8.

242. Belman MJ, Botnick WC, Nathan SD, Chon KH. Ventilatory load characteristics during ventilatory muscle training. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1994;149(4 Pt 1):925-9.

243. Lotters F, van Tol B, Kwakkel G, Gosselink R. Effects of controlled inspiratory muscle training in patients with COPD: a meta-analysis. *Eur Respir J* 2002;20(3):570-6.

244. Bernard S, Whittom F, Leblanc P, Jobin J, Belleau R, Berube C, *et al.* Aerobic and strength training in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1999;159(3):896-901.

245. Engelen MP, Schols AM, Baken WC, Wesseling GJ, Wouters EF. Nutritional depletion in relation to respiratory and peripheral skeletal muscle function in out-patients with COPD. *Eur Respir J* 1994;7(10):1793-7.

246. Wilson DO, Rogers RM, Wright EC, Anthonisen NR. Body weight in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. The National Institutes of Health Intermittent Positive-Pressure Breathing Trial. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1989;139(6):1435-8.

247. Gray-Donald K, Gibbons L, Shapiro SH, Macklem PT, Martin JG. Nutritional status and mortality in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1996;153(3):961-6.

248. Gorecka D, Gorzelak K, Sliwinski P, Tobiasz M, Zielinski J. Effect of long-term oxygen therapy on survival in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease with moderate hypoxaemia. *Thorax* 1997;52(8):674-9.

249. Efthimiou J, Fleming J, Gomes C, Spiro SG. The effect of supplementary oral nutrition in poorly nourished patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1988;137(5):1075-82.

250. Rogers RM, Donahoe M, Costantino J. Physiologic effects of oral supplemental feeding in malnourished patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. A randomized control study. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1992;146(6):1511-7.

251. Whittaker JS, Ryan CF, Buckley PA, Road JD. The effects of refeeding on peripheral and respiratory muscle function in malnourished chronic obstructive pulmonary disease patients. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1990;142(2):283-8.

252. Steiner MC, Barton RL, Singh SJ, Morgan MD. Nutritional enhancement of exercise performance in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a randomised controlled trial. *Thorax* 2003;58(9):745-51.

253. Fuld JP, Kilduff LP, Neder JA, Pitsiladis Y, Lean ME, Ward SA, *et al.* Creatine supplementation during pulmonary rehabilitation in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax* 2005;60:531-7.

254. Yeh SS, DeGuzman B, Kramer T. Reversal of COPD-associated weight loss using the anabolic agent oxandrolone. *Chest* 2002;122(2):421-8.

255. Weisberg J, Wanger J, Olson J, Streit B, Fogarty C, Martin T, *et al.* Megestrol acetate stimulates weight gain and ventilation in underweight COPD patients. *Chest* 2002;121(4):1070-8.

256. Jones PW, Quirk FH, Baveystock CM. The St George's Respiratory Questionnaire. *Respir Med* 1991;85 Suppl B:25-31; discussion 3-7.

257. Ware JE, Jr., Sherbourne CD. The MOS 36-item short-form health survey (SF-36). I. Conceptual framework and item selection. *Med Care* 1992;30(6):473-83.

258. Dowson C, Laing R, Barraclough R, Town I, Mulder R, Norris K, *et al.* The use of the Hospital Anxiety and Depression Scale (HADS) in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a pilot study. *N Z Med J* 2001;114(1141):447-9.

259. Goldstein RS, Gort EH, Guyatt GH, Feeny D. Economic analysis of respiratory rehabilitation. *Chest* 1997;112(2):370-9.

260. American Thoracic Society. Standards for the diagnosis and care of patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1995;152:S77-121.

261. Nocturnal Oxygen Therapy Trial Group. Continuous or nocturnal oxygen therapy in hypoxemic chronic obstructive lung disease: a clinical trial. *Ann Intern Med* 1980;93(3):391-8.

262. Report of the Medical Research Council Working Party. Long term domiciliary oxygen therapy in chronic hypoxic cor pulmonale complicating chronic bronchitis and emphysema. *Lancet* 1981;1(8222):681-6.

263. Tarpy SP, Celli BR. Long-term oxygen therapy. *N Engl J Med* 1995;333(11):710-4.

264. Weitzenblum E, Sautegeau A, Ehrhart M, Mammosser M, Pelletier A. Long-term oxygen therapy can reverse the progression of pulmonary hypertension in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1985;131(4):493-8.

265. Zielinski J, Tobiasz M, Hawrylkiewicz I, Sliwinski P, Palasiewicz G. Effects of long-term oxygen therapy on pulmonary hemodynamics in COPD patients: a 6-year prospective study. *Chest* 1998;113(1):65-70.

266. Petty TL. Supportive therapy in COPD. *Chest* 1998;113 (4 Suppl):256S-62S.

267. O'Donnell DE, Bain DJ, Webb KA. Factors contributing to relief of exertional breathlessness during hyperoxia in chronic airflow limitation. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1997;155(2):530-5.

268. Somfay A, Porszasz J, Lee SM, Casaburi R. Dose-response effect of oxygen on hyperinflation and exercise endurance in nonhypoxaemic COPD patients. *Eur Respir J* 2001;18(1):77-84.

269. Somfay A, Porszasz J, Lee SM, Casaburi R. Effect of hyperoxia on gas exchange and lactate kinetics following exercise onset in nonhypoxemic COPD patients. *Chest* 2002;121(2):393-400.

270. O'Donnell DE, D'Arsigny C, Webb KA. Effects of hyperoxia on ventilatory limitation during exercise in advanced chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2001;163(4):892-8.

271. Eaton T, Garrett JE, Young P, Fergusson W, Kolbe J, Rudkin S, *et al.* Ambulatory oxygen improves quality of life of COPD patients: a randomised controlled study. *Eur Respir J* 2002;20(2):306-12.

272. Lacasse Y, Lecours R, Pelletier C, Begin R, Maltais F. Randomised trial of ambulatory oxygen in oxygen-dependent COPD. *Eur Respir J* 2005;25(6):1032-8.

273. Stevenson NJ, Calverley PM. Effect of oxygen on recovery from maximal exercise in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax* 2004;59(8):668-72.

274. Lewis CA, Eaton TE, Young P, Kolbe J. Short-burst oxygen immediately before and after exercise is ineffective in nonhypoxic COPD patients. *Eur Respir J* 2003;22(4):584-8.

275. Petty TL, O'Donohue WJ, Jr. Further recommendations for prescribing, reimbursement, technology development, and research in long-term oxygen therapy. Summary of the Fourth Oxygen Consensus Conference, Washington, D.C., October 15-16, 1993. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1994;150(3):875-7.

276. Pelletier-Fleury N, Lanoe JL, Fleury B, Fardeau M. The cost of treating COPD patients with long-term oxygen therapy in a French population. *Chest* 1996;110(2):411-6.

277. Heaney LG, McAllister D, MacMahon J. Cost minimisation analysis of provision of oxygen at home: are the drug tariff guidelines cost effective? *BMJ* 1999;319(7201):19-23.

278. Gong H, Jr. Air travel and oxygen therapy in cardiopulmonary patients. *Chest* 1992;101(4):1104-13.

279. Berg BW, Dillard TA, Rajagopal KR, Mehm WJ. Oxygen supplementation during air travel in patients with chronic obstructive lung disease. *Chest* 1992;101(3):638-41.

280. Gong H, Jr., Tashkin DP, Lee EY, Simmons MS. Hypoxia-altitude simulation test. Evaluation of patients with chronic airway obstruction. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1984;130(6):980-6.

281. Christensen CC, Ryg M, Refvem OK, Skjonsberg OH. Development of severe hypoxaemia in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease patients at 2,438 m (8,000 ft) altitude. *Eur Respir J* 2000;15(4):635-9.

282. Shapiro SH, Ernst P, Gray-Donald K, Martin JG, Wood-Dauphinee S, Beaupre A, et al. Effect of negative pressure ventilation in severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Lancet* 1992;340(8833):1425-9.

283. Elliott MW. Noninvasive ventilation in chronic ventilatory failure due to chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Eur Respir J* 2002;20(3):511-4.

284. Clini E, Sturani C, Rossi A, Viaggi S, Corrado A, Donner CF, *et al.* The Italian multicentre study on noninvasive ventilation in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease patients. *Eur Respir J* 2002;20(3):529-38.

285. Consensus conference report. Clinical indications for noninvasive positive pressure ventilation in chronic respiratory failure due to restrictive lung disease, COPD, and nocturnal hypoventilation. *Chest* 1999;116(2):521-34.

286. Mehran RJ, Deslauriers J. Indications for surgery and patient work-up for bullectomy. *Chest Surg Clin N Am* 1995;5(4):717-34.

287. Hughes JA, MacArthur AM, Hutchison DC, Hugh-Jones P. Long term changes in lung function after surgical treatment of bullous emphysema in smokers and ex-smokers. *Thorax* 1984;39(2):140-2.

288. Laros CD, Gelissen HJ, Bergstein PG, Van den Bosch JM, Vanderschueren RG, Westermann CJ, *et al.* Bullectomy for giant bullae in emphysema. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 1986;91(1):63-70.

289. Cooper JD, Trulock EP, Triantafillou AN, Patterson GA, Pohl MS, Deloney PA, *et al.* Bilateral pneumectomy (volume reduction) for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 1995;109(1):106-16.

290. Criner G, Cordova FC, Leyenson V, Roy B, Travaline J, Sudarshan S, *et al.* Effect of lung volume reduction surgery on diaphragm strength. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1998;157(5 Pt 1):1578-85.

291. Martinez FJ, de Oca MM, Whyte RI, Stetz J, Gay SE, Celli BR. Lung-volume reduction improves dyspnea, dynamic hyper-inflation, and respiratory muscle function. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1997;155(6):1984-90.

292. Fessler HE, Permutt S. Lung volume reduction surgery and airflow limitation. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1998;157 (3 Pt 1):715-22.

293. Naunheim KS, Wood DE, Mohsenifar Z, Sternberg AL, Criner GJ, DeCamp MM, et al. Long-term follow-up of patients receiving lung-volume-reduction surgery versus medical therapy for severe emphysema by the National Emphysema Treatment Trial Research Group. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2006;82(2):431-43.

294. Elpern EH, Behner KG, Klontz B, Warren WH, Szidon JP, Kesten S. Lung volume reduction surgery: an analysis of hospital costs. *Chest* 1998;113(4):896-9.

295. Albert RK, Lewis S, Wood D, Benditt JO. Economic aspects of lung volume reduction surgery. *Chest* 1996;110(4):1068-71.

296. Trulock EP. Lung transplantation. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1997;155(3):789-818.

297. Theodore J, Lewiston N. Lung transplantation comes of age. *N Engl J Med* 1990;322(11):772-4.

298. Hosenpud JD, Bennett LE, Keck BM, Fiol B, Boucek MM, Novick RJ. The Registry of the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation: fifteenth official report--1998. *J Heart Lung Transplant* 1998;17(7):656-68.

299. Annual report of the US scientific registry for transplant recipients and the Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network. *Transplant data: 1988-1994.* Washington, D.C.: Division of Transplantation, Health Resources and Services Administraion, US Department of Health and Human Services; 1995.

300. Hosenpud JD, Bennett LE, Keck BM, Edwards EB, Novick RJ. Effect of diagnosis on survival benefit of lung transplantation for end- stage lung disease. *Lancet* 1998;351(9095):24-7.

301. Maurer JR, Frost AE, Estenne M, Higenbottam T, Glanville AR. International guidelines for the selection of lung transplant candidates. The International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation, the American Thoracic Society, the American Society of Transplant Physicians, the European Respiratory Society. *Transplantation* 1998;66(7):951-6.

302. Ramsey SD, Patrick DL, Albert RK, Larson EB, Wood DE, Raghu G. The cost-effectiveness of lung transplantation. A pilot study. University of Washington Medical Center Lung Transplant Study Group. *Chest* 1995;108(6):1594-601.

303. Al MJ, Koopmanschap MA, van Enckevort PJ, Geertsma A, van der Bij W, de Boer WJ, *et al.* Cost-effectiveness of lung transplantation in The Netherlands: a scenario analysis. *Chest* 1998;113(1):124-30.

304. van Enckevort PJ, Koopmanschap MA, Tenvergert EM, Geertsma A, van der Bij W, de Boer WJ, *et al.* Lifetime costs of lung transplantation: estimation of incremental costs. *Health Econ* 1997;6(5):479-89.

305. van Enckevort PJ, TenVergert EM, Bonsel GJ, Geertsma A, van der Bij W, de Boer WJ, *et al.* Technology assessment of the Dutch Lung Transplantation Program. *Int J Technol Assess Health Care* 1998;14(2):344-56.

306. Smetana GW. Preoperative pulmonary evaluation. *N Engl J* Med 1999;340(12):937-44.

307. Trayner E, Jr., Celli BR. Postoperative pulmonary complications. *Med Clin North Am* 2001;85(5):1129-39.

308. Weisman IM. Cardiopulmonary exercise testing in the preoperative assessment for lung resection surgery. *Semin Thorac Cardiovasc Surg* 2001;13(2):116-25.

309. Bolliger CT, Perruchoud AP. Functional evaluation of the lung resection candidate. *Eur Respir J* 1998;11(1):198-212.

310. Schuurmans MM, Diacon AH, Bolliger CT. Functional evaluation before lung resection. *Clin Chest Med* 2002;23(1):159-72.

311. Celli BR, MacNee W. Standards for the diagnosis and treatment of patients with COPD: a summary of the ATS/ERS position paper. *Eur Respir J* 2004;23(6):932-46.

312. Regueiro CR, Hamel MB, Davis RB, Desbiens N, Connors AF, Jr., Phillips RS. A comparison of generalist and pulmonologist care for patients hospitalized with severe chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: resource intensity, hospital costs, and survival. SUPPORT Investigators. Study to Understand Prognoses and Preferences for Outcomes and Risks of Treatment. *Am J Med* 1998;105(5):366-72.

313. Gibson PG, Wlodarczyk JH, Wilson AJ, Sprogis A. Severe exacerbation of chronic obstructive airways disease: health resource use in general practice and hospital. *J Qual Clin Pract* 1998;18(2):125-33.

314. Anthonisen NR, Manfreda J, Warren CP, Hershfield ES, Harding GK, Nelson NA. Antibiotic therapy in exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Ann Intern Med* 1987;106(2):196-204.

315. Warren PM, Flenley DC, Millar JS, Avery A. Respiratory failure revisited: acute exacerbations of chronic bronchitis between 1961-68 and 1970-76. *Lancet* 1980;1(8166):467-70.

316. Gunen H, Hacievliyagil SS, Kosar F, Mutlu LC, Gulbas G, Pehlivan E, *et al.* Factors affecting survival of hospitalised patients with COPD. *Eur Respir J* 2005;26(2):234-41.

317. Rodriguez-Roisin R. Toward a consensus definition for COPD exacerbations. *Chest* 2000;117(5 Suppl 2):398S-401S.

318. Burge S, Wedzicha JA. COPD exacerbations: definitions and classifications. *Eur Respir J Suppl* 2003;41:46s-53s.

319. Seemungal TA, Donaldson GC, Bhowmik A, Jeffries DJ, Wedzicha JA. Time course and recovery of exacerbations in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2000;161(5):1608-13.

320. Connors AF, Jr., Dawson NV, Thomas C, Harrell FE, Jr., Desbiens N, Fulkerson WJ, *et al.* Outcomes following acute exacerbation of severe chronic obstructive lung disease. The SUPPORT investigators (Study to Understand Prognoses and Preferences for Outcomes and Risks of Treatments). *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1996;154(4 Pt 1):959-67.

321. Kong GK, Belman MJ, Weingarten S. Reducing length of stay for patients hospitalized with exacerbation of COPD by using a practice guideline. *Chest* 1997;111(1):89-94.

322. Fuso L, Incalzi RA, Pistelli R, Muzzolon R, Valente S, Pagliari G, *et al.* Predicting mortality of patients hospitalized for acutely exacerbated chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Med* 1995;98(3):272-7.

323. Seneff MG, Wagner DP, Wagner RP, Zimmerman JE, Knaus WA. Hospital and 1-year survival of patients admitted to intensive care units with acute exacerbation of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *JAMA* 1995;274(23):1852-7.

324. Esteban A, Anzueto A, Frutos F, Alia I, Brochard L, Stewart TE, *et al.* Characteristics and outcomes in adult patients receiving mechanical ventilation: a 28-day international study. *JAMA* 2002;287(3):345-55.

325. Wouters EF. The burden of COPD in The Netherlands: results from the Confronting COPD survey. *Respir Med* 2003;97 Suppl C:S51-9.

326. Donaldson GC, Seemungal TA, Bhowmik A, Wedzicha JA. Relationship between exacerbation frequency and lung function decline in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax* 2002;57(10):847-52.

327. Kanner RE, Anthonisen NR, Connett JE. Lower respiratory illnesses promote FEV(1) decline in current smokers but not ex-smokers with mild chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: results from the lung health study. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2001;164(3):358-64.

328. Wilkinson TM, Donaldson GC, Hurst JR, Seemungal TA, Wedzicha JA. Early therapy improves outcomes of exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2004;169(12):1298-303.

329. White AJ, Gompertz S, Stockley RA. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease . 6: The aetiology of exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax* 2003;58(1):73-80.

330. Monso E, Ruiz J, Rosell A, Manterola J, Fiz J, Morera J, *et al.* Bacterial infection in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. A study of stable and exacerbated outpatients using the protected specimen brush. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1995;152(4 Pt 1):1316-20.

331. Pela R, Marchesani F, Agostinelli C, Staccioli D, Cecarini L, Bassotti C, *et al.* Airways microbial flora in COPD patients in stable clinical conditions and during exacerbations: a bronchoscopic investigation. *Monaldi Arch Chest Dis* 1998;53(3):262-7.

332. Sethi S, Evans N, Grant BJ, Murphy TF. New strains of bacteria and exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *N Engl J Med* 2002;347(7):465-71.

333. Sethi S, Wrona C, Grant BJ, Murphy TF. Strain-specific immune response to Haemophilus influenzae in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2004;169(4):448-53.

334. Sethi S, Muscarella K, Evans N, Klingman KL, Grant BJ, Murphy TF. Airway inflammation and etiology of acute exacerbations of chronic bronchitis. *Chest* 2000;118(6):1557-65.

335. White AJ, Gompertz S, Bayley DL, Hill SL, O'Brien C, Unsal I, *et al.* Resolution of bronchial inflammation is related to bacterial eradication following treatment of exacerbations of chronic bronchitis. *Thorax* 2003;58(8):680-5.

336. Murphy TF, Brauer AL, Grant BJ, Sethi S. Moraxella catarrhalis in Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease: Burden of Disease and Immune Response. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2005;172(2):195-9.

337. Emerman CL, Connors AF, Lukens TW, Effron D, May ME. Relationship between arterial blood gases and spirometry in acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Ann Emerg Med* 1989;18(5):523-7.

338. Adams S, J. M, Luther M. Antibiotics are associated with lower relapse rates in outpatients with acute4 exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Chest* 2000;117:1345-52.

339. Mueller C, Laule-Kiliam K, Frana B, Rodriguez D, Rudez J, Swcholer A, *et al.* The use of B-natriuretic peptide in the managment of elderly patients with acute dyspenae. *J Intern Med* 2005;258:77-85.

340. Richards AM, Nicholls MG, Epiner EA, Lainchbury JD, Troughton RW, Elliott J, *et al.* B-type natriuretic peptide and ejectrion fraction for prognosis after myocardial infarction. *Circulation* 2003;107:2786.

341. Davies L, Wilkinson M, Bonner S, Calverley PM, Angus RM. "Hospital at home" versus hospital care in patients with exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: prospective randomised controlled trial. *BMJ* 2000;321(7271):1265-8.

342. Ojoo JC, Moon T, McGlone S, Martin K, Gardiner ED, Greenstone MA, *et al.* Patients' and carers' preferences in two models of care for acute exacerbations of COPD: results of a randomised controlled trial. *Thorax* 2002;57(2):167-9.

343. Skwarska E, Cohen G, Skwarski KM, Lamb C, Bushell D, Parker S, *et al.* Randomized controlled trial of supported discharge in patients with exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax* 2000;55(11):907-12.

344. Hernandez C, Casas A, Escarrabill J, Alonso J, Puig-Junoy J, Farrero E, *et al.* Home hospitalisation of exacerbated chronic obstructive pulmonary disease patients. *Eur Respir J* 2003;21(1):58-67.

345. Celli BR. Current thoughts regarding treatment of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Med Clin North Am* 1996;80(3):589-609.

346. Rodriguez-Roisin R. COPD exacerbations.5: management. *Thorax* 2006;61(6):535-44.

347. Rebuck AS, Chapman KR, Abboud R, Pare PD, Kreisman H, Wolkove N, *et al.* Nebulized anticholinergic and sympathomimetic treatment of asthma and chronic obstructive airways disease in the emergency room. *Am J Med* 1987;82(1):59-64.

348. Moayyedi P, Congleton J, Page RL, Pearson SB, Muers MF. Comparison of nebulised salbutamol and ipratropium bromide with salbutamol alone in the treatment of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax* 1995;50(8):834-7.

349. Thompson WH, Nielson CP, Carvalho P, Charan NB, Crowley JJ. Controlled trial of oral prednisone in outpatients with acute COPD exacerbation. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1996;154 (2 Pt 1):407-12.

350. Davies L, Angus RM, Calverley PM. Oral corticosteroids in patients admitted to hospital with exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a prospective randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 1999;354(9177):456-60.

351. Niewoehner DE, Erbland ML, Deupree RH, Collins D, Gross NJ, Light RW, *et al.* Effect of systemic glucocorticoids on exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Department of Veterans Affairs Cooperative Study Group. *N Engl J Med* 1999;340(25):1941-7.

352. Maltais F, Ostinelli J, Bourbeau J, Tonnel AB, Jacquemet N, Haddon J, *et al.* Comparison of nebulized budesonide and oral prednisolone with placebo in the treatment of acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a randomized controlled trial. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2002;165(5):698-703.

353. Aaron SD, Vandemheen KL, Hebert P, Dales R, Stiell IG, Ahuja J, *et al.* Outpatient oral prednisone after emergency treatment of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *N Engl J Med* 2003;348(26):2618-25.

354. Shepperd S, Harwood D, Gray A, Vessey M, Morgan P. Randomised controlled trial comparing hospital at home care with inpatient hospital care. II: cost minimisation analysis. *BMJ* 1998;316(7147):1791-6.

355. Gravil JH, Al-Rawas OA, Cotton MM, Flanigan U, Irwin A, Stevenson RD. Home treatment of exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease by an acute respiratory assessment service. *Lancet* 1998;351(9119):1853-5.

356. Soderstrom L, Tousignant P, Kaufman T. The health and cost effects of substituting home care for inpatient acute care: a review of the evidence. *CMAJ* 1999;160(8):1151-5.

357. National Institute for Clinical Excellence (NICE). Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. National clinical guideline on management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease in adults in primary and secondary care. *Thorax* 2004;59 Suppl 1:1-232.

358. Barbera JA, Reyes A, Roca J, Montserrat JM, Wagner PD, Rodriguez-Roisin R. Effect of intravenously administered aminophylline on ventilation/perfusion inequality during recovery from exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1992;145(6):1328-33.

359. Mahon JL, Laupacis A, Hodder RV, McKim DA, Paterson NA, Wood TE, *et al.* Theophylline for irreversible chronic airflow limitation: a randomized study comparing n of 1 trials to standard practice. *Chest* 1999;115(1):38-48.

360. Lloberes P, Ramis L, Montserrat JM, Serra J, Campistol J, Picado C, *et al.* Effect of three different bronchodilators during an exacerbation of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Eur Respir J* 1988;1(6):536-9.

361. Murciano D, Aubier M, Lecocguic Y, Pariente R. Effects of theophylline on diaphragmatic strength and fatigue in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *N Engl J Med* 1984;311(6):349-53.

362. Emerman CL, Connors AF, Lukens TW, May ME, Effron D. Theophylline concentrations in patients with acute exacerbation of COPD. *Am J Emerg Med* 1990;8(4):289-92.

363. Barr RG, Rowe BH, Camargo CA, Jr. Methylxanthines for exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: meta-analysis of randomised trials. *BMJ* 2003;327(7416):643.

364. Duffy N, Walker P, Diamantea F, Calverley PM, Davies L. Intravenous aminophylline in patients admitted to hospital with non-acidotic exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a prospective randomised controlled trial. *Thorax* 2005;60(9):713-7.

365. Saint S, Bent S, Vittinghoff E, Grady D. Antibiotics in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease exacerbations. A meta-analysis. *JAMA* 1995;273(12):957-60.

366. Nouira S, Marghli S, Belghith M, Besbes L, Elatrous S, Abroug F. Once daily oral ofloxacin in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease exacerbation requiring mechanical ventilation: a randomised placebo- controlled trial. *Lancet* 2001;358(9298):2020-5.

367. Seemungal T, Harper-Owen R, Bhowmik A, Moric I, Sanderson G, Message S, *et al.* Respiratory viruses, symptoms, and inflammatory markers in acute exacerbations and stable chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2001;164(9):1618-23.

368. Blasi F, Damato S, Cosentini R, Tarsia P, Raccanelli R, Centanni S, *et al.* Chlamydia pneumoniae and chronic bronchitis: association with severity and bacterial clearance following treatment. *Thorax* 2002;57(8):672-6.

369. Seemungal TA, Wedzicha JA, MacCallum PK, Johnston SL, Lambert PA. Chlamydia pneumoniae and COPD exacerbation. *Thorax* 2002;57(12):1087-8; author reply 8-9.

370. Soler N, Torres A, Ewig S, Gonzalez J, Celis R, El-Ebiary M, *et al.* Bronchial microbial patterns in severe exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) requiring mechanical ventilation. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1998;157 (5 Pt 1):1498-505.

371. Fagon JY, Chastre J, Trouillet JL, Domart Y, Dombret MC, Bornet M, *et al.* Characterization of distal bronchial microflora during acute exacerbation of chronic bronchitis. Use of the protected specimen brush technique in 54 mechanically ventilated patients. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1990;142(5):1004-8.

372. Miravitlles M, Espinosa C, Fernandez-Laso E, Martos JA, Maldonado JA, Gallego M. Relationship between bacterial flora in sputum and functional impairment in patients with acute exacerbations of COPD. Study Group of Bacterial Infection in COPD. *Chest* 1999;116(1):40-6.

373. Eller J, Ede A, Schaberg T, Niederman MS, Mauch H, Lode H. Infective exacerbations of chronic bronchitis: relation between bacteriologic etiology and lung function. *Chest* 1998;113(6):1542-8.

374. Fogarty C, de Wet R, Mandel L, Chang J, Rangaraju M, Nusrat R. Five day Telitromycin once daily is as effective as 10 day Clarithromycin twice daily for the tretment of Acute Exacerbations of Chronic Bronchitis and is associated with reduced health-care recources utilization. *Chest* 2005;128:1980-8.

375. Wilson R, Allegra L, Huchon G, Izquierdo JL, Jones P, Schaberg T, *et al.* Short-term and long-term outcomes of moxifloxacin compared to standard antibiotic treatment in acute exacerbations of chronic bronchitis. *Chest* 2004;125(3):953-64.

376. Wilson R, Schentag JJ, Ball P, Mandell L. for the 068 Study Group. A comparison of Gemifloxacin and Clarithromycin in Acute Exacerbations of Chronic Bronchitis and Long-term clinical outcomes. *Clin Ther* 2002;4:639-52.

377. Greenstone M, Lasserson TJ. Doxapram for ventilatory failure due to exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2003(1):CD000223.

378. Lightowler JV, Wedzicha JA, Elliott MW, Ram FS. Non-invasive positive pressure ventilation to treat respiratory failure resulting from exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: Cochrane systematic review and meta-analysis. *BMJ* 2003;326(7382):185.

379. Meyer TJ, Hill NS. Noninvasive positive pressure ventilation to treat respiratory failure. *Ann Intern Med* 1994;120(9):760-70.

380. Brochard L, Mancebo J, Wysocki M, Lofaso F, Conti G, Rauss A, *et al.* Noninvasive ventilation for acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *N Engl J Med* 1995;333(13):817-22.

381. Kramer N, Meyer TJ, Meharg J, Cece RD, Hill NS. Randomized, prospective trial of noninvasive positive pressure ventilation in acute respiratory failure. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1995;151(6):1799-806.

382. Bott J, Carroll MP, Conway JH, Keilty SE, Ward EM, Brown AM, *et al.* Randomised controlled trial of nasal ventilation in acute ventilatory failure due to chronic obstructive airways disease. *Lancet* 1993;341(8860):1555-7.

383. Plant PK, Owen JL, Elliott MW. Early use of non-invasive ventilation for acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease on general respiratory wards: a multicentre randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2000;355(9219):1931-5.

384. Esteban A, Anzueto A, Alia I, Gordo F, Apezteguia C, Palizas F, *et al.* How is mechanical ventilation employed in the intensive care unit? An international utilization review. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2000;161(5):1450-8.

385. International Consensus Conferences in Intensive Care Medicine: noninvasive positive pressure ventilation in acute respiratory failure. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2001;163(1):283-91.

386. Plant PK, Owen JL, Elliott MW. Non-invasive ventilation in acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: long term survival and predictors of in-hospital outcome. *Thorax* 2001;56(9):708-12.

387. Rossi A, Gottfried SB, Zocchi L, Higgs BD, Lennox S, Calverley PM, *et al.* Measurement of static compliance of the total respiratory system in patients with acute respiratory failure during mechanical ventilation. The effect of intrinsic positive end-expiratory pressure. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1985;131(5):672-7.

388. Parker CM, Voduc N, Aaron SD, Webb KA, O'Donnell DE. Physiological changes during symptom recovery from moderate exacerbations of COPD. *Eur Respir J* 2005;26(3):420-8.

389. Conti G, Antonelli M, Navalesi P, Rocco M, Bufi M, Spadetta G, et al. Noninvasive vs. conventional mechanical ventilation in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease after failure of medical treatment in the ward: a randomized trial. *Intensive Care Med* 2002;28(12):1701-7.

390. Purro A, Appendini L, De Gaetano A, Gudjonsdottir M, Donner CF, Rossi A. Physiologic determinants of ventilator dependence in long-term mechanically ventilated patients. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2000;161(4 Pt 1):1115-23.

391. Torres A, Reyes A, Roca J, Wagner PD, Rodriguez-Roisin R. Ventilation-perfusion mismatching in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease during ventilator weaning. *Am Rev Respir Dis* 1989;140(5):1246-50.

392. Beydon L, Cinotti L, Rekik N, Radermacher P, Adnot S, Meignan M, *et al.* Changes in the distribution of ventilation and perfusion associated with separation from mechanical ventilation in patients with obstructive pulmonary disease. *Anesthesiology* 1991;75(5):730-8.

393. Nava S, Ambrosino N, Clini E, Prato M, Orlando G, Vitacca M, *et al.* Noninvasive mechanical ventilation in the weaning of patients with respiratory failure due to chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. A randomized, controlled trial. *Ann Intern Med* 1998;128(9):721-8.

394. Esteban A, Frutos F, Tobin MJ, Alia I, Solsona JF, Valverdu I, *et al.* A comparison of four methods of weaning patients from mechanical ventilation. Spanish Lung Failure Collaborative Group. *N Engl J Med* 1995;332(6):345-50.

395. Brochard L, Rauss A, Benito S, Conti G, Mancebo J, Rekik N, *et al.* Comparison of three methods of gradual withdrawal from ventilatory support during weaning from mechanical ventilation. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1994;150(4):896-903.

396. Hilbert G, Gruson D, Portel L, Gbikpi-Benissan G, Cardinaud JP. Noninvasive pressure support ventilation in COPD patients with postextubation hypercapnic respiratory insufficiency. *Eur Respir J* 1998;11(6):1349-53.

397. Esteban A, Frutos-Vivar F, Ferguson ND, Arabi Y, Apezteguia C, Gonzalez M, *et al.* Noninvasive positive-pressure ventilation for respiratory failure after extubation. *N Engl J Med* 2004;350(24):2452-60.

398. Kessler R, Faller M, Fourgaut G, Mennecier B, Weitzenblum E. Predictive factors of hospitalization for acute exacerbation in a series of 64 patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1999;159(1):158-64.

399. Mushlin AI, Black ER, Connolly CA, Buonaccorso KM, Eberly SW. The necessary length of hospital stay for chronic pulmonary disease. *JAMA* 1991;266(1):80-3.

400. Cotton MM, Bucknall CE, Dagg KD, Johnson MK, MacGregor G, Stewart C, *et al.* Early discharge for patients with exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a randomized controlled trial. *Thorax* 2000;55(11):902-6.

401. Hughes SL, Weaver FM, Giobbie-Hurder A, Manheim L, Henderson W, Kubal JD, *et al.* Effectiveness of team-managed home-based primary care: a randomized multicenter trial. *Jama* 2000;284(22):2877-85.

402. Hermiz O, Comino E, Marks G, Daffurn K, Wilson S, Harris M. Randomised controlled trial of home based care of patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *BMJ* 2002;325(7370):938.

403. Stoller JK, Lange PA. Inpatient management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Respir Care Clin N Am* 1998;4(3):425-38.

404. Peach H, Pathy MS. Follow-up study of disability among elderly patients discharged from hospital with exacerbations of chronic bronchitis. *Thorax* 1981;36(8):585-9.

405. Man WD, Polkey MI, Donaldson N, Gray BJ, Moxham J. Community pulmonary rehabilitation after hospitalisation for acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: randomised controlled study. *BMJ* 2004;329(7476):1209.

CHAPTER

6

TRANSLATING GUIDELINE RECOMMENDATIONS TO THE CONTEXT OF (PRIMARY) CARE

CHAPTER 6: TRANSLATING GUIDELINE RECOMMENDATIONS TO THE CONTEXT OF (PRIMARY) CARE

KEY POINTS:

- There is considerable evidence that management of COPD is generally not in accordance with current guidelines. Better dissemination of guidelines and their effective implementation in a variety of health care settings is urgently required.

- In many countries, primary care practitioners treat the vast majority of patients with COPD and may be actively involved in public health campaigns and in bringing messages about reducing exposure to risk factors to both patients and the public.

- Spirometric confirmation is a key component of the diagnosis of COPD and primary care practitioners should have access to high quality spirometry.

- Older patients frequently have multiple chronic health conditions. Comorbidities can magnify the impact of COPD on a patient's health status, and can complicate the management of COPD.

INTRODUCTION

The recommendations provided in Chapters 1 through 5 define—from a *disease* perspective—best practices in the diagnosis, monitoring, and treatment of COPD. However, (primary) medical care is based on an engagement with *patients*, and this engagement determines the success or failure of pursuing best practice. For this reason, medical practice requires a translation of disease-specific recommendations to the circumstances of individual patients – the local communities in which they live, and the health systems from which they receive medical care. This chapter summarizes a number of key factors in the application of the recommendations in clinical practice, particularly primary care. These factors will determine to a large extent the success with which the GOLD-proposed best practices will be implemented.

It is recognized that the scope of this chapter is limited. It does not cover the wide range of health care workers that provide care for COPD patients, nor the ever increasing need to develop educational curricula that will lead to better skills for COPD diagnosis and management, nor does it explore the essential role of national/regional Medical Societies from many disciplines working together, and in collaboration with public health officials to coordinate key messages to increase COPD awareness and reduce the burden of this disease. These topics are very important and will receive increasing attention in the years to come.

DIAGNOSIS

Early diagnosis and implementation of treatment—especially smoking cessation—have been demonstrated to prevent or delay the onset of airflow limitation or reduce its progression. In pursuing early diagnosis, a policy of identifying patients at high risk of COPD, followed by watchful surveillance of these patients, is advised.

Respiratory Symptoms

Of the chronic symptoms characteristic of COPD (dyspnea, cough, sputum production), dyspnea is the symptom that interferes most with a patient's daily life and health status. When taking the medical history of the patient, it is therefore important to explore the impact of dyspnea and other symptoms on daily activities, work, and social activities, and provide treatment accordingly. History taking is as much listening to the patient as asking questions, and active listening will often reveal the impact of signs/symptoms on the patient's health status. If this process yields insufficient clarity, it can be helpful to use a short questionnaire such as the British Medical Research Council (MRC) questionnaire[1], which measures the impact of dyspnea on daily activities, the Clinical COPD Questionnaire (CCQ)[2], which measures COPD-related symptoms, functional status, and mental health, or the International Primary Care Airways Group (IPAG) Questionnaire which measures COPD-related symptoms and risk factors (http://www.ipag.org).

Spirometry

COPD is both *under*-diagnosed and *over*-diagnosed in most countries. To avoid this, the use and availability of high-quality spirometry should be encouraged. High-quality spirometry in primary care is possible[3,4], provided that good skills training and an ongoing quality assurance program are provided. An alternative is to ensure that high quality spirometry is available in the community, for example, within the primary care practice itself, in a primary care laboratory, or in a hospital setting, depending on the structure of the local health care system[5]. Ongoing collaboration between primary care and respiratory care also helps assure quality control.

Although confirmation of the diagnosis of COPD and assessment of disease severity are established by spirometry, in many countries primary care practitioners diagnose COPD on clinical grounds alone[6]. Several factors are responsible for this situation, including poor recognition of the essential role of spirometry in the diagnosis of COPD, and lack of adequate training in its use and interpretation[6-8]. There is a clear necessity for further education initiatives targeted to all primary care practitioners in order to address these factors.

However, in many areas practitioners lack access to spirometry, especially state-of-the-art spirometry. Under such conditions it is not possible to fully apply the recommendations in this report, and diagnosis of COPD has to be made with the tools available. Use of peak flow meters may be considered, provided that the limited (positive and negative) predictive value of peak flow meters for the diagnosis of COPD is clearly understood. Low peak flow is consistent with COPD but has poor specificity, since it can be caused by other lung diseases or by poor performance. The use peak flow should not impede the implementation of spirometry.

COMORBIDITIES

Older patients frequently have multiple chronic health conditions. It has been estimated that worldwide, 25% of people over age 65 suffer from two of the five most common chronic diseases (which include COPD), and 10% suffer from three or more. These figures rise to 40% and 25%, respectively, among those 75 and older[9].

The severity of comorbid conditions and their impact on a patient's health status will vary between patients and in the same patient over time. Comorbidities can be categorized in various ways to aid in the better understanding of their impact on the patient, and their impact on disease management[10].

- *Common pathway comorbidities:* diseases with a common pathophysiology—for instance, in the case of COPD, other smoking-related diseases such as ischemic heart disease and lung cancer
- *Complicating comorbidities:* conditions that arise as a complication of a specific preexisting disease—in the case of COPD, pulmonary hypertension and consequent heart failure. Early intervention is directed at preventing complications and the effectiveness of these early interventions should be monitored.
- *Co-incidental comorbidities:* Coexisting chronic conditions with unrelated pathogenesis. Particularly in diseases like COPD that are related to aging, there is a high chance of co-incidental comorbidity such as bowel or prostate cancer, depression, diabetes mellitus, Parkinson's disease, dementia, and arthritis. Such conditions may make COPD management more difficult.
- *Inter-current comorbidities:* Acute illnesses that may have a more severe impact in patients with a given chronic disease. For example, upper respiratory tract infections are the most frequent health problem in all age groups, but they may have a more severe impact or require different treatment in patients with COPD.

REDUCING EXPOSURE TO RISK FACTORS

Reduction of total personal exposure to tobacco smoke, occupational dusts and chemicals, and indoor and outdoor air pollutants, including smoke from cooking over biomass fueled fires, are important goals to prevent the onset and progression of COPD. In many health care systems, primary care practitioners may be actively involved in public health campaigns and can play an important part in bringing messages about reducing exposure to risk factors to patients and the public. Primary care practitioners can also play a very important role in reinforcing the dangers of passive smoking and the importance of implementing smoke-free work environments.

Smoking cessation: Smoking cessation is the most effective intervention to reduce the risk of developing COPD, and simple smoking cessation advice from health care professionals has been shown to make patients more likely to stop smoking. Primary care practitioners often have many contacts with a patient over time, which provides the opportunity to discuss smoking cessation, enhance motivation for quitting, and identify the need for supportive pharmacological treatment. It is very important to align the advice given by individual practitioners with public health campaigns in order to send a coherent message to the public.

IMPLEMENTATION OF COPD GUIDELINES

GOLD has developed a network of individuals, the GOLD National Leaders, who are playing an essential role in the dissemination of information about prevention, early diagnosis, and management of COPD in health systems around the world. A major GOLD program activity that has helped to bring together health care teams at the local level is World COPD Day, held annually on the third Wednesday in November (http://www.goldcopd.org/WCDIndex.asp). GOLD National Leaders, often in concert with local physicians, nurses, and health care planners, have hosted many types of activities to raise awareness of COPD. WONCA (the World Organization of Family Doctors) is also an active collaborator in organizing World COPD Day activities. Increased participation of a wide variety of health care professionals in World COPD Day activities in many countries would help to increase awareness of COPD.

GOLD is a partner organization in a program launched in March 2006 by the World Health Organization, the Global Alliance Against Chronic Respiratory Diseases (GARD). The goal is to raise awareness of the burden of chronic respiratory diseases in all countries of the world, and to disseminate and implement recommendations from international guidelines. Information about the GARD program can be found at http://www.who.int/respiratory/gard/en/.

Although awareness and dissemination of guidelines are important goals, the actual implementation of a comprehensive care system in which to coordinate the management of COPD will be important to pursue. Evidence is increasing that a chronic disease management program for COPD patients that incorporates a variety of interventions, includes pulmonary rehabilitation, and is implemented by primary care reduce hospital admissions and bed days. Key elements are patient participation and information sharing among health care providers[11].

REFERENCES

1. Bestall JC, Paul EA, Garrod R, Garnham R, Jones PW, Wedzicha JA. Usefulness of the Medical Research Council (MRC) dyspnoea scale as a measure of disability in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Thorax* 1999;54(7):581-6.
2. Van Der Molen T, Willemse BW, Schokker S, Ten Hacken NH, Postma DS, Juniper EF. Development, validity and responsiveness of the Clinical COPD Questionnaire. *Health Qual Life Outcomes* 2003;1(1):13.
3. Eaton T, Withy S, Garrett JE, Mercer J, Whitlock RM, Rea HH. Spirometry in primary care practice: the importance of quality assurance and the impact of spirometry workshops. *Chest* 1999;116(2):416-23.
4. Schermer TR, Jacobs JE, Chavannes NH, Hartman J, Folgering HT, Bottema BJ, *et al.* Validity of spirometric testing in a general practice population of patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD). *Thorax* 2003;58(10):861-6.
5. Schermer T, Eaton T, Pauwels R, van Weel C. Spirometry in primary care: is it good enough to face demands like World COPD Day? *Eur Respir J* 2003;22(5):725-7.
6. Bolton CE, Ionescu AA, Edwards PH, Faulkner TA, Edwards SM, Shale DJ. Attaining a correct diagnosis of COPD in general practice. *Respir Med* 2005;99(4):493-500.
7. Caramori G, Bettoncelli G, Tosatto R, Arpinelli F, Visona G, Invernizzi G, *et al.* Underuse of spirometry by general practitioners for the diagnosis of COPD in Italy. *Monaldi Arch Chest Dis* 2005;63(1):6-12.
8. Walters JA, Hansen E, Mudge P, Johns DP, Walters EH, Wood-Baker R. Barriers to the use of spirometry in general practice. *Aust Fam Physician* 2005;34(3):201-3.
9. van Weel C. Chronic diseases in general practice: the longitudinal dimension. *Eur J Gen Pract* 1996;2:17-21.
10. Schellevis FG, Van de Lisdonk EH, Van der Velden J, Hoogbergen SH, Van Eijk JT, Van Weel C. Consultation rates and incidence of intercurrent morbidity among patients with chronic disease in general practice. *Br J Gen Pract* 1994;44(383):259-62.
11. Rea H, McAuley S, Stewart A, Lamont C, Roseman P, Didsbury P. A chronic disease management programme can reduce days in hospital for patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Intern Med J* 2004;34(11):608-14.